



# SOLUTIONS OF EXERCISES

IN

MESSRS. HALL & STEVENS' SCHOOL GEOMETRY.

PARTS I. & II.

BY

Pt. GANGA SHANKAR PACHOLY,

SECOND MASTER, SADAR HIGH SCHOOL, BHARATPUR.

AGRA.

P. SHAM LALL & SONS,

*Publishers and Booksellers.*

---

Agra:

Printed at the Moon Press,

1908.

*All rights reserved.*

*Price Re. 1-0-0.*

### Definition of signs occurred in the exercises

1. The sign  $+$ , which is read "plus," signifies that the quantity which comes next after it, is to be *added* to that which goes before.

2 The sign  $-$ , which is read "minus," signifies that the quantity which comes next after it, is to be *subtracted* from that which goes before

3 - The sign  $\times$ , which is read "into," is placed between two quantities to denote that the first quantity is to be multiplied by the second number.

4 The sign  $\triangle$  is read "triangle"

5. The sign  $\sphericalangle$  is read "angle"

6 Surd —A root which cannot be obtained exactly is called a surd. The symbol  $\sqrt{\phantom{x}}$  is the corruption of the letter  $r$  the first letter of the word *root* or *radix*.

7. The sign  $=$ , which is read "is equal to," is placed between 2 expressions to denote that they are equal to one another.

8 The signs  $>$  and  $<$  are used to denote respectively *greater than* and *less than*.

9 The sign  $\therefore$  denotes *therefore*. The sign  $\because$  denotes *because* or *hence*.

10. The sign  $\parallel$  denotes "parallel to."

## P R E F A C E .

---

According to the new and revised University rules, students preparing for the Matriculation Examination are required to take up Hall and Steven's School Geometry as a portion of their Mathematical Course, which covers not only Theoretical solutions of all the Propositions and exercises, but at the same time treats of and requires practice in the Practical and Graphical methods of solutions also. Consequently students feel great inconvenience in preparing their daily lessons in Geometry, for they have not been so long accustomed to do such work.

The students of the several classes repeatedly asked the author to prepare more elaborate and suggestive solutions with figures to help them in their daily work, for solutions printed up to date by different persons are only hints for teachers and without any figure hence, these solutions together with figures are prepared for the students in order to explain them the method of drawing figures and solving exercises at home.

The answers to the Practical exercises are derived from actual measurement and calculation and are therefore nearly correct. As it is impossible either to measure or to draw a figure accurately with the help of an ordinary set of instruments, the results and answers obtained are therefore approximate.

As the proof sheets were not sent by the press while the book was printing for corrections, great many mistakes and omissions have crept in, but to remedy this defect a separate list of errata is annexed herewith. In the second edition all attempts will be made to remove all these defects and to add more convincing and clear proof for some of the exercises not treated more elaborately in the present one.

The author's thanks are due to Pandit Shyamlal and Sons of Agra who undertook the duty of publishing these solutions merely for the help of the students preparing for the several public Examinations who are unable to buy most costly publications.

THE AUTHOR.



# ERRATA.

Page	Lane.	For.	Read
3	14	= 145	= 145°
11	13	ABC ACB and	ABC and ACB
11	19	CA and AC	CA and AO
12	22	AC = B = 7 cm.	AC = b = 6 cm
13	24	AD	CD
14	14	draw	drawn
18	3	angle AB	less than AB
21	33	or supplementary	or supplementary to the $\angle$ DEF.
22	16	ACO = DBO	ACO = $\angle$ BDO.
22	23	angle ACB	angle ACB. $\therefore$ the $\angle$ ADE = the $\angle$ AED
23	5	and A meets them the alternate $\angle$ s	and AC meets them then the alternate $\angle$ s.
23	17	Now from XY	Now join XY,
23	18	XO and BY	XB and BY
25	5	The angle ACD	The angle ACB.
25	18	DE	FE
25	19	DE	FE
25	19	DY	FY
25	30	of sides D =	of sides, and D =
25	34	$80 + 360 = 8 \times 180 D =$	$8 D + 360^\circ = 8 \times 180^\circ, \therefore D =$
26	2	$= 10 \times 180 D =$	$= 10 \times 180^\circ \therefore D =$
26	8	$\angle C = 3 C$	$\angle C = 3x$
26	9	$\therefore 6x = 180^\circ$	$\therefore 6x = 180^\circ.$
26	9	$\therefore x = 30^\circ$	$\therefore x = 30^\circ.$
26	9	$\therefore$ angle A = 30° angle B	$\therefore$ angle A = 30°, and angle B
26	12	$180^\circ \therefore x = 36^\circ \therefore \angle A$ $= 36^\circ$	$180^\circ \therefore x = 36^\circ. \therefore \angle A =$ $36^\circ;$
26	13	$\therefore x = 20 \angle A = 20^\circ,$	$\therefore x = 20. \angle A = 20^\circ,$
26	14	each of the	and each of the
26	22	$x - y = 60^\circ$	$x - y = 60^\circ.$
26	22	add $\frac{x - y = 60}{2x = 222}$	add $x \times y = 162^\circ$ $\frac{x - y = 60^\circ}{2x = 222^\circ}$
27	18	$\therefore n \angle s + 4 \text{ rt } \angle s = 2$ $n \text{ rt } \angle s$	$\therefore n \angle s + 4 \text{ rt } \angle s = 2 n \text{ rt.}$ $\angle s$
28	6	As all the angles	12 As all the angles

Page	Line	For	Read
			(Here Exercise 4 begins)
29	11	AB is $\perp$ to CD &c	4 AB is $\parallel$ to CD &c
29	16	4 The int $\angle$ s	The int $\angle$ s
29	29	DB and DC	OB and OC
29	33	DBC, DCB and BDC	OBC, OCB and BOC
29	35	BDC	BOC
31	17	BC opposite to the $=$ sides	BC opposite to the $=$ angles
31	24	BPO = BQO, PBO = QBO,	BPO = $\angle$ BQO, PBO = $\angle$ QBO,
32	3	AB = AC -	AB = AC
32	34	FOP	FOQ
32	36	FOP	FOQ
33	6	DEP	OEP
33	23	12 There are	11. There are
34	10	AB and AC or A and C	AB and AC or $\angle$ a and c
34	11	AC or B	AC or b
34	15	the A and C	the $\angle$ s A and C
35	9	to the equal angles	to the equal angles are equal
36	4	$\angle$ CFD	$\angle$ CFP
36	5	$\angle$ CFD	$\angle$ CFP
36	7	28	50
36	31	The distance	14 The distance
		Light-house $\angle$	Light-house L
37	6	two $\angle$ s ABC	two $\Delta$ s ABC
37	15	BAD = $\angle$ CDA	BAD = $\angle$ BCD
38	11	DC and BC,	DC and BC of the other,
40	1	AB coinciding	AD coinciding
40	10	$\Delta$ DCD	$\Delta$ BCD
40	13	6 Join DB	7 Join DB
40	32	OP $\parallel$ OQ	OP = OQ
41	17	$\parallel$ EF and BF	$\parallel$ DF and BF
41	29	AD = BC	AD = BC
		BE = BC	BE = BC
42	1	$\angle$ s = 180	$\angle$ s = 180°
43	12	QBQ	QBQ'
43	14	QBO'	Q'BO,
43	14	Q'BO	$\angle$ Q'BO,
43	15	Q'BO,	$\angle$ Q'BO,
		$\angle$ QOB	$\angle$ Q'OB,
43	23	CAD	$\angle$ OAD
43	33	The yacht, &c	15 The yacht, &c
43	35	A and B	and at B

Page	Line	For.	Read
44	9	fit $\angle$ s	—4 rt $\angle$ s
44	17	$9000 \sim 360^\circ$	$900^\circ \sim 360^\circ$
44	21	$= 188$	$- 180^\circ$
44	30	(i) AP moves	18 (i) AP moves.
45	27	$ZY = YV$	$YV = ZY$
45	36	$\therefore ZV$	$ZY$
46	16	st line joins	st line which joins.
47	28	$AXQ$	$AX'Q'$
47	32	$OX = \frac{1}{2} BQ$	$OX' = \frac{1}{2} BQ'$
47	32	$\frac{1}{2} (AP \times QQ')$	$\frac{1}{2} (AP + QQ')$
47	38	$OD = 8 \text{ cm.}$	$0.8 \text{ cm.}$
48	2	B, P, &c.	O, P, &c.
48	14	AD and DC	AD and BC
48	18	$(AD + BC) AD$	$(AD + BC). AD$
50	5	in the CD	in CB
50	31	$DS'$	$DS$
51 } 52 }		(all the lines are not in	scale consult the figure part)
52	17	is $37\frac{1}{2}$ miles,	is $37\frac{1}{2}$ miles, and is
52	31	the CBP	the $\angle$ s CBP
54	26	$AD = BR$	$AO = BR$
55	26	This case	(iv.) This case
56	7	A the point	At the point
56	25	At the point P	At the point A
56	30	the $\angle L$ (const.)	the $\angle (90^\circ - M.)$ (const.)
57	1	$\angle CA'B'$	$\angle C'AB'$
57	10	$\triangle$ at the point	$\triangle$ At the point
57	17	$180^\circ - L$	$180^\circ - L,$
57	24	$\therefore AC + CD$	$AC = CD$
58	14	Draw a st line	18 Draw a st. line
58	22	$BD = c - b$	19. $BD = c - b$
58	23	$BC = A = 7 \text{ cm.}$	$BC = a = 7 \text{ cm}$
58	31	$C = 7 + 1 = 8 \text{ cm.}$	$\therefore c = 7 + 1 = 8 \text{ cm.}$
59	5	ACD	ACB
59	14	AB is the	2. AB is the
59	21	$AB = 3''$	3. $AB = 3''$
59	22	$CD = OD$	$CO = OD$
60	12	angle BO	angle BOA
60	20	5 cm	4 4 cm.
60	22	Place the	5 Place the
61	3	2 ( $52 + 3$ )	2 ( $52 + 3$ )
61	11	Only the four	6. Only the four



Page	Line	For.	Read
64	2	(1) Let AB and CD	6 (1) Let AB and CD
64	9	EFGH	E, F, G, H
65	19	Bisect AB	11 Bisect AB
65	28	(1) P is the	12 (1) P is the
65	36	$\therefore PM + N$	$\therefore PM + PN$
67	17	also a distance	also at a distance
67	34	and DE	or DE
68	14	(1) Take points	19 (1) Take points
68	22	at S at S	at S At S
68	26	Let S and S'	20 Let S and S'
68	26	$PS = S'P'$	$PS = S'P'$
68	27	$SP + S'P'$	$S'P + S'P'$
69	18	SS'	S, S'
69	25	called Hyperbolas	called Hyperbolas
69	34	at A	At A
70	17	OB, OR	OB, and OR
70	18	and OR =	and OP =
70	19	OR	PR
70	31	O as centre	From O as centre
70	34	terminate	terminating
71	1	if OP	when OP
71	6	BF	DF
71	22	DE, again OD	DE Again OD
71	28	the $\Delta$	the sides of the $\Delta$
72	17	BD	DO
73	3	one yard	$\frac{1}{2}$ yard
73	9	one inch	one sq inch
74	4	$a \times b = \text{area}$	But $a \times b = \text{area}$
74	18	a rectangle AB	a rectangle AB
79	27	$= 45 \text{ cm.}$	$= 32 \text{ cm}$
79	28	34	32
79	28	14 28	13 14
79	29	$AC = b$	AC or b
80	10	$= C =$	$= c =$
80	16	6'30"	6 3"
80	20	$\frac{\text{area}}{\text{base}}$ or base = $\frac{\text{area}}{\text{altitude}}$	$\frac{2 \text{ area}}{\text{base}}$ or base = $\frac{2 \text{ area}}{\text{altitude}}$
80	21	$\frac{80 \text{ sq in.}}{20} = 4"$	$\frac{80 \text{ sq in} \times 2}{20} = 8"$
80	22	$\frac{104 \text{ sq cm}}{16 \text{ cm}} = 6.5 \text{ cm.}$	$\frac{104 \text{ sq cm} \times 2}{16 \text{ cm}} = 13 \text{ cm}$
80	26	3 36" = sq in	3 36" sq in

Page.	Line	For	Read.
81	13	and that	and EF
82	6	ABX on the	ABX are on the
82	7	CBX on the	CBX are on the
82	10	AX or AC	AC or AC
82	14	BE	DC
82	15	DC	BE
82	23	exer 11	exer 11 on page 65
83	20	O 68	O 62
83	21	68'	62"
83	21	1 258"	1 147"
83	22	$1 \times 370 \times 68 = 12580$	$\frac{1}{2} \times 370 \times 62 = 11470$
85	32	KLXOM	KL x OM
86	14	or BC produced	(omit these words)
86	31	$4.26775 p =$	$42.6775 \therefore p =$
86	last	$169 - 29 = 140$	$169 - 29 = 140$
89	18	5 25" sq in	5 25" sq in.
89	26	$\frac{1}{2} \times \text{diagonal}^2$	$\frac{1}{2}$ the product of diagonals.
90	9	25 5	15.5
91	6	SQPR	SQ x PR
91	10	angles	angle
93	12	3 6 sq in	3 6 sq in
93	17	AF diagonals	AF, diagonals
93	22	intersection the	intersection of the
94	32	$C = 3 1'$	$c = 3 4'$
96	35	B are	B are
97	1	BD DC	BD, DC
97	31-32	(remove these lines)	..
98	2	and PQ <sup>2</sup>	for PQ <sup>2</sup>
98	28	D	O
98	29	OQ	OG'
98	last	B	D
99	15	perpendiculars	perpendicular
99	29	$50^2 196^2$	$50^2$ or 196
99	33	$101^2 400$	$101^2$ or 400
100	20	Problem	Problem 16
100	21	$1 + 1 = 2$	$1 + 1 = 2$
101	21	$BD = \sqrt{c^2 - p^2}$	(iii) $BD = \sqrt{c^2 - p^2}$
103	4	$DC + BD = 41 \quad \frac{559}{41} = \frac{422}{41}$	$DC + BD = 41$
104	20	$\frac{2DC = 41}{41} = \frac{41}{41}$	$\frac{2 DC = 41 - \frac{559}{41} = \frac{1122}{41}}$
104	20	65	127
105	22	D	O
106	21	9 2	9 1
106	22	$92 = 28.06$	$9.1 = 27.76$

Page	Line	For	Read.
107	24	meeting ED	and produce it to meet ED
108	11-12	O is the point of intersection of PQ and ZC	<i>Read this in the beginning of the next line just after 10 in line 18</i>
109	3	PB	DB
109	11	Bisect	Divide
109	20	4 units	6 units
109	21	6 units	4 units
110	15	DP = 17	OP = 17
110	27	7 (iv)	(iv)
110	31	(i) PP'	8 (i) PP'
111	16	O	P'
111	17	XO	the $\parallel$ to OX through P'
111	17	O	P'
111	21-22	O	P'
111	25	8 (vi)	(vi)
111	36	PP' + PP''	PP' and PP''
112	12	D	O
113	3	(5, 12)	are (5, 12)
113	5	B	D
113	6	at 2	at E
114	18	AP	DP
114	18	DF	DP
114	19	DP = 7 - 2 = 5	DP = 3 + 2 = 5
114	31	30 units of area	21 units of area
114	33	DC - 11 - 3 = 8.	DC - 11 - 3 = 8
114	34	$\therefore$ BE = 5	BF = 5
115	5	5 + 3 = 8	5 $\times$ 3 = 15
115	7	= 8 + 12 5 = 20 5	= 15 + 12 5 = 27 5
116	2 to 4	Join BD &c &c	Omit these lines, and proceed as given in Ex 23
116	7	(20, - 5)	(11, 1)
116	8	= 20 - 7 = 13	= 2 + 11 = 13
116	11	$\sqrt{5^2 + 12^2}$	$\sqrt{5^2 + 12^2}$
116	32	$\parallel$ s	line $\parallel$ to X'OX,
118	17	BP'	BP
118	17	AC	AE
118	22	4 rt $\angle$ s	2 rt $\angle$ s
118	30	AD	AP
118	32	inter $\angle$ s	inter opposite $\angle$ s
119	3	. the $\angle$ AEC	and the $\angle$ AEC
119	5	= 2, the $\angle$ BCE	= 2 $\angle$ BCE
121	24	$\triangle ABC$	$\triangle ADC$

# SOLUTIONS OF EXERCISES

IN

HALL AND STEVENS' GEOMETRY.

PART I.



PAGE 13.



Theor. 1, 2

1 OP a st line revolves round the point O in another st line AB In the beginning OP has its position as OB, and by revolution makes  $\angle$ s of different magnitude.

2 Construction is the same as given above.



# SOLUTIONS OF EXERCISES

## IN

### HALL AND STEVENS' SCHOOL GEOMETRY.

#### PART I.

#### PAGE 13.

(THEOR. 1 AND 2.)

No. of Exercise

1

Prop. No 1.

Prop. No 2.

Prop. No 3:

$$\begin{array}{lll} \text{rt } \angle = 90^\circ, \frac{1}{2} \text{ of rt. } \angle = 45^\circ & \frac{1}{3} \text{ of rt } \angle = \frac{1}{3} \text{ of } 90^\circ & \text{Sup } \angle \text{ of } 46 \\ \text{Sup. } \angle \text{ of } 45^\circ = 135^\circ & = 120 & = 180 - 46 = 134^\circ \\ & \text{Sup. } \angle \text{ of } 120 = 60^\circ & \end{array}$$

Prop No 4.

Prop No 5

Prop No 6

$$\begin{array}{lll} \text{Sup } \angle \text{ of } 149^\circ = 31^\circ & \text{Sup } \angle \text{ of } 83 = 97^\circ & \text{Sup } \angle \text{ of } 101^\circ - 15' \\ & & = 78^\circ - 45'. \end{array}$$

2.

Prop. No 7.

Prop. No 8.

$$\begin{array}{ll} \frac{2}{3} \text{ of rt } \angle = \frac{2}{3} \times 90^\circ = 60^\circ & \text{Comp. } \angle \text{ of } 27^\circ = 63^\circ \\ \text{Comp. } \angle \text{ of } 36^\circ = 90 - 36 = 54^\circ & \end{array}$$

Prop No 9.

Prop. No. 10

$$\begin{array}{ll} \text{Comp } \angle \text{ of } 38^\circ - 16' = 51^\circ - 44'. & \text{Comp. } \angle \text{ of } 41^\circ - 29' - 30'' \\ & = 48^\circ - 30' - 30'' \end{array}$$

No. of Exercise.

Prop No. 11.

3. St. lines AB and CD intersect each other at O, the  $\angle COB$  is a rt.  $\angle$ .

As the  $\angle$ s AOC, and COB = 2 rt.  $\angle$ s [Theo. I]

But  $\angle COB$  is a rt  $\angle$  [Hyp.]

$\therefore \angle AOC$  is also a rt.  $\angle$ .

Since CD is a st line  $\therefore \angle$ s COA and AOD, and also the  $\angle$ s COB and BOD are 2 rt  $\angle$ s. [Theo. I.]

But each of  $\angle$ s AOC and COB is a rt  $\angle$

$\therefore$  The supplement of the  $\angle$ COA, i.e., the  $\angle$ AOD = rt  $\angle$ .

Similarly the supplement of the angle COB, i.e., the  $\angle$ BOD = a rt  $\angle$

Each of  $\angle$ s AOC, COB, BOD and AOD is a rt  $\angle$

Prop No 12.

4. The  $\angle$ ABC is =  $\angle$ ACB BC is produced both ways to D and E. The  $\angle$ ABE shall be = to  $\angle$ ACD

Since the  $\angle$ ABE is supplement to the  $\angle$ ABC, and the  $\angle$ ACD is the supplement to the  $\angle$ ACB and the  $\angle$ ABC =  $\angle$ ACB. [Hyp]

$\therefore$  The  $\angle$ ABE =  $\angle$ ACD for they are supplementary to equal angles

5. The sides AB and BC in the figure given above are produced to F and G

The  $\angle$ CBF is supplementary to  $\angle$ ABC and the  $\angle$ BCG is supplementary to the  $\angle$ ACB, and  $\angle$ ABC =  $\angle$ ACB.

$\therefore$  the  $\angle$ CBF =  $\angle$ BCG, for they are supplementary to equal  $\angle$ s

Prop No. 13.

6. Since the  $\angle$ s. AOB, BOC are = to 2 rt  $\angle$ s

OX bisects the  $\angle$ AOB. AOX = BOX.

Similarly BOY = COY

$\therefore \angle$ XOY =  $\angle$ s COY +  $\angle$ AOX

But the  $\angle$ s COY, YOB, BOX, XOA are equal to twice the angles YOB + BOX = 2 rt. angles.  $\angle$ YOX (i.e.,  $\angle$ YOB + BOX) = 1 rt.  $\angle$ .

7. It has been proved in the above figure that the  $\angle$ YOX = one rt.  $\angle$ .

$\therefore$  The remaining  $\angle$ s COY and AOX are together equal to one rt.  $\angle$ , and consequently the  $\angle$ s, YOC and AOX are complementary.

8. Since st. line OX makes with st. line CA two alternate  $\angle$ s COX and AOX which are equal to two rt  $\angle$ s [Theo I]

$\therefore \angle$ s COX and AOX are supplementary to each other. But the  $\angle$ AOX =  $\angle$ BOX [Cons —]

$\therefore \angle$ COX is supplementary to  $\angle$ BOX.

In the same manner it can be proved that  $\angle$ s AOY and BOY are also supplementary.

9 In the figure to exercise 6 the angle AOB =  $35^\circ$ . The  $\angle$ AOB is bisected by OX  $\therefore \angle$ AOX =  $\angle$ BOX =  $17\frac{1}{2}^\circ$ .

But the  $\angle$ s AOX and COY have been proved in the previous exercise to be complimentary to each other.

$$\therefore \angle$$
COY = rt.  $\angle$  -  $\angle$ AOX =  $90^\circ - 17\frac{1}{2}^\circ = 72^\circ - 30'$

$$\text{or } \angle$$
COB +  $\angle$ BOA = 2 rt  $\angle$ s.

$$\text{and } \angle$$
COB =  $180^\circ - \angle$ BOA =  $180 - 35 = 145$ .

$$\therefore \angle$$
COY =  $\frac{1}{2}$  of  $\angle$ COB =  $72^\circ - 30'$

---

## PART I.

PAGE 15

(Theor 3 or Euclid I 15.)

Prop No 14.

No of Exercise.

1. The minute hand OA of a clock completes one revolution round the dial in 60 minutes, and at the same time st line OA revolves round O and thus by completing one revolution it turns through four rt.  $\angle$ s =  $360^\circ$   $\therefore$  in one minute the minute hand turns  $\frac{360}{60} = 6$  degrees.

$\therefore$  (i) in 5 minutes it turns  $5 \times 6 = 30$  degrees

(ii) in 21 minutes it moves  $6 \times 21 = 126$  degrees

(iii) in 43 5 minutes moves  $43.5 \times 6 = 261$  degrees

(iv) in 14 minutes 10 sec moves  $14\frac{1}{6} \times 6 = 85$  degrees

(v) The minute hand will take  $\frac{360}{6} = 11$  minutes to cover 66 degrees

(vi) It will take  $\frac{222}{6} = 37$  minutes to turn through 222 degrees.

2. (i) at 12 o'clock both the hands are exactly at XII; but while the minute hand completes one revolution the hour hand moves from XII. to I. i. e. only 5 parts out of 60; and



thus hour hand makes an angle of  $30^\circ$  in one hour and therefore it makes an  $\angle$  of  $112\frac{1}{2}^\circ$  in 3 hours 45 minutes.

(ii) in 5 hours 10 minutes it makes an  $\angle$  of  $210^\circ$

(iii) The hour hand passes through  $172\frac{1}{2}^\circ$  in  $24\frac{1}{2} \times \frac{1}{30} = 5$  hours 45 minutes

3 The earth revolves 360 degrees in 24 hours or  $\frac{360}{24} = 15^\circ$  in one hour It will turn in 3 hours 20 minutes  $= 3\frac{20}{60}$  or  $1\frac{2}{3}$  hours, about  $1\frac{2}{3} \times 15 = 50$  degrees and it will pass through  $130^\circ$  in  $1\frac{1}{3}$  hours = 8 hours 40 minutes

Prop No. 15.

4 (i) The  $\angle AOC = 35^\circ$

$\angle COB = 180^\circ - 35^\circ = 145^\circ$ , i.e., the  $\angle COB$  is supplementary to  $\angle AOC$ .

The  $\angle BOD$  is vertically opposite to  $\angle AOC$  and  $=$  to  $35^\circ$

The  $\angle DOA$  being vertically opposite to  $\angle BOC$  is equal to  $145^\circ$

(ii) all the  $\angle$ s at O taken together are equal to 4 rt  $\angle$ s

But the two angles COB and AOD are equal to  $250^\circ$ .

the remaining  $\angle$ s AOC and BOD  $= 360^\circ - 250^\circ = 110^\circ$

As the  $\angle COA = \angle BOD$  each of the  $\angle$ s COA and BOD  $= \frac{110}{2}$  or  $55^\circ$

(iii) all the four  $\angle$ s at O  $=$  4 rt  $\angle$ s or  $360^\circ$  the  $\angle AOD = 360^\circ - 274^\circ = 86^\circ$  and the  $\angle COB = \angle AOD$   $\angle COB = 86^\circ$  But the  $\angle$ s AOC + COB + BOD  $= 274^\circ$  (hyp) the angles AOC + BOD  $=$  4  $\angle$ s at O - ( $\angle$ s COB + AOD)  
 $= 360^\circ - 2 \times 86$   
 $= 360^\circ - 172^\circ$   
 $= 188^\circ$

But  $\angle AOC = \angle BOD$  each of the  $\angle$ s AOC and BOD  $= 94^\circ$

Prop No 16

5 AB is the given st line, OC and OD two st. lines coming from opposite directions meet in AB at O, and make  $\angle COB = \angle AOD$ , then OD and OC shall be in one st line.  $\angle AOD = \angle COB$  [hyp.] add  $\angle AOC$  to each

.  $\angle$ s AOD + AOC  $=$   $\angle$ s COB + COA.

But the  $\angle$ s  $COB + AOC = 2 \text{ rt } \angle$ s [Theo 1.]

$\therefore$  the  $\angle$ s  $AOD + AOC = 2 \text{ rt } \angle$ s

$\therefore$  OC and OD are in the same st line [Theo 2]

Prop No. 17.

6 As OX bisects the  $\angle$  BOD.  $\therefore \angle BOX = \angle DOX$  OX is produced to Y, and the  $\angle BOX =$  vertical opposite  $\angle AOY$ , and the  $\angle DOX =$  the  $\angle COY$   $\therefore$  the  $\angle AOY =$  the  $\angle COY$  Hence the  $\angle AOC$  is bisected by the st line XY

Prop No 18

7. In the figure as given above. The st line OX bisects the  $\angle$  BOD, and OY bisects the  $\angle$  AOC. the  $\angle BOX = \angle DOX$  and the  $\angle AOY = \angle COY$  But the  $\angle$ s AOC, BOD are  $=$  for they are vertical opposite  $\angle$ s  $\therefore$  their halves are equal, i.e.,  $\angle BOX = \angle AOY$  and  $\angle DOX = \angle COY$ . As DC is one st line and the  $\angle$ s DOX, XOD, and COB are together  $= 2 \text{ rt } \angle$ s But  $\angle DOX$  has been proved to be  $= \angle COY$  [Theo 1]  $\therefore$  the  $\angle$ s XOB, BOC, COY  $= 2 \text{ rt } \angle$ s. consequently, the lines OX and OY are in the same line [Theo 2]

Prop No. 19

8 As OX is the bisector of the  $\angle$  AOB.  $\therefore \angle AOX = \angle BOX$  Now folding the figure about OX, the st line OB will fall on OA for the  $\angle BOX = \angle AOX \therefore$  OA and OB must coincide

(i) If the  $\angle AOX$  be  $> \angle BOX$  then OA will fall beyond OB as OA'

(ii) In case the  $\angle AOX$  be less than the  $\angle BOX$ , OA will fall within the  $\angle BOX$  as OA''

Prop No 20

9. As the  $\angle BOC = \angle BOD$  and the  $\angle AOC = \angle AOD$  Now by folding the figure about AB, the line OD must coincide with the line OC, since the  $\angle AOD$  is a rt  $\angle$  and  $= \angle AOC$  a rt  $\angle$  and  $\angle BOD = \angle BOC$ , for the equal angles occupy equal space.

Prop. No 21.

10 As the  $\angle$  made by a st line is equal to  $2 \text{ rt } \angle$ s.

$\therefore$  the  $\angle$  at O in AB  $= 2 \text{ rt } \angle$ s, now by folding the st. line AB about O and making the st line OB fall on OA, the crease made by

the fold and left on the paper as marked OX in the figure will bisect the  $\angle$  AOB, i.e., 2 rt  $\angle$ s, the crease OX will make an  $\angle$  of  $90^\circ$  with OA and OB, i.e., OX will be perp to AB

### PART I

PAGE 19

Theor 4

No of Exercise.

1 Let ABC be an isos  $\triangle$  of which side AB = side AC, and BC the base AD bisects the vertical  $\angle$  BAC.

Prop No. 22

Now in two  $\triangle$ s BAD and CAD, AB = AC, and AD is common, and the included  $\angle$  BAD = included  $\angle$  CAD BD = CD [Theo. 4]

(ii) and the  $\triangle$ s are = in all respects. the  $\angle$  ADB =  $\angle$  ADC and they are adjacent  $\angle$ s

$\therefore$  each of them is a rt  $\angle$ , and consequently AD is perpendicular to BC.

Therefore the bisector of the vertical  $\angle$  BAC of the isos.  $\triangle$  ABC bisects the base BC at rt  $\angle$ s, i.e., BD = DC & AD is perpendicular to BC.

2

Prop No 23.

Let O be the middle point of AB and OC perpendicular to AB A point P is taken in OC If straight lines PA & PB be drawn, PA shall be equal to PB

In the two  $\triangle$ s PAO & PBO, the side OA = the side OB, and PO common to both and the included  $\angle$  AOP = the included  $\angle$  BOP  $\therefore$  both the  $\triangle$ s are equal in all respects and the base AP = the base BP.

Prop No 24

3 Suppose ABCD is a square of which side AB = BC = CD = DA and the  $\angle$ s ABC, BCD, CDA, & DAB all rt  $\angle$ s Then the diagonal AC shall be = BD Now in two  $\triangle$ s ABC & DCB, the side AB = DC, and BC is common, and the included  $\angle$  ABC a rt.  $\angle$  = the included  $\angle$  DCB also a rt  $\angle$

$\therefore$  the  $\triangle$  ABC = the  $\triangle$  DCB in all respects [Theo 4]

$\therefore$  AC = DB.

## Prop No 25

4 Let ABCD be a square L, M, and N middle points in AB, BC and CD respectively

- (i) Join LM and MN Then LM shall be equal to MN Now taking the two  $\triangle$ s LBM and NCM, LB half of AB = NC half of DC, and BM = MC because M bisects BC. sides LB and BM = sides NC and MC, and the included angle LBM = the included angle NCM.  $\therefore$  the base LM = MN [Theo 4]
- (ii) Join AM and DM In the two  $\triangle$ s ABM and DCM, AB = DC, and BM = CM, and the angle ABM =  $\angle$  DCM  $\therefore$  two  $\triangle$ s ABM and DCM are equal, and the base AM = DM.
- (iii) Join AM and AN. In two  $\triangle$ s ABM and ADN, AB = AD being sides of a  $\square$  and BM = DN being halves of equal sides BC and DC and the  $\angle$  B =  $\angle$  D  $\therefore$  the  $\triangle$  ABM = the  $\triangle$  ADN. the base AM = AN. [Theo 4]
- (iv) Join BN and DM. In two  $\triangle$ s BCN and DCM, BC = DC, and CN = CM, and the  $\angle$  C being common  $\therefore$  the  $\triangle$ s BCN and DCM are equal and the base BN = DM [Theo 4]

## Prop No. 26

5 Let ABC be an isosc  $\triangle$  of which AB = AC From AB and AC, AX and AY equal parts are respectively cut off from AB and AC Join BY and CX Then BY shall be = CX. In the two  $\triangle$ s ABY and ACX the two sides AB and AC are respectively = two sides AC and CX, and the  $\angle$  at A is common to two  $\triangle$ s  $\therefore$  the base BY = CX [Theor. 4]

## PART I.

PAGE 21.

( Theor 5 )

## Prop. No. 27.

No. of Exercise.

1. The figure ABCD is four-sided, its side AB = BC = CD = DA and BD is its diagonal.

- (i) In the  $\triangle ABD$ , sides  $AB$  and  $AD$  are equal [hyp].  $\therefore$  the  $\angle$ s  $ABD$  and  $ADB$  at the base  $BD$  are equal [Theor 5]  
 (ii) Similarly  $BC = CD$  (hyp) and the  $\angle CBD = \angle CDB$  [Theor. 5].  
 (iii) In (i) part of this exercise it is proved that  $\angle ABD = \angle ADB$ , and in (ii) part it is shown that  $\angle CBD = \angle CDB$ .  
 $\therefore$  The whole  $\angle ABC =$  whole  $\angle CDA$

## Prop No 28

2.  $ABC$  is an isosc  $\triangle$ , the angles  $ABC$  and  $ACB$  at the base  $BC$  are equal. Similarly in the isosc  $\triangle DBC$ , the  $\angle$ s  $DBC$  and  $DCB$  at the base  $BC$  are equal, the whole  $\angle ABD =$  the whole  $\angle ACD$

## Prop. No 29

3. Two isosc.  $\triangle$ s  $ABC$  and  $DBC$  are on the same base  $BC$  and on the same side of it. In the  $\triangle ABC$  the  $\angle$ s  $ABC$  and  $ACB$  are equal [Theor 5]

And similarly in the  $\triangle DBC$ , the  $\angle$ s  $DBC$  and  $DCB$  are equal. [Theor 5.]

Now from the equal  $\angle$ s  $DBC$  and  $DCB$  take away the equal  $\angle$ s.  $ABC$  and  $ACB$  respectively the remaining  $\angle ABD =$  remaining  $\angle ACD$ .

## Prop No 30.

4.  $AB$  and  $AC$  equal sides of an isosc  $\triangle$ , are bisected at  $L$  and  $N$  respectively, and the base  $BC$  is bisected at  $M$

$\therefore AL = LB$ ,  $AN = NC$  and  $BM = CM$

- (i) In the two  $\triangle$ s  $LBM$  and  $NCM$ , the sides  $LB$  and  $BM$  of the one = the sides  $NC$  and  $CM$  of the other respectively, and included  $\angle LBM = \angle NCM$  because they are  $\angle$ s at the base of an isosc  $\triangle$  [Theor. 5]

$\therefore$  the base  $LM =$  the base  $MN$  [Theor 4]

- (ii) Join  $BN$  and  $CL$

Now there are two  $\triangle$ s  $LCB$  and  $NBC$  of which the two sides  $LB$  and  $BC = NC$  and  $CB$  and the included  $\angle LBC = \angle NCB$  and the  $\triangle LBC = \triangle NCB$  in all respects.  $\therefore LC = BN$ . [Theor. 4]

(ii) Now because  $AB = AC$  (hyp), and they are bisected at  $L$  and  $N$  respectively in the  $\triangle ALN$ , the side  $AL = AN$ .  
Hence the  $\angle ALN = \angle ANL$ .

Again because  $LM$  has been proved  $= MN$   $\therefore \angle MLN = \angle MNL$  [Theor 5]

Hence the whole  $\angle ALM = \text{whole } \angle ANL$ .

---

### PART I.

PAGE 26

(Theor 4 & 7)

Prop No 31.

No of Exercise

1 Let  $ABC$  be an isosc  $\triangle$  and  $D$  the middle point of the base  $BC$ . Join  $AD$ .

Then (i)  $AD$  shall bisect the angle  $BAC$ , (ii)  $AD$  shall be perpendicular to the base  $BC$ .

(i) In the two  $\triangle$ s  $ABD$  and  $ACD$ , the side  $AB = AC$  because they are the sides of an isosc  $\triangle$ .

$AD$  is common to both, and the base  $BD = CD$  for the point  $D$  bisects the base  $BC$ .

the vertical  $\angle BAD = \text{vertical } \angle CAD$

$\therefore$ , the  $\angle BAC$  is bisected by  $AD$  [Theo 7]

(ii) The two triangles  $ABD$  and  $ACD$  being equal in all respects, the  $\angle ADB = \text{angle } ADC$  but these are the adjacent angles.

$\therefore$  the angles  $ADB$  and  $ADC$  are rt. angles.

$\therefore$ ,  $AD$  is perpendicular to  $BC$ .

Prop No. 32.

2  $ABCD$  is an equilateral four-sided figure, and  $AC$  is its diagonal

Since  $AB = AD$ , and  $BC = DC$  and the base  $AC$  is common  $\therefore$  the  $\triangle ABC = \triangle ADC$  in all respects,  $\therefore$ , (i) the angle  $ABC = \text{angle } ADC$  and the angle  $BAC = \text{angle } DAC$ , and angle  $BCA = \text{angle } DCA$

(ii)  $\therefore$  the whole angle  $BAD = \text{whole angle } DCB$ .

Prop No 33.

3  $ABCD$  is a four-sided figure of which opposite sides are equal, namely  $AB = DC$  and  $AD = BC$ , join  $AC$ .

Then in the two  $\triangle$ s  $ABC$  and  $ADC$ , two sides  $AB$  and  $BC =$  two sides  $CD$  and  $AD$  each to each, and the base  $AC$  is common  $\therefore$  the  $\triangle ABC = \triangle ADC$  in all respects [Theor. 7.] and  $\therefore$  the  $\angle ABC = \angle CDA$ .

4. This exercise has already been proved in exercises No. 2 and 3 under Theorem 5 or this can be proved thus.

Prop No. 34.

- (1) In the first case both the isosc.  $\triangle$ s are on the same base and on the same side of the base  $BC$ , (11) second case both  $\triangle$ s  $ABC$  and  $DBC$  are on the opposite side of  $BC$ .

Prop No 35

- (11) In both these cases join  $AD$  Then because in the two  $\triangle$ s  $ABD$  and  $ACD$ , the two sides  $AB$  and  $BD$  in the one are equal to two sides  $AC$  and  $CD$  in the other and  $AD$  is common to both  $\therefore$  the two  $\triangle$ s  $ABD$  and  $ACD$  are equal in all respects [Theor. 7]  $\therefore$  the angle  $ABD =$  angle  $ACD$ .

5 The figure for this exercise is the same as that of the (11) case of the last preceding exercise In the two  $\triangle$ s  $BAD$  and  $CAD$ ,  $BA = CA$ , and  $AD$  is common, and the third side  $BD$  of the one  $=$  the third side  $CD$  of the other  $\therefore$  the angle  $BAD =$  angle  $CAD$ ,  $\therefore$  the angle  $BAC$  is divided into two equal parts by  $AD$ .

Similarly the angle  $BDA =$  angle  $CDA$ ,  $\therefore$  the angle  $BDC$  is bisected by  $AD$

6. This exercise has already been solved in (11) case of the exercise No 4 under Theorem 5

Prop No. 36

7.  $ABC$  is an isosc.  $\triangle$ ,  $D$  and  $E$  are the two points in the base  $BC$ , equidistant from  $B$  and  $C$ ,  $\therefore$   $BD = CE$  Join  $AD$  and  $AE$

In the two  $\triangle$ s  $ABD$  and  $ACE$ , the two sides  $AB$  and  $BD =$  two sides  $AC$  and  $CE$ , and the angle  $ABD =$  angle  $ACE$ . [Theor. 5]  $\therefore$  the base  $AD =$  the base  $AE$ . [Theor. 4]

## Prop No 37.

8  $ABC$  is an equilateral  $\triangle$ , and  $D, E, F$  are the middle points of the sides  $AB, BC$ , and  $AC$  respectively. Join  $DE, DF$  and  $EF$ . as  $AB = BC = AC$ , and points  $D, E$  and  $F$  bisect them  $\therefore AD = DB = BE = EC = FC = AF$ . Now in the three triangles  $DAF, DBE$  and  $ECF$  two sides of the one = two sides of the other, namely,  $AD$  and  $AF = DB$  and  $BE = EC$  and  $CF$ , and the included  $\angle$ s  $A, B$ , and  $C$  are equal [Cor. 2, Theor 5]

The bases of the three  $\triangle$ s  $DAF, DBE$  and  $ECF$  are equal [Theor 4] namely  $DF = DE = EF$ .

$\therefore$  the  $\triangle DEF$  is equilateral.

## Prop No 38

9 The angles  $ABC, ACB$  and at the base  $BC$  of an isosc  $\triangle ABC$  are bisected by  $BO$  and  $CO$  respectively.

(i) The angle  $OBC = \text{angle } OCB$  because each of them is half of the angles at the base of the isosc  $\triangle$ ,  $\therefore$  the side  $BO = \text{side } OC$  [Theor 6]

(ii) Join  $AO$ . In the two  $\triangle$ s  $BAO$  and  $CAO$ , the two sides  $BA$  and  $AO$  of one = two sides  $CA$  and  $AO$  of the other, and the base  $BO = OC$ ,  $\therefore$  the angle  $BAO = \text{angle } CAO$  [Theor 7]

## Prop No 39.

10.  $ABCD$  is a rhombus,  $AC$  and  $BD$  are its diagonals intersecting each other at  $E$ . In the  $\triangle$ s  $BAC$  and  $DAC$ ,  $BA$  and  $AC = DA$  and  $AC$ , and the base  $BC = \text{base } CD$ ,  $\therefore$  angle  $BAC = \text{angle } DAC$

Now in the  $\triangle$ s  $BAE$  and  $DAE$ ,  $BA = DA$ , and  $AE$  common to both, and the angle  $BAE = \text{angle } DAE$ ,  $\therefore$  the base  $BE = \text{base } DE$ , and the angle  $AEB = \text{angle } AED$ , but these angles are adjacent,  $\therefore$  each of them is a rt. angle.

Similarly taking  $\triangle$ s  $ABE$  and  $CBE$  it can be proved that  $AE = EC$ , and that each of the angles  $AEB$  and  $CEB$  is a rt. angle

$\therefore$  the diagonals of a rhombus bisect each other at rt. angle.



Prop No 40.

11. In the  $\triangle$ s BFA and CEA, the two sides BA and AF = CA and AE respectively, and the angles BAF = angles CAE for they are vertical opposite angles  $\therefore$  the  $\triangle$  BFA =  $\triangle$  CEA in all respects [Theor. 4]  $\therefore$  base BF = base CE.

## PART I.

PAGE 27.

## Exercises on Triangles.

Prop No 41

No of Exercise

1 Make a line AB = 2" With the centre A and at a distance = 2 1" draw an arc, and from the centre B at a distance = 1 3" draw another arc cutting former at C, join AC and BC,  $\therefore$  ABC is the required  $\triangle$ .

With the help of the protractor measure the angle A which =  $37^\circ$ , and the angle B =  $77^\circ$ , the third angle C =  $66^\circ$  The sum of these angles =  $37 + 77 + 66 = 180^\circ$

2 In the figure ABC,  $a = 7.5$  cm,  $b = 7$  cm, and  $c = 6.5$  cm From the point B draw a perpendicular BD on AC and measure out BD with the help of a cm scale which in this case = 6 cm.

Prop No 42

3 Draw a line AC =  $b = 7$  cm at the point C in AC make an angle =  $65^\circ$  with the help of a protractor, and from the second arm CB cut off a part  $a = 7$  cm and join it with A; then ACB is the required  $\triangle$  of which side AC = 6 cm, CB = 7 cm, and included angle ACB =  $65^\circ$

When the two  $\triangle$ s have the above data they are equal in all respects, according to theor 4 and they are said to be alike in size and shape

To prove the result by experiment, draw two triangles of the same parts, and cut out the one and apply it to the other so that equal sides of the one cover the corresponding sides of the other and the equal angle the equal angle, then the two  $\triangle$ s will be congruent

## Prop. No 43.

4 Describe the triangle in the manner explained above

With the help of the same scale and protractor measure side BC, and the angles B, and C  $BC = 2\ 2''$ , angle  $B = 49^\circ$ , angle  $C = 74^\circ$ .

The triangle drawn with the data just found namely angles B and C, and side BC, and it will be equal to the former in all respects.

## Prop No 44.

5 In the accompanying figure AB is the height of the window = 35 feet above the ground, the foot C of the ladder AC is 12 ft. from the wall, i.e.,  $BC = 12$  ft and the angle at B is rt angle. The figure is drawn with the help of a scale,  $1' \text{ in} = 10'$  ft

By measuring the ladder AC with the help of the same scale, it is found to be  $3\ 7''$  of the scale or 37 ft

## Prop No 45

## Prop No 46

6. I start from A and go North to N a distance = 99 metres, and from N turn East 20 metres to E In plotting the course a scale  $1\text{ cm} = 10\text{ metres}$  is used

The angle at N = a rt angle.

Join EA.

By measuring EA with the above scale, EA is found  $10\ 2\text{ cm}$ , nearly,  $\therefore$  the distance between E and A is nearly 102 metres.

## Prop. No 47

7 The observer is C, AC is the horizon, AD is the direction of sun's rays AB the height of the pole. AC shadow of the pole. angle ACB is the elevation of the sun above the horizon =  $42^\circ$ . angle A = rt angle

angle  $B = 48^\circ$

By measuring AB with the help of the same scale ( $1'' = 10\text{ ft}$ ) it is found =  $2\ 7''$  or  $27'$  feet

## Prop. No 48

8 This figure shows the course the surveyor took The distance AD was found by measurement with scale to be  $4\ 25$  inches or 425

ft The angle  $\angle DAB = 135^\circ$ , and point D bears from A  $135^\circ - 90^\circ = 45^\circ$  the bearing of the point D is  $45^\circ$  towards west, i.e., due N W

#### Prop No 49

9 In the figure B and C are the points on the shore S is a ship.

The bearing of S from B is angle  $\angle CBS = 33^\circ$  and from C is angle  $\angle BCS = 81^\circ$

Complete the  $\triangle$  by joining BS and CS On measurement  $BS = 28''$  inches on the scale or 280 yds and  $CS = 161''$  or 161 yds From S draw SA perpendicular to BC, then SA is the shortest line from S to BC which when measured is found  $16''$  in the scale or 160 yds on the ground

#### Prop No 50

10 From the accompanying plan draw in scale  $1'' = 100$  ft.  
 $AB = 22''$  or 220 ft.

---

#### PART I

##### PAGE 29

##### Theor 8

#### Prop No 51

##### No of Exercise

1 ABC is a  $\triangle$ , any two angles of it = less than 2 rt angles.

Take a point D in BC Join AD

The ext angle  $\angle ADC >$  the int angle  $\angle ABC$ , again the ext. angle  $\angle ADB >$  the int angle  $\angle ACD$  [Theor 4]

The angles  $\angle ADC + \angle ADB >$  the angles  $\angle ABC + \angle ACB$  But the angles  $\angle ADC + \angle ADB = 2$  rt angles [Theor 1]

. the angles  $\angle ABC + \angle ACB < 2$  rt angles

#### Prop No 52

2. (i) Produce BD to meet AC at E

The ext angle  $\angle BEC$  is  $>$  the int angle  $\angle BAE$  [Theor 8]

Again the ext angle  $\angle BDC$  is  $>$  the int angle  $\angle DEC$  [Theor 8]

$\therefore$  much more the angle BDC is  $>$  the angle BAC.

(ii) Join AD, and produce it to F

Then because in the  $\triangle ADB$ , the ext. angle BDF is  $>$  the int. angle BAD. [Theor. 8.]

Again in the  $\triangle ADC$ , the ext. angle CDF is  $>$  the int. angle CAD. [Theor. 4.]

$\therefore$  the whole angle BDC is  $>$  the whole angle BAC

Prop. No 53.

3. The side BC of a  $\triangle ABC$  be produced both ways to D and E the ext. angles ACD and ABE are  $>$  two rt angles.

The ext. angle ACD and the int. angle ACB are = two rt. angles.

Similarly ext. angle ABE + int. angle ABC = two rt. angles.

But the two int. angles ABC and ACB are  $<$  2 rt angles.

$\therefore$  the ext. angles ACD and ABE are  $>$  two rt. angles.

Prop. No. 54.

4 A is a point outside the line BC Take any point O on the other side of BC From the centre A at the distance AO, describe an arc cutting BC at D and E. Join AD and AE. AD and AE are the only two equal st. lines that can be drawn from A to BC.

If possible draw another st. line AP equal to AD or AE. Then  $AD = AE$

The angle ADE = angle AED [Theor. 5]

But  $AP = AE$ ,  $\therefore$  angle APE = AEP [Theor. 5]

But the angle AEP = ADE.  $\therefore$  the angle APE is also = the angle ADE.

But the angle APE is the ext. angle of the  $\triangle ADP$   $\therefore$  the ext. angle APE = the int. angle ADE which is absurd. [Theor. 8.]

$\therefore$  There cannot be drawn more than two equal st. lines from a given point outside a given line to it.

Prop. No 55.

5. The two equal sides AB and AC of an isosc.  $\triangle ABC$  are produced to D and E.

The ext angles CBD and BCE must be obtuse

The int angle ABC together with the adjacent ext angle CBD = two rt angles

Similarly the two angles ACB and BCE = two rt angles

But both the interior angles ABC and ACB are  $<$  two rt. angles the ext angles CBD and BCE are  $>$  two rt angles

As the int angles ABC and ACB are equal, the angles CBD and BCE are equal, and hence each of the angles BCE and CBD is greater than one rt angle, i. e., is obtuse

## PART I

PAGE 34

(Theor 9—12)

Prop No 56

1 ABC is a rt angled  $\triangle$ , the angle C being a rt angle AB is the hypotenuse which is the greatest side

Since the angle ACB = a rt angle, the angles ABC and BAC are also = one rt angle, each of the angles ABC and BAC is  $<$  a rt angle

the angle ACB is  $>$  each of the angles ABC and BAC But greater angle is subtended by the greater side. AB is  $>$  either of the sides AC and BC

Prop No 57

2 The side BC of the  $\triangle$  ABC is the greatest, i. e., BC is greater than either of the two sides AB and AC

But by Theor 9 the angle opposite to the greater side is greater than the angle opposite to the less the angle BAC opposite to the greatest side BC is greatest of the remaining angles ABC and ACB which are opposite to the smaller sides AB and AC, and these angles ABC and ACB are adjacent to BC the greatest side

BC the greatest side of the  $\triangle$  ABC makes acute angles ABC and ACB with the smaller sides AB and AC of the  $\triangle$  ABC

3 Take the figure given in exercise 2. (1) under Theor 8, page 29.

In the  $\triangle ABE$ , the two sides  $BA$  and  $AE$  are  $>$  the side  $BE$   
 [Theor. 11] Add  $EC$ .

$AB + AE + EC$  are together  $> BE + EC$ , i. e.,  $BA + AC > BE + EC$

Again in the  $\triangle DEC$ , the sides  $DE$  and  $EC$  are  $> DC$  [Theor. 17] Add  $BD$

$EC + ED + BD$  are together  $> CD + BD$ , i. e.,  $BE + EC > BD + DC$

But  $BA + AC$  has been proved  $> BE + EC$ .

Much more  $BA + AC > BD + DC$ .

Prop No 58.

4. In the  $\triangle ACD$ , the ext angle  $ACB$  is  $>$  the int angle  $ADC$  [Theor. 8]

But the angle  $ACB =$  the angle  $ABC$ , being equal sides of an isosc  $\triangle$

the angle  $ABC$  is  $>$  the angle  $ADC$ .

But greater angle is subtended by the greater side.  $\therefore AD$  is  $> AB$ . [Theor 10]

But  $AB = AC$ .

$\therefore AD$  is  $>$  either of  $AB$  or  $AC$ .

Prop No 59.

5. Let  $ABCD$  be the quadrilateral figure of which  $AD$  is the least side and  $BC$  the greatest. Each of the angles  $BAD$  and  $CDA$  shall be greater than their opposite angles, namely  $BCD$  and  $ABC$  respectively

Join  $AC$ .

Then because  $DC > AD$ , the angle  $DAC$  opposite to the greater side  $DC$  is  $>$  the angle  $DCA$  opposite to the least side  $AD$ . [Theor 9]

Again in the  $\triangle ABC$ ,  $BC > AB$ , the angle  $BAC$  is  $>$  the angle  $BCA$ . [Theor 9]

But the angle  $DAC$  has been proved  $>$  the angle  $DCA$ .  $\therefore$  the whole angle  $DAB$  is greater than the whole angle  $DCB$ .

Similarly, by joining  $DB$  it can be proved that the angle  $ADC$  is  $>$  the angle  $ABC$ .

## Prop. No. 60.

6. In the  $\triangle ABC$ , if  $AC$  is not  $> AB$ , it must be either  $= AB$  or angle  $AB$ .

From  $A$  draw  $AD$  meeting  $BC$  at  $D$ .

$AD$  shall be  $< AB$ .

If  $AC = AB$ . The angle  $ACB =$  the angle  $ABC$ .

But the angle  $ADB$  is  $>$  the angle  $ACD$ ;  $\therefore$  the angle  $ADB >$  the angle  $ABD$ .

The greater angle has the greater side opposite to it.  $\therefore AB > AD$ .  
(Theor. 9.)

Again if  $AC$  is  $< AB$ . Then the angle  $ACB$  is  $>$  the angle  $ABC$ .

But the angle  $ADB$  is  $>$  the angle  $ACD$ .

Much more the angle  $ADB$  is  $>$  the angle  $ABC$ .

$\therefore$  the side  $AB$  is  $>$  the side  $AD$ .

## Prop. No. 61.

7. If the side  $AB$  is  $>$  the side  $AC$ , the angle  $ACB$  is  $>$  the angle  $ABC$ .

But the angle  $ABC$  is bisected by  $BO$ ,  $\therefore$  the angle  $OBC$  is half of the angle  $ABC$ .

In the same manner the angle  $OCB$  is half of the angle  $ACB$ .

$\therefore$  the angle  $OCB$  is  $>$  the angle  $OBC$ , and the side  $BO$  is  $>$  the side  $OC$ . (Theor. 9.)

## Prop. No. 62.

8. In the  $\triangle ABC$ , the difference of  $AB$  and  $AC$  is less than  $BC$ .

(i) If  $AB = AC$ , their difference is  $= 0$  which is less than  $BC$ .

## Prop. No. 63.

(ii) If  $AB$  is  $> AC$ , cut off  $AD = AC$ , and join  $DC$ . Produce  $AC$  to  $E$ .

## Prop. No. 64.

The  $\angle ADC =$  the  $\angle ACD$ .

$\therefore$  the suppl.  $\angle BDC =$  the suppl.  $\angle DCE$  [Cor. 3, Theor. 1]

But the  $\angle DCE$  is  $>$  the  $\angle DCB$ .

$\therefore$  the  $\angle BDC$  is  $>$  the  $\angle DCB$ , and hence the side  $BC$  is  $>$  the side  $BD$  which the difference of  $AB$  and  $AC$ .

(iii) If  $AB$  is  $< AC$ , from  $AC$  cut off  $AD = AB$ , join  $BD$ , produce  $AB$  to  $E$

By the same method of reasoning it can be proved that the  $\angle BDC$  is  $>$  the  $\angle CBD$ , and  $\therefore$  the side  $BC$  is  $>$  the side  $DC$ , the difference between  $AC$  and  $AB$ .

Prop. No. 65.

9.  $O$  is a point in the  $\triangle ABC$ . Join  $OA$ ,  $OB$ , and  $OC$ . Then  $OA + OB + OC$  shall be greater than half the perimeter of the  $\triangle ABC$ .

$OA + OB$  is  $> AB$ ,  $OB + OC$  is  $> BC$ , and  $OA + OC$  is  $> AC$ . Then the sum of these, i. e., twice  $OA + OB + OC >$  the sum of  $AB$ ,  $BC$ , and  $AC$ , i. e., the perimeter of  $ABC$ .

$\therefore$  the sum of  $OA$ ,  $OB$  and  $OC$  is  $>$  half the perimeter of the  $\triangle ABC$ .

Prop. No. 66.

10.  $ABCD$  is a four-sided figure, its perimeter is greater than the sum of the diagonals. Join  $AC$ .

The two sides  $AB$ ,  $BC$  are  $> AC$ , and the two sides  $CD$ ,  $DA$  are also  $> AC$   $\therefore$  the sum of the four sides is  $>$  twice the diagonal  $AC$ .

Similarly by joining  $BD$ , it can be proved that the sum of the four sides is  $>$  twice the diagonal  $BD$ .

$\therefore$  Twice the sum of the four sides is  $>$  twice the sum of the diagonals  $AC$  and  $BD$ .

$\therefore$  the perimeter of the quadrilateral figure is  $>$  the sum of the diagonals.

Prop. No. 67.

11. Produce  $AX$  to  $Y$ .

Then because the ext. angle  $BXY$  is  $>$  the int. angle  $BAX$ . [Theor. 8]

But the angle  $BXY = \text{angle } AXC$ . [Theor. 3.]

$\therefore$  the angle  $AXC$  is  $>$  the angle  $BAX$  or  $CAX$ , for the angle  $BAX = \text{the angle } CAX$ .

$\therefore$  the side  $AC$  is  $>$  the side  $XC$ .

Similarly the angle  $AXB$  is  $>$  the angle  $BAX$ .

$\therefore AB$  is  $> BX$ .

Hence the sum of the two sides  $AB$  and  $AC$  is  $>$  the sum of  $BX$  and  $XC$ , i. e.,  $BC$  the third side.



This is the alternate method of proving the Theorem 11, without producing the side BA.

Prop No. 68.

12. O is a point within the  $\triangle ABC$ , join OA, OB and OC  
The sum of OA, OB and OC shall be less than the perimeter.

By the application of Exercise 3 under this head it can be proved that  $BA + AC > BO + OC$ ,  $AB + BC > OC + OA$ , and  $AC + BC > OA + OB$ .

$\therefore$  Twice the sum of BA, BC and AC is  $>$  twice the sum of OA, OB and OC

$\therefore AB + BC + AC > OA + OB + OC$

Prop No 69.

13 AC and BD are the diagonals of a quadrilateral ABCD, and O is a point in it.

Join OA, OB, OC, and OD

Then  $OA + OB + OC + OD > AC + AD$

Because in the  $\triangle BDO$  the two sides BO and OD are  $>$  BD [Theor. 11] Similarly AO + OC are  $>$  AC

$\therefore$  the sum of OA, OB, OC, and OD is  $>$  the sum of AC and BD.

The exception to the above is when the point O coincides with X the intersection of the two diagonals

Prop No 70

14. In the  $\triangle ABC$  AD is the median from A to BC.

The two sides BA and AC are  $>$  twice AD.

Produce AD to E make  $DE = AD$  and join CE

Then in the two  $\triangle s$  ABD and CDE, the two sides AD and BD are = two sides DE and DC, respectively, and the included angle  $ADB = \text{angle } CDE$ .  $\therefore$  the angle  $ADC = DEC$ .  $AB = CE$  Now in the  $\triangle ACE$ , the two sides AC and CE are together greater than AE, but  $CE = AB$  and  $AD = DE$   $\therefore$  AC and AB are  $>$  twice AD

Prop No. 71.

15 As proved in the last preceding Exercise 14. AB and AC are  $>$  2 AD AB and BC are  $>$  2 BE, and AC and BC are  $>$  2 CF  
 $\therefore$  Twice AB, BC and AC are  $>$  2 AD, 2 BE and 2 CF

$\therefore AB + BC + AC > AD + BE + CF$ .

## PART I.

PAGE 41.

## Parallels.

(Theor 13.—15.)

1. In the figure of Theor. 15, the ext. angle  $EGB = 55^\circ$ , but the angle  $EGB =$  the angle  $GHD =$  the angle  $HKQ$ .

$\therefore$  each of these angles is  $= 55^\circ$

The angle  $QKF$  is the supplementary of  $HKQ$

$\therefore$  angle  $QKF = 180 - 55 = 125^\circ$ .

Prop. No. 72.

2 AB, CD, and EF are the st. lines perpendicular to the st. line GH

Then AB, CD, and EF are  $\parallel$  to one another.

The st line GH meets two st lines AB and CD, and makes int angles BAG, ACD together  $= 2$  rt. angles for each of them is a rt angle [Hyp]

$\therefore$  AB is  $\parallel$  to CD [Theor 13]

In the same manner CD is  $\parallel$  to EF  $\therefore$  AB is  $\parallel$  to EF. [Theor. 15]

Hence AB, CD and EF are  $\parallel$  to one another.

Prop No 73

3. The st line GH meets three  $\parallel$  st. lines AB, CD and EF and it is perpendicular to AB one of the  $\parallel$  lines, then it is also perpendicular to others AB is  $\parallel$  to CD, and GH meets them then the ext. angle  $GXB =$  int angle  $XYD$  [Theor. 14.]

But the angle  $GXB =$  a rt angle, for GH is perpendicular to AB

$\therefore$  the angle  $GYD$  is also a rt angle and GH is perpendicular to CD also

In the same way it can also be proved that GH is perpendicular to EF also

Prop No 74.

4 ABC and DEF are two angles of which side AB is  $\parallel$  DE and BC  $\parallel$  to EF.

The angle ABC shall be  $=$  or supplementary.

(i) Supposing the angles face towards the same direction as in (i).

Produce DE to X meeting BC at X

Now AB is  $\parallel$  DX, BC meets them. The ext. angle  $DXC =$  int. angle ABC [Theor. 14]

For the same reason angle  $DXC = \text{angle } DEF$   $\therefore$  the angle  $ABC = \text{the angle } DEF$ .

Prop No 75

(ii) Suppose the angle  $ABC$  and the angle  $DEF$  oppose each other as in figure (11).

Produce  $ED$  or  $BC$  to  $X$  meeting  $BC$  or  $ED$  if produced in  $X$ .  $AB$  is  $\parallel$  to  $XE$ , and  $BC$  meets them the alter angles  $ABC$  and  $BXE$  are equal (Theor 14)

Again  $BC$  is  $\parallel$  to  $FE$ ,  $XE$  meets them, then the two int. angles  $BXE$  and  $BXF = 2$  rt. angles. [Theor 14]

the angle  $XEF$  is supplementary to the angle  $BXE$  or  $ABC$ .

Prop No 76

5 In the two  $\Delta$ s  $AOC$  and  $BOD$  two sides  $CO$  and  $AO$  are = two sides  $DO$  and  $BO$  respectively [Hyp] and the angle  $AOC = \text{angle } BOD$   $\therefore$  the  $\Delta AOC = \Delta BOD$   $\therefore$  the angle  $CAO = \text{angle } OBD$  and the angle  $AOO = DBO$ . But these angles are altr angles  $\therefore AC$  is  $\parallel$  to  $BD$  [Theor. 13.]

Prop. No 77

6.  $ABC$  is an isosc.  $\Delta$ , a st line  $DE$  is drawn  $\parallel$  to the base  $BC$ , meeting  $AB$  and  $AC$  at  $D$  and  $E$ .

Since  $DE$  is  $\parallel$  to  $BC$  and  $AB$  and  $AC$  fall on them. Then the ext angle  $ADE$  is = to the int opposite angle  $ABC$ , and the ext. angle  $AED$  is = the int. oppt angle  $ACB$

Prop No 78

7  $ABC$  is an angle and  $BD$  its bisector From any point  $O$  in  $BD$ , a st. line  $XOY$  is drawn  $\parallel$  to  $BC$ , meeting  $AB$  at  $X$ .

Then the  $\Delta BXO$  is an isosceles  $\Delta$

Since  $XY$  is  $\parallel$  to  $BC$ , and  $BD$  falls on them, the ext. angle  $DOY = \text{the int oppt. angle } OBC$ . But the angle  $OBC = \text{angle } ABO$ , for  $BD$  bisects it.  $\therefore$  angle  $DOY = \text{angle } ABO$  But the angle  $DOY = \text{angle } XOB$ . [Theor 3.]  $\therefore XB = OX$ .

Prop No 79.

8 The angle  $ABC = \text{angle } ACB$  and the angle  $YXB = \text{angle } ZXC$  of the  $\Delta$ s  $YBX$  and  $ZCX$

, the remaining angle  $BYX$  is = to the remaining angle  $CZX$ . But the angle  $BYX = \text{angle } AYZ$  [Theor. 3]

, the angle  $AYZ = \text{angle } AZY$ , and hence  $AZ = AY$ , i. e., the  $\Delta ZAY$  is an isosceles,

(ii) From A draw AD perp to BC then AD is alt to it

## Prop. No. 80.

9.  $ABC$  is a  $\triangle$  of which side  $BA$  is produced to  $D$ , and the st. line  $AE$  bisects the ext.  $\angle CAD$ . If  $AE$  be  $\parallel$  to  $BC$  and  $BD$  meets them, then the  $\angle ABC = \angle DAE$  [Theor. 14.]

Similarly  $AE$  is  $\parallel$  to  $BC$  and  $A$  meets them the alternate  $\angle$ s.  $EAC$  and  $ACB$  are equal [Theo. 14]

But  $\angle DAE = \angle EAC$   $\therefore \angle ABC = \angle ACB$ . Hence the  $\triangle ABC$  is isosceles

10.  $ABC$  is an  $\angle$ , and  $BD$  its bisector,  $O$  a point in  $BD$ , from  $O$  two  $\parallel$  st. lines  $OX$  and  $OY$  are drawn  $\parallel$  to  $BC$  and  $AB$  respectively. Then the figure  $XYO$  shall be a rhombus.

It has already been proved in Ex. 7. under this head that  $OX = BX$ , and the  $\angle OBX = \angle XOB$ .

On the same analogy it can also be proved that  $OY = BY$  and the  $\angle OBY = \angle BOY$ .

## Prop. No. 81.

$\therefore$  The whole  $\angle XOY = \angle XBY$ . Now ~~from~~ <sup>join</sup>  $XY$ , then in the two  $\triangle$ s  $XYO$  and  $XYB$ , the two sides  $XY$  and  $BY$  are respectively  $=$  to two sides  $XO$  and  $OY$ , and the included  $\angle XBY = \angle XOY$   $\therefore \angle BXY = \angle OXY$ , and  $\angle BYX = \angle OYX$ . Again  $BX$  is  $\parallel$  to  $OY$ ,  $BY$  meets them,  $\therefore$  the  $\angle$ s.  $BYO$  and  $XBY$  are  $=$  two rt.  $\angle$ s. In the same manner  $OXB$  and  $XBY$  are  $=$  two rt.  $\angle$ s.

From these take away common  $\angle XBY$ .

$\therefore$  the remainder  $OYB$  is  $= OXB$ .

But it has already been shewn that  $\angle OXY = \angle BXY$ , and  $\angle BYX = \angle OYX$   $\therefore$  the st. line  $XY$  bisects the equal and opposite  $\angle$ s  $BXO$  and  $BYO$ .

$\therefore$  the  $\angle BXY = \angle BYX$ , and hence side  $XB = YB$ . But  $XB = XO$   $\therefore XO = BY = BX = OY$ . Hence the figure  $XYO$  is a rhombus.

## Prop. No. 82.

11. The st. line  $DZ$  is the bisector of the  $\angle CDB$  and from a point  $Z$  in  $DZ$  a st. line  $ZX$  is drawn parallel to  $AB$   $\therefore XZ = DX$ , as proved in Ex. 7. under this head.

In the same manner  $XY = XD$   $\therefore XY = XZ$ .

Prop No 83

Prop No. 84

12. PA makes 12 revolutions in a minute; i.e., one revolution in 5 seconds, or in other words it moves  $72^\circ$  in one second

QB makes 10 revolutions in a minute, i.e., one revolution in 6 seconds or it moves only  $60^\circ$  in one second

(i) When PA and QB point opposite ways they are  $180^\circ$  apart

$\therefore$  the fastest pivot is found  $180^\circ$  in advance in  $\frac{180^\circ}{72-60} = 15$  sec after they start from the same position

(ii) These will take  $5 \times 6$  seconds, the L.C.M. of the time they take to make one revolution, to point towards the same direction. *Since the rods PA and QB start parallel into the same way, and PA revolves more rapidly than QB,  $\therefore$  it will be again parallel (i) pointing opposite ways, when PA is half a revolution more than QB, and (ii) pointing the same way, when PA has made one complete revolution more than QB.* *use PA makes 12 revs per min.* *PAGE 43, THEO 16, QB makes 10*

Prop No 85

1. ABC is an equi  $\Delta$ . Every equi  $\Delta$  is equiangular. ABC  $\Delta$  is equiangular [Cor 2, Theo 5]

All the three  $\angle$ s of a  $\Delta$  are = two rt  $\angle$ s or  $180^\circ$

$\therefore$  each of the angles of ABC =  $\frac{180}{3} = 60^\circ$

Prop No 86

2. ABC is a rt  $\Delta$  isosc  $\Delta$ , having a rt.  $\angle$  at B. Since in a rt  $\Delta$  hypotenuse is the greatest side

$\therefore$  the sides AB and BC are equal and they contain the rt  $\angle$  B.

As the three  $\angle$ s of a  $\Delta$  are = two rt  $\angle$ s. So the  $\angle$ s BAC and BCA are = one rt  $\angle$ , for the  $\angle$  at B = one rt.  $\angle$

But the  $\angle$  BAC =  $\angle$  BCA [Theor 5]

$\therefore$  each of the  $\angle$ s BAC and BCA = half a rt  $\angle$  or  $45^\circ$

Prop No 87

3 In the  $\Delta$  ABC, the  $\angle$  ABC =  $36^\circ$  and the  $\angle$  ACB  $123^\circ$   
 $\therefore$  the remaining third  $\angle$  BAC =  $180^\circ - (36^\circ + 123^\circ) = 21^\circ$

Prop No. 88

4 ABC is a  $\Delta$  of which the angle ABC =  $111^\circ$  and the angle ACB =  $42^\circ$

$\therefore$  the angle BAC =  $180^\circ - (42^\circ + 111^\circ) = 27^\circ$

Prop. No. 89.

5 The angle  $ACB = 180^\circ - 134^\circ = 46^\circ$  and the angle  $ABC = 180^\circ - (42^\circ + 46^\circ) = 92^\circ$ .

Prop No. 90.

6 The angle  $ACD = 180^\circ - 118^\circ = 62^\circ$  and the  $\angle BAC = 180^\circ - (51^\circ + 62^\circ) = 67^\circ$

Prop No 91.

7  $ABC$  is a  $\triangle$ , and  $XAY$  is drawn  $\parallel$  to  $BC$ .

The  $\angle ABC =$  the angle  $XAB$  for they are the alternate  $\angle$ s [Theor. 14]

Again the angle  $ACB =$  angle  $YAC$  [Theor. 14]

Add to these the  $\angle BAC$  : the three  $\angle$ s  $ABC$ ,  $ACB$  and  $BAC =$  three  $\angle$ s  $XAB$ ,  $YAC$  and  $BAC$  But all the three  $\angle$ s at  $A =$  two rt  $\angle$ s

the three  $\angle$ s of  $\triangle ABC =$  two rt.  $\angle$ s

Prop No 92

8. Let the pair of st lines  $AB$  and  $CD$  be perpendicular to another pair of st lines  $EF$  and  $GH$  respectively. Now produce  $BA$  and  $DC$  to meet at  $X$ , and  $FE$  and  $GH$  to meet at  $Y$ . ~~FE~~  $XY$  cutting  $DC$  produced at  $Z$  The  $\angle BXZ$  shall be equal to the angle  $DYZ$

Now in the two  $\triangle$ s, the  $\angle XBZ = \angle YDZ$  for they are rt.  $\angle$ s; and the  $\angle XZB =$  the angle  $YZD$ . [Theor. 3.]

the remaining angle  $BXZ =$  the remaining angle  $DYZ$ .

(Many figures can be drawn to prove the above. The figure here drawn is one of them

## PART I.

PAGE 44, THEOR 16, COR 1.

Prop. No 93.

(i) By applying the formula  $nD + 360 = n \times 180$ , when  $n =$  No. of sides ~~and~~  $D =$  No of degrees in an angle.

Then for hexagon  $6D + 360 = 6 \times 180 \therefore D = \frac{6 \times 180 - 360}{6} = 720^\circ$  in one angle

Prop. No. 94.

(ii) For octagon  $8D + 360 = 8 \times 180 \therefore D = \frac{8 \times 180 - 360}{8} = 135^\circ$  in one  $\angle$ .

Prop No. 95.

(iii) For a decagon  $10D + 360 = 10 \times 180$   $D = \frac{1800 - 360}{10} = 144^\circ$  in  
an  $\angle$ .

## PART I.

PAGE 45, THEOR. 16.

Prop No. 96.

1. All the  $\angle$ s. of the  $\triangle ABC =$  two rt.  $\angle$ s  $= 180^\circ$  suppose  
 $\angle A = x$ ,  $\angle B = 2x$ , and  $\angle C = 3x$   $\therefore A + B + C = x + 2x + 3x = 6x$   
 $\therefore 6x = 180^\circ \therefore x = 30^\circ \therefore$  angle  $A = 30^\circ$  angle  $B = 60^\circ$  and  $\angle C = 90^\circ$ .

Prop No. 97.

2. (i)  $\angle A = x$ , each of  $B$  and  $C = 2x$ .  $\angle$ s.  $A + B + C = 5x$ ,  $5x =$   
 $180^\circ \therefore x = 36^\circ \therefore \angle A = 36^\circ$  and each of the  $\angle$ s  $B$  and  $C$   
 $= 72^\circ$ .

(ii)  $A + B + C = x + 4x + 4x = 9x \therefore 9x = 180^\circ \therefore x = 20^\circ \angle A = 20^\circ$ ,  
each of the  $\angle$ s  $B$  and  $C = 80^\circ$ .

Prop No. 98

3. The ext.  $\angle ACD = 126^\circ \therefore$  int. adj.  $\angle ACB = 180 - 126$   
 $= 54^\circ$ .

Similarly  $\angle ABC = 180 - 94 = 86^\circ$ .Lastly  $\angle BAC = 180 - 54 - 86 = 40^\circ$ .

Prop No. 99.

4. Let  $x$  and  $y$  be the  $\angle$ s at the base  $BC$ .

Then  $x + y = 162^\circ$ , and  $x - y = 60^\circ$  add  $\frac{x - y = 60}{2x = 222} \therefore x = 111$  and  
 $y = 51$

$\therefore$  the remaining  $\angle BAC = 180^\circ - 51^\circ - 111^\circ = 18^\circ$ .

Prop No. 100.

5.  $\angle ABC = 84^\circ$ ;  $\angle ACB = 62^\circ$ (i)  $\angle BAC = 180^\circ - (84^\circ + 62^\circ) = 34^\circ$ (ii)  $\angle DBC = 42^\circ$ ,  $\angle DCB = 31^\circ$  $\therefore \angle BDC = 180 - (42 + 31) = 107^\circ$ 

Prop No. 101.

6.  $\angle CBE = 180^\circ - 74^\circ = 106^\circ \therefore \angle CBD = 53^\circ$ Again, angle  $BCF = 180^\circ - 62^\circ = 118^\circ \therefore \angle BCD = 59^\circ$ 

Prop No. 102.

7.  $\angle BCD = 114\frac{1}{2}^\circ$ ,  $\angle ABC = 50^\circ$ ,  $\angle BAD = 75\frac{1}{2}^\circ$

$$\therefore \angle A + B + C = 240^\circ$$

But all the  $\angle$ s of the figure =  $360^\circ$

$$\therefore \angle D = 360 - (240^\circ) = 120^\circ$$

Prop. No. 103.

$$8. \text{ Let } \angle A = x, \angle B = 2x, \angle C = 3x, \angle D = 4x.$$

$$\therefore x + 2x + 3x + 4x = 360^\circ \text{ or } 10x = 360^\circ \therefore x = 36^\circ$$

$$\therefore \angle A = 36^\circ, \angle B = 72^\circ,$$

$$\angle C = 108^\circ, \angle D = 144^\circ.$$

Prop. No. 104.

$$9 \text{ In the accompanying five-sided figure angle } B = 40^\circ, \angle C = 78^\circ \\ \angle D = 122^\circ, \angle E = 135^\circ$$

$$\text{All the } \angle\text{s} = 5 \times 180 - 360 = 540^\circ$$

$$\text{The given 4 } \angle\text{s} = 375^\circ \therefore \angle A = 540^\circ - 375 = 165^\circ$$

Prop. No. 105.

10. According to the cor. [Theor. 16]

(1) All the  $\angle$ s of a figure of  $n$  sides + 4 rt.  $\angle$ s = twice as many rt.  $\angle$ s as there are sides.

$$\therefore n \angle\text{s} + 4 \text{ rt } \angle\text{s} = 2n \text{ rt. } \angle\text{s} \quad n \angle\text{s} = 2n \text{ rt. } \angle\text{s} - 4 \text{ rt. } \angle\text{s} \text{ or} \\ \text{one } \angle = \frac{2n-4}{n} \text{ rt. } \angle\text{s} \text{ or } \frac{2(n-2)}{n} \text{ rt } \angle\text{s}.$$

(2) In the figure vertex A is joined to each of the other  $\angle$ s, except the two immediately adjacent to A, the whole figure is divided into as many  $\triangle$ s as there are sides minus two, i. e.,  $(n-2)$   $\triangle$ s.

The three angles of a  $\triangle = 2$  rt. angles.

$\therefore$  all the angles of  $(n-2)$   $\triangle$ s = 2 rt. angles  $\times (n-2)$   $\triangle$ s, or  $2(n-2)$  rt angles

But there are  $n$  sides.

$$\therefore \text{one } \angle = \frac{2(n-2)}{n} \text{ rt. } \angle\text{s}.$$

$$11. \text{ One } \angle \text{ of a regular polygon} = \frac{2(n-2)}{n} \text{ rt. } \angle\text{s},$$

Therefore in (1) case

$$108^\circ = \frac{2n \text{ rt } \angle\text{s} - 4 \text{ rt } \angle\text{s}}{n}$$

$$\text{or } 108n = 2n \times 90 - 360$$



$$108x - 180n = -360^\circ, 72x = 360^\circ$$

$$x = 5 \quad \text{The figure is 5 sided}$$

$$(ii) 156^\circ n = 180n - 360^\circ, 24n = 360^\circ$$

$$\therefore n = 15. \quad \text{The figure is 15 sided.}$$

12. Prop. No. 106 (i) (ii) (iii)

As all the angles at a point taken together are four rt  $\angle$ s, i.e.,  $360^\circ$

In order to know which of the regular figures can be so fitted together round a point as to form a plane surface, the 4 rt  $\angle$ s or  $360^\circ$  be divided by the number of degrees contained in one angle of the figure. In case an  $\angle$  of a regular figure is contained an exact number of times in 4 rt  $\angle$ s, that very figure can be so fitted as to form a plane surface

(i) An  $\angle$  of equi  $\triangle = 60^\circ$

$\therefore \frac{360}{60} = 6$  if six equi  $\triangle$ s are so fitted as shown in figure (i) they form a plane surface

(ii) So with a square whose one  $\angle = 90^\circ$ ,  $\frac{360}{90} = 4$  four squares can be placed side by side as in figure (ii) to form a plane surface

(iii) An  $\angle$  of a hexagon  $= 120^\circ$ .

$\frac{360}{120} = 3$  Three hexagons can be so arranged, as in figure (iii)

For other regular figures this rule cannot be applied. Suppose octagons are so arranged. One  $\angle$  of an octagon  $= 135^\circ$ ,  $\frac{360}{135} = 2 + \frac{90}{135}$  i.e., after placing the  $\angle$ s of two octagons there remains a gap between  $= 90^\circ$ , and if 3 octagons are so placed they overlap

Ex 1 In the figure to example (i) under Cor I, Theor 16, produce DE to X. As the  $\angle$  DEF one of the  $\angle$ s of a regular hexagon  $= 120^\circ$ , and the two  $\angle$ s DEF and FEX are  $= 180^\circ$ .

$\therefore$  the ext  $\angle FEX = 180^\circ - 120^\circ = 60^\circ$  i. e.,  $\frac{2}{3}$  of a rt  $\angle$  which is the value of an  $\angle$  of an equi.  $\Delta$ .

2 Just in the manner given above produce DE in the figures (ii) and (iii) example to cor 1, Theor. 16, then in the figure (ii) the int  $\angle DEF = 135^\circ$   $\therefore$  the ext  $\angle FEX = 180^\circ - 135^\circ = 45^\circ$ .

Figure (iii) the int. angle  $DEF = 144^\circ$ .

$\therefore$  the ext.  $\angle FEX = 180^\circ - 144^\circ = 36^\circ$ .

3. As all the exterior  $\angle$ s. of a regular polygon are  $= 4$  rt.  $\angle$ s.

$\therefore$  (i) the sides of the polygon having an ext  $\angle = 30$  are  $= \frac{160}{30} = 12$ , i. e., the polygon is 12 sided.

(ii) The polygon is  $\frac{160}{24} = 15$  sided AB is  $\parallel$  to CD and EF meets them at E and F.

EO and FO bisect the  $\angle$ s BEF and EFD

Then the  $\angle EOF$  is a rt.  $\angle$

Prop No. 107.

4. The int  $\angle$ s BEF and EFD are  $= 2$  rt  $\angle$ s  $\therefore$  the  $\angle$ s. OEF and OFE half the two int.  $\angle$ s. are  $=$  one rt  $\angle$ . But the three  $\angle$ s OEF, OFE and EOF are  $= 2$  rt  $\angle$ s and the  $\angle$ s OEF and OFE are  $=$  one rt  $\angle$   $\therefore$  The remaining  $\angle EOF =$  one rt.  $\angle$ .

Prop. No 108.

5 ABC is a  $\Delta$ , base BC is produced both ways to X and Y

Now ext  $\angle$ s ABX and ACY together with the int.  $\angle$ s ABC and ACB are  $=$  four rt  $\angle$ s.

But the three  $\angle$ s of  $\Delta ABC = 2$  rt.  $\angle$ s.

Now taking away the  $\angle$ s ABC, ACB and BAC  $= 2$  rt  $\angle$ s.

The remainder ext  $\angle$ s ABX and ACY  $-\angle BAC = 2$  rt.  $\angle$ s.

Prop No. 109 *P. 20*

6 ABC is a  $\Delta$  the  $\angle$ s ABC and ACB at the base BC are bisected by DB and DC.

The three  $\angle$ s ABC, ACB and BAC are  $=$  two rt.  $\angle$ s.

The half of equal things are equal.

$\therefore$  half of the  $\angle$ s ABC, ACB and BAC  $=$  one rt angle.

Again the angles DBC, DCB and BDC  $= 2$  rt angles.

Now by taking away the equals, the remainders are equal.

$\therefore BDC - \frac{1}{2} BAC =$  one rt angle, i. e., the angle BOC  $= \frac{1}{2}$  angle BAC  $+ 90^\circ$ . *and Prop. BOC = 180° -  $\angle$ OBc -  $\angle$ OCB = 180° -  $\frac{1}{2}$ B -  $\frac{1}{2}$ C*

*Hall*

*= 180° - 1 (B + C)*

## Prop No. 110. P. 20

7. The ext  $\angle$ s BCE and CBD together with adj int.  $\angle$ s ACB and ABC are  $= 4$  rt.  $\angle$ s and the three  $\angle$ s of the  $\triangle ABC = 2$  rt  $\angle$ s Take away the equals.

The remainder ext  $\angle$ s BCE and CBD minus  $\angle$  BAC are  $= 2$  rt  $\angle$ s or half of these, i.e., OCB, OBC and minus  $\frac{1}{2}$  of  $\angle$  BAC  $=$  one rt  $\angle$  or  $90^\circ$ .

But the  $\angle$ s BCO, CBO and BOC are  $= 2$  rt. angles,

Again take away the equals.

Then the remainder the angle BOC  $+ \frac{1}{2}$  angle BAC  $=$  one rt. angle or  $90^\circ$  . the angle  $BOC = 90^\circ - \frac{\angle BAC}{2}$

## Prop. No 111

8. ABCD is four-sided and all the int. angles  $\angle A$ ,  $\angle B$ ,  $\angle C$  and  $\angle D$  are  $= 2 \times 4$  rt angles  $= 4$  rt angles or  $=$  four rt. angles

$\therefore$  then halves or the  $\angle \frac{A}{2} + \angle \frac{B}{2} + \angle \frac{C}{2} + \angle \frac{D}{2} = 2$  rt.  $\angle$ s.

But in the  $\triangle OBC$  the angles  $\frac{B}{2}$ ,  $\frac{C}{2}$  and BOC are  $=$  two rt. angles Subtracting the latter from the former we get angle  $\frac{A}{2} +$  angle  $\frac{D}{2} - BOC = 0$

i.e., angles  $\frac{A}{2}$  and  $\frac{D}{2} =$  angle BOC.

## Prop No. 112.

9 The  $\angle ABC = \angle ACB$ ,  $AB = AD$  and  $AB = AC$

$\therefore AC = AD$  and consequently the  $\angle ACD = \angle ADC$

$\therefore$  the  $\angle$ s ABC and ADC are  $= \angle$ s ACB and ACD.

or  $= \angle DCB$ .

But the three  $\angle$ s DBC, BDC and BCD are together  $= 2$  rt  $\angle$ s.

the  $\angle$ s DBC and BDC are  $=$  one rt.  $\angle$  and the  $\angle DCB$  is also  $=$  one rt  $\angle$

## Prop No 113.

10 ABC is a rt angled  $\triangle$  having  $\angle B$  a rt.  $\angle$  and D is the middle point in AC. Join BD

Produce BD to E making  $DE = BD$  and join AE,

Now in the two  $\triangle$ s ADE and BDC,  $AD = DC$  and  $BD = DE$ , and the  $\angle ADE = \angle BDC \therefore$  the  $\triangle ADE = \triangle BDC$  in all respects,  $\therefore$  the angle  $DAE = \angle DCB$ . To each of these add the angle  $BAC$ . Then the whole angle  $BAE = \angle BAC$  and  $ACB$  which are = one rt. angle,  $\therefore$  angle  $BAE =$  one rt. angle.

Now in the two  $\angle$ s ABC and BAE,  $BC = AE$  and  $AB$  is common, and the angle  $ABC = \angle EAB$ .  $\therefore$  the base  $AC =$  the base  $BE$ . But  $AD$  is  $\frac{1}{2} AC$  and  $BD$  is  $\frac{1}{2} BE \therefore BD = AD = CD$ .

## PART I.

PAGE 49, [THEOR 17.]

### On the identical equality of triangles.

Prop. No. 114.

1. ABC is an isosc.  $\triangle$  and  $AB = AC$  the angle  $ABC = \angle ACB$ . CO is perp. on AB, and BP on AC.

Then in the two  $\triangle$ s OBC and PCB, the angles OBC and BOC of the one are = angles PCB and CPB of the other and the side BC opposite to the = sides

$\therefore$  the  $\triangle OBC = \triangle PCB$  in all respects.

$\therefore BP = OC$ .

Prop. No. 115.

2. BO is the bisector of the angle ABC, and O a point in the bisector from which OP and OQ perpendiculars are drawn to AB and BC respectively. In the two  $\triangle$ s BPO and BQO, the angle BPO = BQO, and the angle PBO = QBO, and one side BO common,  $\therefore$  two  $\triangle$ s BPO and BQO are = and  $OP = OQ$ .

Prop. No. 116.

3. In the two angles AOX and BOY,  $AO = BO$ , the angle AXO = angle BYO and the angle AOX = angle BOY.

$\therefore$  the  $\triangle AOX = \triangle BOY$ .

$\therefore AX = BY$ .

Prop. No. 117.

4. In the  $\triangle ABC$ , AD bisects the angle A and is at rt. angle to BC the side AB shall be equal to AC.

Now in the two  $\triangle$ s ABD and ACD, the angle BAD = angle CAD, and the angle ADB = angle ADC, and AD is common

. the  $\triangle$  ABC =  $\triangle$  ACD and  $AB = AC$  - i. e., the  $\triangle$  ABC is isosceles

Prop No 118

5. ABC is a  $\triangle$ , if AD bisects BC at rt angle then  $AB = AC$  In the two  $\triangle$ s ABD and ACD, the angle ADB = angle ADC, and the side BD = side CD and AD is common, then  $\triangle$  ABD is =  $\triangle$  ACD in all respects

.  $AB = AC$

Prop No 119 P. 21

6 ABC is a  $\triangle$ , in which AD bisects the angle BAC, and the base BC  $AB$  shall be = AC Produce AD to E, make  $ED = AD$ . Join CE

In the two  $\triangle$ s ABD and ECD,  $AD = DE$  and  $BD = CD$  and the angle ADB = angle EDC.

$\therefore AB = EC$  [Theor 4] the angle BAD = angle CED. But the angle BAD is = angle CAD [Hyp]

$\angle CEA = \text{angle CAD}$

$\therefore AC = EC$  [Theor 6]

But AB is proved = EC.

$\therefore AB = AC$

Prop No 120

7.  $AB \parallel$  to  $CD$ , the st. line EF meets them at E and F.

The point O is the middle point in EF, and OP, and OQ, are drawn perpendicular to AB and CD respectively Now in the two  $\triangle$ s OPE and OQF, the angle OPE = angle OQF being rt. angles, and the angle POE = angle QOF, and the side OE = OF. [Hyp]

$\therefore \triangle OPE = \triangle OQF$  in all respects and  $OP = OQ$ .

Prop. No 121

8 The st line EF is terminated by two  $\parallel$  st lines AB and CD and bisected at O, another st line PQ passes through O and terminates at P and Q

In the two  $\triangle$ s EOP and FOQ, the angle EOP = angle FOQ, [Theor 3] and angle PEO = angle QFO [Theor. 14] and EO = FO [Hyp.]  $\therefore$  the  $\triangle$  EOP =  $\triangle$  FOQ.

$\therefore PO = QO$ .

Prop No 122. *P. 22*

9 O is a point equidistant from two  $\parallel$  st lines AB and CD, and through it two st lines PQ and XY pass and terminate by the  $\parallel$  st lines AB and CD

In the two  $\Delta$ s EOP and FOQ, the angle EOP = angle FOQ [Theor 3] and the angle OEP = OFQ and the side adj. to them. OE = OF.  $\therefore$  the  $\Delta$  EOP =  $\Delta$  FOQ, and OP = OQ, and EP = FQ

Similarly in two  $\Delta$ s EOX and FOY, it can be proved that OX = OY, and XE = FY

whole XP = whole QY

Prop No 123. *P. 22*

10 In the two  $\Delta$ s ABC and ACD, AB = AD, and BC = CD, and the base AC is common.

$\therefore$  the  $\Delta$  ACB =  $\Delta$  ACD, each to each.  $\therefore$  the angle BAC = angle DAC and the angle BCA = angle DCA, i. e., AC bisects the angles BAD and BCD

Since because the  $\Delta$  BAD is an isosc  $\Delta$ , for AB = AD, and the angle ABD = angle ADB and the angle BAO has been proved = angle DAO the angle AOB = angle AOD but they are adj. angles each of them is a rt angle.

$\therefore$  AC is perpendicular to BD

## Prop No 124

|| There are two  $\Delta$ s BAO and DCO, in which the  $\angle$  BAO = angle DCO being rt. angles, and the angle AOB = COD. [Theor. 3.] and one side AO = CO

$\therefore$  the  $\Delta$  BAO =  $\Delta$  DCO and  $\therefore$  BA = CD. Hence by measuring CD the breadth of the river is known.

## PART I

PAGE 54 REVISION LESSON ON  $\Delta$ s.

1. (i) The property of interior  $\angle$ s of a  $\Delta$  is that all the interior  $\angle$ s = two rt.  $\angle$ s
- (ii) That all the exterior  $\angle$ s = four rt.  $\angle$ s, all the inter angles together with 4 rt. angles are = twice as many rt. angles as there are sides, correspond to a polygon of  $n$  sides also where all the inter. angles =  $2n$  rt. angles - 4 rt. angles or  $2(n-2)$  rt.  $\angle$ s.

The property enumerated in (11) is shared by a  $\triangle$  with all other polygons

2 The  $\triangle$ s can be classified with regard to their angles into three kinds, i. e., rt angled  $\triangle$ , obtuse angled  $\triangle$ , and acute angled  $\triangle$ .

Theor. 16. The three angles of a  $\triangle$  are together = two rt angles.

And cor 1 of Theor 8. Any two angles of a  $\triangle$  are together less than two rt. angles. *And cor 2 of Theor. 8. Every triangle must have at least two acute angles*  
Prop. No 125.

3 Theor 5, 7, 9.

Since in the  $\triangle ABC$ , the sides  $AB$  and  $BC$  or  $\overline{AB}$  and  $\overline{BC}$  are equal, and each of them is  $> AC$  or  $\overline{AC}$

$\therefore$  the angle  $B$  is  $<$  either of angles  $A$  and  $C$ . [Theor 9.]

Now the two angles  $A$  and  $C$  are together less than two rt. angles [Cor. 1. Theor. 8] But the angle  $A =$  angle  $C$  [hyp]

$\therefore$  each of the  $A$  and  $C =$  less than a rt. angle.

And the angle  $B$  has been shewn to be  $<$  either of the angles  $A$  and  $C$ .  $\therefore$  the angle  $B$  is also less than a rt. angle Hence the  $\triangle ABC$  is acute angled.

Prop. No. 126.

4. Theorems, Theor. 6, 10.

(i) the Third angle  $C = 180^\circ - 48^\circ - 51^\circ = 81^\circ$

$\therefore$  the greatest side is  $AB$  [Theor. 10]

Prop. No. 127.

(ii) The third angle  $C = 180^\circ - 2 \times 62\frac{1}{2}^\circ = 55^\circ$

The side  $AC =$  side  $BC$  while the side  $AB$  is less than  $AC$  or  $BC$ .

5. Identically equal  $\triangle$ s. are—

(i) Theor. 17. Prop. No. 128.

(ii) Theor. 4. Prop. No. 129.

(iii) Theor. 7. Prop. No. 130

(vi) Theor. 18. Prop. No. 131.

(iii) Triangles need not be equal. *See (i)*

Prop. No. 132, *id*

(v) Ambiguous case, *See (ii)*, P. 51

Prop. No. 133.

6. (i) Triangles are equal in all respects when

- 1 Two sides and included angles are equal. Theor. 4.
- 2 Three sides are respectively equal. Theor. 7.
3. Two  $\angle$ s and one side either opposite to or adjacent to the equal angles (Theor. 17)
4. The  $\Delta$ s are rt. angled, and Hypotenuses and one side of each equal. (Theor. 18.)

(ii) The triangles in the following cases may or may not be equal ; when

1. The three angles are equal.
- 2 Two sides and one angle are equal, the equal angles being not included between the equal sides

7.(i) In two triangles which have their respective  $\angle$ s equal, the  $\angle$ s are not dependent on the arms; the arms may be longer or shorter but the angles remain the same, hence the equality of the two  $\Delta$ s in all respects remains doubtful. *(ii)*

Prop No 134 *P. 24.*

8 (i) AB is the given st. line and C a point without it. CD is the perpendicular to AB CE and CF are oblique lines one on each side of CD making  $\angle$ s DCE and DCF equal.

In the  $\Delta$  CDF, since the angle CDF is a rt. angle  $\therefore$  the  $\angle$  CFD is less than a rt  $\angle$  [Theor. 8, Cor. 1]

i. e, the angle CFD is  $<$  the angle CDF.

$\therefore$  CD is less than CF. [Theor. 10]

In the same manner it can be shown that CD is less than any other obliques CE, CP or any other obliques that may be drawn from C to AB

(ii) The obliques CE and CF make ECD and FCD  $\angle$ s equal to each other ; and the angle CDE is = angle CDF, and the side CD is common  $\therefore$  The  $\Delta$ s CDE and CDF are equal.  $\therefore$  CE = CF.

(iii) From C draw another oblique CP making with CD an  $\angle$  DCP greater than the  $\angle$  DCF.



The ext<sup>r</sup> angle CFD of the  $\triangle CFP$  is greater than the int and oppt  $\angle CPF$  [Theor 8]

But the angle CFD has been shown less than a rt  $\angle$ ,  
the  $\angle CFP$  is greater than a rt  $\angle$  [Theor 1]

much more the  $\angle CFP$  greater than the angle CPF  
CP is  $>$  than CF [Theor 10]

9 The solution of this is given on page 28 which consult.

Prop No 135 *P.25*

10 The angle  $QPA = 15^\circ$ ,  $PA = 4.2$  cm by measurement

„  $QPB = 30^\circ$ ,  $PB = 4.6$  „ „

„  $QPC = 45^\circ$ ,  $PC = 5.6$  „ „

„  $QPD = 60^\circ$ ,  $PD = 8.1$  „ „

„  $QPE = 75^\circ$ ,  $PE = 15.2$  „ „

Prop No 136 *P.24*

11 In the  $\triangle BAP$ ,  $AB = 4$  cm is fixed while  $AP = 3$  cm rotates about the point A, tracing the changes of its position along the arc  $P_1, P_2, P_3, P_4, P_5, P_6$  as the angle BAP increases from 0 to  $180^\circ$

When the angle  $BAP_1$  is  $0^\circ$ ,  $AP_1$  coincides with AB and  $BP = 0$  cm.

„ „ becomes  $30^\circ$  as  $BAP$ ,  $BP$  increases to 2 cm

„ „  $BAP_2$  is  $60^\circ$  as  $BP_2$  increases to 3.5 cm

„ „  $BAP_3$  is  $90^\circ$  as  $BP_3$  „ 5 cm

„ „  $BAP_4$  is  $120^\circ$  as  $BP_4$  „ 6.1 cm

„ „  $BAP_5$  is  $150^\circ$  as  $BP_5$  „ 6.7 cm nearly

„ „  $BAP_6$  is  $180^\circ$  as  $BP_6$  and BA become in one  
and the same line and thus  $BP_6$  becomes equal to 7 cm

Prop No 137 *P.24*

12 The approximate height of  $AB = 40$  cm

Prop No 138 *P.25*

13 The approximate distance  $AB = 110$  ft

Prop No 139 *P.25*

14 The distance of the ship A from the Light-house  $\angle$  is 342 yds nearly, and that of the ship B is 692 approximately by measurement

## PART I

PAGE 59, Theor 20-21.

Prop No 140.

1 ABCD is a four-sided figure of which opposite sides AB and DC, and AD and BC are equal Join AC

Then in the two  $\triangle$ s ABC and CDA, the two sides AB and BC of the one = two sides CD and AD of the other, and the base AC common to both, the  $\triangle$  ABC =  $\triangle$  CDA, [Theor. 4] and the  $\angle$  BAC =  $\angle$  DCA, and the  $\angle$  BCA =  $\angle$  DAC but these are alternate  $\angle$ s.  $\therefore$  AD is  $\parallel$  to BC

In the same manner it can be proved that AB is  $\parallel$  to DC, [Theor 13.]

$\therefore$  ABCD is a parallelogram.

2 In the above figure the  $\angle$  ABC is = the  $\angle$  ADC, and the  $\angle$  BAD =  $\angle$  CDA.

But the four angles of a quadrilateral are = 4 rt angles

$\therefore$  the angles BAD and ABC are = two rt angles. [Inf 5, Theor 16.] and these are two intr angles on the same side of AB, which meets two other st. lines AD and BC,  $\therefore$  AD is  $\parallel$  to BC. [Theor 13]

Similarly AB is  $\parallel$  to DC.

$\therefore$  ABCD is a parallelogram

Prop No 141.

3 In the figure ABCD the diagonals AC and BD bisect each other. In the two  $\triangle$ s ADE and CBE, the side AE = side EC and the side DE = the side BE, and the included  $\angle$  AED = included  $\angle$  BEC.  $\therefore$  the  $\triangle$  ADE =  $\triangle$  CBE, and the base AD = base BC, and the  $\angle$  DAE = the  $\angle$  BCE [Theor. 4.]

But these are the alternate angles,  $\therefore$  AD is  $\parallel$  to BC. [Theor. 13]

Similarly by taking two  $\triangle$ s AEB and DEC it can be demonstrated that AB is  $\parallel$  to DC

$\therefore$  the figure ABCD is a parallelogram.

Prop No 142

4 ABCD is a rhombus, of which AC and BD are diagonals, intersecting each other at O

$\therefore$  Diagonals of a parallelogram bisect each other.

$\therefore$  AO = OC and BO = DO [Cor. 3, Theor. 21]

Now in the two  $\Delta$ s AOB and AOD, the two sides AO and OB in the one = two sides AO and OD in the other, and the base AB = the base AD  $\therefore$  the  $\angle$  AOB =  $\angle$  AOD [Theor 7]

But these being adjacent  $\angle$ s and equal to two rt.  $\angle$ s  $\therefore$  each of the  $\angle$ s AOB and AOD is a rt.  $\angle$ . Hence AO or AC is at rt.  $\angle$  to BD and bisects it

Prop No 143.

5 ABCD is a parallelogram, and the diagonals AC and BD are equal.

Then the  $\Delta$ s ABC and DCB, the two sides AB and BC of the one are = to two sides DC and BC, and the base AC is common,  $\therefore$  the  $\Delta$ s ABC and DCB are equal and the angle ABC = angle DCB. [Theor 4] But these are the int angles on the same side of BC, and equal to 2 rt. angles. Therefore each of them is a rt. angle. In the same manner each of the angles BAD, and CDA is also a rt angle

Prop No 144.

6. ABCD is a parallelogram, AC and BD are diagonals, If the angle BAD be not equal to the angle CDA, then AC and BD are not equal. Let the angle BAD be less than the CDA.

Now in the two  $\Delta$ s BAD and CDA, AB and AD = CD and DA, each to each, and the angle BAD less than the angle CDA.

$\therefore$  the base BD is less than the base AC [Theor 19]

#### PART I.

PAGE 60.—EX ON PARALLELS AND PARALLELOGRAMS.

Prop. No. 145

1.- As all the sides of a rhombus are equal, and its opposite angles are also equal, and the diagonal bisects the opposite angles. Now if the rhombus ABCD is folded round the diagonal BD, the angle ADB will coincide with the angle CDB for these are equal, and the line AD will fall on DC for AD = DC, and A will fall on C, similarly the angle ABD will coincide with the angle CBD, and AB will cover BC, and the angle BAD will coincide with the angle BCD for the angle BAD = angle BCD

the  $\Delta$ s BAD and BCD are symmetrical about BD

In the same manner it can also be shown that the  $\Delta$ s ABC and ADC are symmetrical about AC

## Prop No 146.

2. ABCD is a square, and AC and BD are the diagonals. As proved in the last preceding exercise 1, the  $\triangle$ s BAD and BCD are symmetrical about BD, and the  $\triangle$ s ADC and ABC are symmetrical about AC.

## Prop No. 147.

(ii) The lines EF and GH which join the middle points in the opposite sides of the square ABCD, are the other lines of symmetry.

## Prop No 148.

3. ABCD is a rectangle, and BD is a diagonal.

The sides AB and AD in the  $\triangle$  ABD are = to the sides CD and BC in the  $\triangle$  DCB respectively, and the base BD is common to both,  $\therefore$  the  $\triangle$  ABD is =  $\triangle$  DCB in all respects. [Theor 7.]

The diagonal of rectangle is not an axis of symmetry.

A rectangle is symmetrical about the lines that join the middle points in the opposite sides.

## Prop No 149.

4. There is no axis about which a rhomboid can be symmetrical.

For neither the diagonal bisects the opposite angles nor a line joining the middle point of the opposite sides make equal angles with the sides, and hence if one of the  $\triangle$ s. BAD and DCB be applied to the other it will not cover the other, nor does the figure AF cover the figure EC

## Prop No. 150.

5. The diagonal AC, which bisects the angles BAD and BCD, is an axis of symmetry in the figure ABCD.

## Prop. No 151.

## Prop. No. 152.

6. (i) ABCD and EFGH are the two parallelograms, having the two adj. sides AB and AD in one = two adj sides EF and EH of the other, and the angle BAD = angle FEH,  $\therefore$  the  $\triangle$  BAD =  $\triangle$  FEH. [Theor. 4.]

$\therefore$  by applying the  $\triangle$  BAD upon the  $\triangle$  FEH, the side AD will fall on EH, and the points A and D will coincide with the points E and H, for AD = EH.

AB coinciding with EH, AB will fall on and coincide with EF for the angle  $BAC = \text{angle } FED$  and  $AB = EF$   $\therefore$  BD will coincide with FH.

Similarly the  $\triangle BCD$  will coincide with  $\triangle FGH$ .

Prop No 153

Prop No. 154

- (11) ABCD and EFGH are two rectangles of which adj sides BA and AD are = adj sides FE and EH and the included  $\angle$ s BAD and FEH are equal for each of them is a rt angle  $\therefore$  The  $\triangle BAD = \triangle FEH$ .

Similarly the  $\triangle DCB = \text{the } \triangle FGH$

the rectangle ABCD = rectangle EFGH.

Prop No 155.

Prop No. 156

7 Join DB and HF

In the two  $\triangle$ s ABD, EFH, the two sides AB and AD in one are = two sides EF and EH in the other, and the included angle  $BAD = \text{included angle } FED$

$\therefore \triangle ABD = \triangle EFH$  [Theor 4]

Prop No 157

Prop No 158

$\therefore$  the  $\triangle ABD$  if applied to the  $\triangle EFH$ , the both will coincide Similarly in other two  $\triangle$ s BCD and FGH, the two sides BC and CD = two sides FG and GH respectively, and the base  $BD = \text{base } FH$ .

$\therefore$  the  $\triangle BCD = \triangle FGH$  and

$\therefore$  they coincide when one is applied to the other

### Theoretical

Prop No 159

8 ABCD is a parallelogram, BD its diagonal, O the middle-point in BD, a st line PQ is drawn through O meeting AD in P and BC in Q. Then the two  $\triangle$ s POD and QOB the  $\angle$ s POD and QOB are equal [Theor 3], and the angle  $PDO = \text{the angle } OBQ$  [Theor 14] and one side  $BO = \text{side } OD$ .

$\therefore$  the  $\triangle POD = \triangle QOB$  in all respects  $OP = OQ$  [Theor 17]

$\therefore$  PQ is bisected at O

Prop No 160

9. BD is a diagonal in a parallelogram ABCD, and AE and CF are two perpendiculars on BD from two opposite  $\angle$ s A and C.

Now in the two  $\triangle$ s AED and CFB, the  $1^{\text{st}}$  angle  $\angle AED = \text{rt angle}$  CFB, and the angle  $\angle ADE = \text{alternate angle CBF}$ , and one side  $AD = \text{one side BC}$ .

$\therefore$  the  $\triangle AED = \triangle CFB$ , and  $AE = CF$ . [Theor. 17]

Prop No 161

10 The opposite sides of a parallelogram are equal.

$\therefore AD = BC$  [Theor 21]

Half of equal things are equal  $\therefore AX = CY$

Now AX and CY are equal and parallel, and the two  $1^{\text{st}}$  lines AY and CX join them towards the same parts

$\therefore$  AY and CX are also equal and parallel. [Theor. 20.]

$\therefore$  AYCX is a parallelogram.

Prop No 162

11. Place the two  $\triangle$ s ABC and DEF so that the base BC when produced be in the one and the same  $1^{\text{st}}$  line with its equal and parallel side EF

Then because AB is  $\parallel$  ~~DE~~ and BF meets them.

$\therefore$  the ext  $\angle DEF = \text{int. opposite } \angle ABC$ . [Theor. 14]

Again in the  $\triangle$ s ABC and DEF, two sides AB and BC of one are = two sides DE and EF of the other, and the included  $\angle ABC = \angle DEF$ .  $AC = DF$ , and the  $\angle ACB = \angle DFE$  [Theor. 4]

Now the  $1^{\text{st}}$  line BF cuts the two  $1^{\text{st}}$  lines AC and DF, and make the ext  $\angle ACB = \text{to the int and opposite } \angle DFE$ .

$\therefore AC \parallel DF$  [Theor 13]

It has also been proved equal to it

Prop No 163 *fig. P. 28*

12. (1) Produce DC to E and make  $DE = AB$  and join BE. Then because DE is  $\parallel$  and equal to AB  $\therefore$  BE is  $\parallel$  and = AD. But  $AD = BC$ .  $BE = BC$ .  $\therefore$  the  $\angle BCE = \angle BEC$ . [Theor. 5.]

Now DE is  $\parallel$  AB, and CB meets them

$\angle ABC = \angle BCE$  which is = BEC. [Theor. 14]

Again the  $\angle ADE = \angle ABE$  [Theor. 21]

$\therefore \angle ADE = \angle ABC + \angle CBE = \angle BEC + \angle CBE$ .

To each of these add equal angles ABC and BCE respectively.

$\therefore$  the  $\angle ADE + \angle ABC = \angle BCE + \angle BEC + \angle CBE$ . But the  $\angle BCE + \angle BEC + \angle CBE = \text{two rt.}$

$\angle s = 180^\circ$ : the  $\angle ADE + \angle ABC = 180^\circ$

All the  $\angle s$  of the quadrilateral ABCD are = 4 rt  $\angle s$ . and the  $\angle s$  ADE and ABE are = two right  $\angle s$ ,  
 $\therefore$  the remaining two angles DAB and BCD are = 2 rt.  $\angle s$

$\therefore \angle ADC + \angle ABC = 180^\circ =$  the  $\angle DAB + \angle BCD$ .

(ii) Join AC and BD. Then in the two  $\triangle s$  DAB and CBA, AD and AB are = BC and AB and the  $\angle DAB =$  the  $\angle ABC$ .

$\therefore$  the  $\triangle DAB =$  the  $\triangle CBA$  [Theor. 4]

And  $\therefore$  the diagonal AC = the diagonal BD

(iii) Bisect AB at O, and CD at P, and join PQ. Then because AO = OB, and DP = CP, and the side AD = side BC, and the  $\angle s$  ADP and DAO are = the  $\angle s$  BCP and CBO respectively.  $\therefore$  The whole figure AOPD = the whole figure BOPC in all respects, and hence the quadrilateral ABCD is symmetrical about PO.

P. 61 Prop. No. 164. P. 28 fig.

13. (i) AP and BQ are two equal rods which turn round two pivots A and B at equal rates clockwise, i.e., they make equal  $\angle s$  at A and B respectively in the same time. The rods start parallel but in opposite sense, i.e., at the time of their start they point towards diametrically opposite directions, namely AP begins its start while pointing towards the North, at the same time BQ begins its move while pointing towards South.

AP and BQ as shown in the diagram represent the position of both the rods at the time of their start to move.

Join AB and PQ cutting at O.

In the two  $\triangle s$  PAO and QBO, the angle PAO = the angle QBO, being rt.  $\angle s$  and the angle AOP = the angle BOQ and PA = BQ.  
 $\therefore$  PO = QO, and AO = BO.

If AP moves and in a certain time describes an angle PAP' then BQ also describes an  $\angle QBR' =$  an  $\angle PAP'$  in the same time, for AP and BQ turn at equal rates.

Then AP' shall be  $\parallel$  BQ'.

Now AP is parallel to BQ, and BQ' makes an angle QBQ' with BQ, the st. line BQ when produced will meet PA, produced if necessary, let them be produced and meet at C

Then because BQ is  $\parallel$  PC and BQ' produced meets them.

$\therefore$  the  $\angle$  QBC = the alternate  $\angle$  PCB [Theor 14] But the  $\angle$  QBC = the  $\angle$  PAP',  $\therefore$  the  $\angle$  PAP' = the  $\angle$  PCB But the st line PC meets two other st. lines AP' and BC, and makes the exterior  $\angle$  PAP' = int. and oppt  $\angle$  PCB.

$\therefore$  AP' is  $\parallel$  BC or BQ' [Theor. 13]

(11) Join P'Q', cutting AB at O.

Then because the  $\angle$  PAB = the  $\angle$  QBA, for they are rt.  $\angle$ s, and their parts the  $\angle$ s PAP' and QBQ' are also equal,  $\therefore$  the remainders the  $\angle$  P'AO = the  $\angle$  Q'BO.

Now in the two  $\Delta$ s P'AO and QBO' the  $\angle$  P'AO = Q'BO the  $\angle$  P'AO = Q'BO, and the  $\angle$  P'OA = the  $\angle$  QOB and P'A = Q'B [Hyp.] (Theor 3)  $\therefore$  AO = BO.

This result was also obtained by joining P to Q,  $\therefore$  O is the point through which the line PQ will pass whatever parallel position the two rods AP and BQ occupy in their rotation round A and B

**P. 61** Prop. No 165.

Numerical and Graphical.

14 CAD =  $a$  is the ext  $\angle$  of the  $\Delta$  ABC, int  $\angle$   $a = \frac{2}{7}$  of ext.  $\angle$   $a$  or ext.  $a = \frac{7}{2}$  of int.  $\angle$   $a$ . But the int.  $\angle$  + ext.  $\angle$  = two rt angles =  $180^\circ$

$$\therefore a + \frac{2}{7}a = 180^\circ \text{ or } \frac{9}{7}a = 180^\circ$$

$$\therefore a = 180 \times \frac{7}{9} = 126^\circ \quad \therefore \text{int. angle } a = 180 - 126 = 54^\circ$$

$$\text{Now } 3B = 4C, \text{ or } B = \frac{4}{3}C$$

$$\text{But } B + C = \text{ext. } \angle a = 126^\circ$$

$$\text{or } \frac{4}{3}C + C = 126 \quad \therefore C = \frac{126 \times 3}{7} = 54^\circ$$

$$\therefore B = 126 - 54 = 72^\circ$$

Prop. No. 166.

The yacht sails from West to due E, but finding to hinder her eastward course, she turns round and sails towards B making an  $\angle$  of  $63^\circ$  out-ward, A and B she again turns  $78^\circ$ , at C  $119^\circ$ , at D



from  $64^\circ$  and finally at F she again resumes her course due east. All the ext  $\angle$ s of this five-sided figure =  $4$  rt.  $\angle$ s =  $360^\circ$ . But the sum of all the ext  $\angle$ s given is  $63^\circ + 75^\circ + 115^\circ + 64^\circ = 317^\circ$ .

$\therefore$  the last turn in her course of  $360^\circ - 317^\circ = 43^\circ$  brings her to proceed due east.

16. All the ext  $\angle$ s of a figure are =  $4$  rt.  $\angle$ s. And the int.  $\angle$ s = twice as many rt.  $\angle$ s as there are sides minus  $4$  rt.  $\angle$ s, suppose  $n$  be the sides.

$$\begin{aligned}\text{Then int. } n \angle &= 2n \text{ rt. } \angle - 4 \text{ rt. } \angle \\ &= 2(n-2) \text{ rt. } \angle\end{aligned}$$

$$\text{But by Hyp int. } \angle = 2(n-2) \times 90^\circ$$

$$\therefore, 360^\circ = 180n - 360.$$

$$n = \frac{720}{180} = 4 \text{ sides.}$$

$\therefore$  the figure is four sided.

Ex. Prop No 167. *fig. P. 29*

17. In this figure ABCDE

$$\text{All the int. } \angle = 2(n-2) \times 90 = 900 - 360 = 540^\circ$$

$$\text{But the sum of the four given } \angle = 110^\circ + 115^\circ + 93^\circ + 152^\circ = 470^\circ.$$

$\therefore$  the remaining angle  $A = 540 - 470 = 70^\circ$ . The st line AB meets two others BC and AE and makes two angles ABC and BAE =  $110 + 70 = 180$  or two st. angles.

$\therefore$  BC is  $\parallel$  AE [Theor. 13.]

With the ruler and pen join EC, and then with the help of compasses measure out first AB, and then by placing the two ends of the compasses so extended on the points E and C, it is found that AB is = EC. And in the same manner by measuring BC and then applying the compasses to AE, it is also found that they are equal, hence the figure ABCE is a parallelogram.

Prop. No 168. *fig. P. 29*

- 18 (i) AP moves in the direction of P P', and BQ in that of Q Q', at the time of their start the sum of the  $\angle$ s they make with AB =  $0$ , and when they become parallel the sum of the  $\angle$ s they make with AB is two rt.  $\angle$ s or  $180^\circ$

AP makes an  $\angle$  of  $7\frac{1}{2}^\circ$  per second of time and BQ makes an  $\angle$  of  $3\frac{3}{4}^\circ$  per second of time so they together make an  $\angle$  of  $7\frac{1}{2}^\circ + 3\frac{3}{4}^\circ = 11\frac{1}{4}^\circ$  in one second

$\therefore$  they will make an  $\angle$  of  $180^\circ$  in  $180 \times \frac{1}{15} = 16$  seconds, so they will become parallel in 16 seconds after the start

- (ii) AP moves at the rate of  $7\frac{1}{2}^\circ$  per second and so it makes an  $\angle$  of  $\frac{15}{2} \times 12 = 90^\circ$  in 12 seconds, and thus assume the position as AP' at rt.  $\angle$  to AB.

BQ moves at the rate of  $3\frac{3}{4}^\circ$  per second and so in 12 seconds the  $\angle$  described by BQ will be  $= 12 \times \frac{1}{4} = 45^\circ$ , and BQ will assume the position BQ' making an  $\angle$  of  $45^\circ$  with the line AB

As the two rods AP and BQ are of unlimited length AP' and BQ' if produced will join at O.

Now in the  $\triangle OAB$ , the  $\angle OAB =$  a rt  $\angle$ , and the  $\angle ABO = \frac{1}{2}$  a rt  $\angle = 45^\circ$ .

$\therefore$  the remaining  $\angle BOA = \frac{1}{2}$  a rt  $\angle = 45^\circ$ .

- (iii) At the moment of the start of AP, and BQ the  $\angle$  between them was  $180^\circ$ , and as they began to move onwards, the  $\angle$ s between them and AB began to increase, while the  $\angle$  made by the conjunction of AP and BQ diminished by the rate of  $7\frac{1}{2}^\circ + 3\frac{3}{4}^\circ = 11\frac{1}{4}^\circ$  per second, and this diminution continues till they become parallel

### PART I.

PAGE 64, [THEOR 22,]

#### On parallels and parallelograms.

Ex 1, and 2 Solved in the book which see.

Prop No 169

3 Z and Y are the middle points of the two sides AB and AC of the  $\triangle ABC$  Join ZY and produce it to V making  $ZY = YV$ , join VC.

In  $\triangle$ s AYZ and CYV,  $AY = CY$ ,  $ZY = YV$  and the  $\angle$  AYZ  $= \angle$  CYV. the  $\triangle$ s AYZ and CYV are congruent

$\therefore AZ = CV$ , and  $ZY = YV$ , and the  $\angle AZY = \angle CVY$  and they are alternate about ZY  $\therefore AB \parallel CV$ .

But CV is proved  $= AZ = BZ$

$\therefore ZV$  is also  $=$  and  $\parallel BC$ . [Theor 20]

But ZV is double of ZY, because  $ZY = YV$ .

$\therefore ZV$  is half of BC.

## Prop No 170

4. In the ex 3 above it has been proved that  $ZY$  is  $=$  half  $BC = BX$  and parallel to  $BC$ . The st lines  $BZ$  and  $YX$  join the extremities of two  $=$  and  $\parallel$  st lines  $ZY$  and  $BX$ , are themselves  $=$  and  $\parallel$  [Theor 20]

$\therefore$   $ZYXB$  is a parallelogram and  $ZX$  is its diagonal.

$\therefore$  the  $\triangle ZBX = \triangle ZYX$

In the same manner the st line  $ZX$  which joins the middle points of  $AB$  and  $BC$ , is also  $=$  and  $\parallel$   $CY$ , and  $ZY$  has been proved  $=$  and  $\parallel$   $XC$ ,  $ZXCY$  is also a parallelogram, and  $XY$  its diagonal,  $\therefore \triangle CXY =$  the  $\triangle ZXY$  [Theor 21]  $\therefore$  the three  $\triangle$ s  $ZBY$ ,  $ZXY$  and  $YXC$ , are  $=$  to one another, and the  $\triangle$ s  $ZAY$  and  $XYC$  are proved congruent [Ex 1 above] all the four  $\triangle$ s  $ZAY$ ,  $ZBY$ ,  $ZXY$  and  $YXC$  are equal in all respects.

## Prop No 171

5 In  $\triangle ABC$ ,  $ZY$  is the st line joins the middle points of  $AB$  and  $AC$   $ZY$  is  $\parallel$   $BC$

From  $A$  the vertex draw a st. line  $AX$  to the base cutting  $ZY$  at  $O$

From  $O$  draw  $OV \parallel AB$  meeting  $BC$  at  $V$ .

Because  $ZO$  is  $\parallel$   $BC$  and  $AX$  meets them

$\therefore$  the ext  $\angle AOZ$  is  $=$  int  $\angle OXV$  [Theor 14]

Again  $AB$  is  $\parallel$   $OV$ , and  $AX$  meet them, the ext angle  $XOV$  is  $=$  int  $\angle BAX$

$\therefore$  in the two  $\triangle$ s  $AZO$  and  $OVX$ , the two  $\angle$ s  $AOZ$  and  $ZAO$  of the one are  $=$  the two  $\angle$ s  $OXV$  and  $VOX$  of the other, and the side  $AZ =$  the side  $OV$ , for  $AZ = ZB = OV$ ,  $\therefore$  the two  $\triangle$ s  $AZO$  and  $VOX$  are congruent,  $\therefore AO = OX$ , i.e.,  $AX$  is bisected at  $O$

## Prop. No 172.

6. In the two  $\triangle$ s  $BAX$  and  $DCY$  the side  $AX = CY$ , and the side  $AB = DC$ , and the included  $\angle BAX =$  the included  $\angle DCY$ , for they are the opposite  $\angle$ s of the parallelogram  $ABCD$ .

$\therefore$  The  $\triangle$ s  $BAX$  and  $DCY$  are congruent, and  $BX = DY$  [Theor 4] but  $BX$  and  $DY$  join the extremities of two  $=$  and  $\parallel$  st. lines  $XD$  and  $BY$ , they are therefore  $=$  and  $\parallel$  [Theor. 20]

Now in the  $\triangle ADP$ ,  $OX$  is drawn  $\parallel$  the base  $DP$  from the middle point  $X$  of  $AD$ ,  $\therefore OX$  bisects  $AP$  at  $O$ , i. e.,  $AO = OP$ . [Ex. 1 above]

Similarly in the  $\triangle CBO$ ,  $PY$  is  $\parallel BO$  from the middle point  $Y$ ,  $\therefore OP = PC$ .

But  $AO = OP$ ,  $\therefore AO = OP = PC$ , i. e.,  $AC$  is divided into three equal parts.

Prop No 173.

7.  $ABCD$  is a quadrilateral figure, and  $E, F, G, H$  are the middle points of  $AB, BC, CD$  and  $AD$  respectively. Join  $EH, EF, FG$ , and  $GH$ .

Then  $EFGH$  is a parallelogram.

Join  $AC$ . In the  $\triangle ABC$ ,  $E$  and  $F$  are the middle points of  $AB$  and  $BC$ ,  $\therefore EF$  is  $\parallel AC$  the base so also in the  $\triangle ADC$ ,  $GH$  is parallel to  $AC$ .

$\therefore EF$  is parallel to  $GH$ .

In the similar manner it can also be proved that  $EH$  is  $\parallel$  to  $FG$ .

$\therefore$  the figure  $EFGH$  is a parallelogram.

Prop. No 174.

8. Since  $EFGH$  is a parallelogram as proved in the last preceding exercise 7.  $EG$  and  $FH$  are the diagonals of the parallelogram.  $\therefore$  they, i. e.,  $EG$  and  $FH$  bisect each other. [Cor. 3, Theor. 21]

Prop No. 175.

9. There can be two cases of this exercise (i) in which  $A$  and  $B$  points lie on the same side of  $CD$ , and (ii) where  $A$  and  $B$  points are on opposite sides of  $CD$ .

Cons — From  $A$  draw  $AXQ' \parallel CD$  meeting  $OX$  and  $BQ$  at  $X'$  and  $Q'$  in (i) and  $OX$  and  $BQ$  produced in (ii).

~~Prop No. 176~~

(i) In the  $\triangle ABQ'$ ,  $O$  is the middle point in  $AB$ , and  $OX'$  is  $\parallel BQ$ ,  $\therefore OX' = \frac{1}{2} BQ$ . And  $XX' = \frac{1}{2} (AP + QQ')$ .  
 $\therefore OX' + XX' = \frac{1}{2} (AP + QQ' + BQ)$ .  $OX = \frac{1}{2} (AP + BQ) = \frac{1}{2} (4 + 2 + 5 + 8) = 5 \text{ cm.}$

Prop No 177.

(ii)  $OX' = \frac{1}{2} (QQ' + BQ)$  and  $XX' = \frac{1}{2} (AP + QQ')$ .

$OX' - XX' = \frac{1}{2} (BQ' - AP - QQ')$  or  $OX = \frac{1}{2} (BQ - AP) = \frac{1}{2} (5 + 8 - 4 + 2) = OD \text{ 8 cm.}$

## Prop No 178

10 Let AB, CD and EF be three  $\parallel$  st. lines, and OPR, and GHK two transversals, cutting the parallels at B, P, R, G, H and K respectively, PH shall be the arithmetic mean of OG and RK

From O draw a st line OXY  $\parallel$  GHK, cutting CD and EF at X and Y respectively

Then each of the figures OH and XK is a parallelogram. In the  $\triangle$  ORY, PX is drawn parallel to RY from the middle point P in OR, for the intercept OP and PR are = by hyp.

$$PX = \frac{1}{2} \text{ of } RY \text{ and } XH = \frac{1}{2} (OG + YK)$$

Hence by adding  $PX + XH = \frac{1}{2} (RY + OG + YK)$ .

$$\text{or } PH = \frac{1}{2} (OG + RK)$$

$\therefore$  PH is the arithmetic mean of OG + RK.

## Prop No 179

11 ABCD is a trapezium of which the sides AD and DC are parallel, and the st line EF is drawn joining the middle points E and F in AB and DC respectively

Then EF shall be  $\parallel$  to AD and BC, and EF shall be equal to  $\frac{1}{2} (AD + BC)$ ,  $AD = a$  cm, and  $BC = b$  cm.

$$EF \text{ shall be } = \frac{1}{2} (a + b)$$

From D draw DG  $\parallel$  AB meeting EF at H, and BC at G. Then the figure ABGD is a parallelogram. Because in the  $\triangle$  DCG, from the middle point H in DC, and DG, the st line FH is drawn,  $\therefore$  FH is  $\parallel$  and  $= \frac{1}{2}$  CG and  $EH = \frac{1}{2} (AD + BG)$ . Adding these together  $FH + EH = \frac{1}{2} (CG + AD + BG) = \frac{1}{2} (AD + BC)$ .

$\therefore$  EF is  $\parallel$  AD and BC and is also  $= \frac{1}{2} (a + b)$ .

## Prop No 180.

12 1a, 2b, 3c, 4d, and 5e are parallels from the points, 1, 2, 3, 4 and 5 in OX meeting OY at a, b, c, d, and e respectively, by measuring the lengths of these parallels with a cm scale they are found as follows —

$$1a = 1 \text{ cm}, 2b = 1.9 \text{ cm}, 3c = 2.8 \text{ cm}, 4d = 3.8, \text{ and } 5e = 4.7 \text{ cm}$$

. By adding all these  $= 14.2$  cm, dividing by 5 we get 2.8 nearly which is the length of the 3c line

In the trapezium  $la\epsilon\delta$ , the lines  $la$  and  $\delta\epsilon$  are parallels, and the line  $3c$  divides the oblique lines  $l$ ,  $\delta$ , and  $a\epsilon$  into two equal parts, hence as proved in the last preceding exercise

$3c = \frac{1}{2}(la + \delta\epsilon)$  or  $\frac{1}{2}(1 + 7) = 2.8$  cm. If one of the two st. lines  $OX$ ,  $OY$  be divided into any number of equal parts, say, 1, 2, 3, 4, ...,  $n$ ,  $n+1$ , ...,  $(2n+1)$ , and parallels be drawn from these points to meet the other

$\therefore$  the mean  $\parallel$  is  $= \frac{1}{2}\{1 + (2n+1)\} = \frac{1}{2} \times 2(n+1)$  or  $(n+1)$ .

$\therefore (n+1)$ th line is the mean

Prop No 181

13.  $ABCD$  is a parallelogram, and  $EF$  any st. line, without the parallelogram,  $AP$ ,  $BQ$ ,  $CR$  and  $DS$  are the perpendiculars drawn from the angular points  $A$ ,  $B$ ,  $C$ ,  $D$  to the st. line  $EF$ .

$O$  is the point where diagonals  $AC$  and  $BD$  bisect each other, and  $OX$  is the perpendicular from  $O$  on  $EF$ . Since all these perpendiculars are at rt  $\angle$ s to  $EF$ ,  $\therefore$  they are parallel to one another.

Now in the trapezium  $BQSD$ , a st. line  $OX$  is drawn from the middle point of one oblique  $BD \parallel BQ$  and  $DS$ ,  $\therefore OX = \frac{1}{2}(BQ + DS)$  as has been proved in a previous exercise. Similarly in the trapezium  $APRC$ , the middle st. line  $OX = \frac{1}{2}(AP + CR)$ .

$\therefore \frac{1}{2}(BQ + DS) = \frac{1}{2}(AP + CR)$ .

$\therefore BQ + DS = AP + CR$

Prop. No 182.

14. Let  $ABC$  be an isosc  $\triangle$ , having  $AB = AC$ ; in the base  $BC$  a point  $D$  is taken from it  $DE$  and  $DF$  perpendiculars are drawn on  $AB$  and  $AC$  respectively, and  $BG$  is drawn perpendicular from the  $\angle B$  to  $AC$ . Then  $DE + DF = BG$ .

~~Prop No 183~~

(1) Let the point  $D$  be in the base  $BC$ . From  $D$  draw  $DH \parallel AC$  meeting  $BG$  at  $H$ .

$\therefore$  Then  $DFGH$  is a parallelogram,  $DF = GH$ .

$DH \parallel FG$ , and  $BG$  falls on them  $\therefore$  the ext  $\angle BHD =$  the int oppt angle  $FGH$  which is a rt. angle.

$\therefore$  the angle  $BHD$  is also a rt angle

Now in the two  $\triangle$ s  $BHD$  and  $BED$ , the angle  $BHD =$  the angle  $BED$ , for they are rt angles, and the angle  $\underline{BDH} =$  the angle  $\underline{EBD}$ ,

because the angle  $\angle BDH =$  the int oppt angle  $\angle ACB$ . [Theor. 14]  
 And the side  $BD$  is common,  $\therefore$  the  $\triangle BHD =$  the  $\triangle BED$ , and  
 the side  $HB = ED$  [Theor. 17] But  $DF$  has been proved  $= HG$   
 $\therefore ED + DF = BG$ .

~~No-183~~ (12) If the point  $D$  be taken in the  $CB$  produced, and perpendiculars be drawn from it to the sides  $AB$  and  $CA$  produced as shown in figure (12)  $BG = DF - DE$ . The same construction being made as in figure (1) and  $GB$  be produced  
 Then the two  $\triangle$ s  $BHD$  and  $BED$  are equal. [Theor. 17].  
 $\therefore BH = DE$  But  $DF = GH$ . [Theor. 21]  
 $\therefore DF = GB + BH$  or  $GB + DE$ .  
 $\therefore DF - DE = BG$ .

Prop. No. 184.

15.  $ABC$  is an equilateral  $\triangle$ , and  $D$  a point within it from which  $DE$ ,  $DF$  and  $DG$  perpendiculars are drawn on  $AB$ ,  $AC$ , and  $BC$  respectively.

Then the sum of  $DE$ ,  $DF$  and  $DG$  is  $= AP$ .

Through  $D$  draw  $XDY \parallel BC$ , cutting  $AP$  at  $O$ .

Now the  $\triangle AXY$  is an equiangular. [Theor. 14.]

Hence equilateral [F. cor., Theor. 6]

The perpendiculars from the angular points of an equi.  $\triangle$  to the oppt sides are equal.

Now as proved in the last preceding ex. 14,  $DE + DF =$  the perpendicular drawn from  $X$  on  $AY = AO$ , adding  $DG$  which is  $= OP$ .  $DE + DF + DG = AO + DG$  or  $AO + OP = AP$ .

Prop. No. 185.

16.  $AB$  and  $CD$  are two equal and parallel st. lines;  $EF$  is another st. line.

From  $A$ ,  $B$ ,  $C$  and  $D$  points  $AP$ ,  $BQ$ ,  $CR$  and  $DS$  perpendiculars are drawn to  $EF$ , then the projection  $PQ$  shall be  $= RS$ .

From  $A$  and  $C$  draw  $AG$  and  $CH \parallel EF$ , meeting  $BQ$  and  $DS$  at  $G$  and  $H$  respectively.

Because the  $\angle BGA =$  the  $\angle DHC$ , and the  $\angle BAG =$  the  $\angle DCH$ , and the side  $AB = DC$ ; *Ex. 4, Theor. 15, P. 41*  
 $\therefore$  the  $\triangle ABG =$  the  $\triangle CDH$ , and side  $AG =$  the side  $CH$ . [Theor. 17]  
 But  $AG = PQ$  and  $CH = RS$  [Theor. 14.]  $\therefore PQ = RS$ .

## PART I.

## PAGE 68, ON LINEAR MEASUREMENTS.

$$\begin{array}{r}
 1. \quad \begin{array}{r} 1\ 25'' \text{ in} \\ \hline 2\ 72'' \text{ in} \\ \hline 3\ 06'' \text{ in} \\ \hline \end{array}
 \end{array}$$

$$\begin{array}{r}
 2. \quad \begin{array}{r} 2\ 68'' \text{ in} \\ \hline 6 \text{ cm } 8 \text{ mm.} \end{array}
 \end{array}$$

When  $1 \text{ cm} = 0.3937'' \text{ in.}$

$$\text{Then } \frac{2\ 68''}{0.3937} = 6\ 75 \text{ cm.}$$

$$\begin{array}{r}
 3. \quad \begin{array}{r} 5\ 7 \text{ cm.} \\ \text{or } 2\ 25'' \text{ in by measure.} \\ \text{By calculation } 5\ 7 \times 0.3937 \\ = 2\ 244 \text{ inches} \end{array}
 \end{array}$$

$$\begin{array}{r}
 4. \quad \begin{array}{l} \text{The line AB represents } 3\ 15'' \text{ in} \\ \text{A} \rule{10cm}{0.4pt} \text{B} \\ \text{by measuring it is found } 7.93 \text{ cm.} \\ \text{or } 7 \text{ cm } 9\ 3 \text{ mm.} \\ \therefore \text{ by calculation } 1 \text{ cm} = 0.39'' \text{ in.} \end{array}
 \end{array}$$

$$\begin{array}{r}
 5. \quad \begin{array}{r} \text{A} \rule{10cm}{0.4pt} \text{B} \\ 3\ 9 \text{ cm} \\ \text{C} \rule{10cm}{0.4pt} \text{D} \\ 6\ 2 \text{ cm} \\ \begin{array}{l} (i) \text{ By measure } AB = 1\ 15'' \text{ in.} \\ (ii) \text{ " } CD = 2\ 47'' \text{ in} \\ \text{From the (i) case } 1'' \text{ in.} = 2\ 52 \text{ cm.} \\ \text{" (ii) " " } = 2\ 57 \text{ cm.} \end{array} \\ 2 \overline{) 5\ 09} \\ \text{average } 2\ 54 \text{ cm.} \end{array}
 \end{array}$$

$$\begin{array}{r}
 6. \quad \begin{array}{r} \rule{10cm}{0.4pt} \\ 3\ 36'' \text{ in represents } 336 \text{ miles} \\ \hline 4\ 08'' \text{ in. represents } 408 \text{ miles} \end{array}
 \end{array}$$

$$\begin{array}{r}
 7. \quad \begin{array}{l} \text{When } 1'' = \text{one kilometre} = 1000 \text{ metre} \\ \therefore 850 \text{ metres will be represented by } 0\ 85'' \\ 2980 \text{ metres will be represented by } 2\ 98'' \\ 1010 \text{ metres will be represented by } 1\ 01'' \\ 0\ 85'' \end{array}
 \end{array}$$

$$\begin{array}{r}
 \begin{array}{r} 2''\ 98 \\ \hline 1\ 01'' \end{array}
 \end{array}$$



- 8 When  $1'' = 100$  links,  $417$  links  $= 417''$   
 as  $0.3937'' = 1$  cm,  $417'' = \frac{417}{394} = 10.6$  cm  
 $10$  cm  $6$  mm
- 

- 9  $1$  cm  $= 5$  km then  $8.5$  cm  $= 42.5$  km but  $1$  cm  $= 0.3937''$ .  
 $8.5$  cm  $= 3.35''$   
 $3.35'' = 8.5$  cm
- 

- 10  $55$  miles are represented by  $2.75''$  then  $1''$  represents  $\frac{55}{2.75} = 20$  miles  
 the scale is  $1'' = 20$  miles  
 or when  $1'' = 2.54$  cms and  $20$  miles  $= 32$  kms  $1$  cm.  
 represents  $12$  kms

- 11  $1' = 35$  miles,  $4.2'' \times 35 = 147$  miles  
 the distance between Paris and Calais is  $147$  miles  
 This distance if expressed in kilometres would be  $147 \times \frac{5}{8} = 91.875$  kms  
 and  $4.2'' = 10.668$  cm the scale of the map in metric measure  
 is  $1$  cm  $= \frac{235.2}{10.668} = 22$  kms nearly

- 12 The distance between Exeter and Plymouth is  $37\frac{1}{2}$  miles,  
 represented on the map by  $2\frac{1}{2}''$  the scale of the map  $=$   
 $\frac{37.5 \times \frac{5}{8}}{2.5} = 15$  miles or  $1' = 15$  miles

Distance between Lincoln and York is  $88$  km or  $88 \times \frac{5}{8} = 55$  miles, and  $7$  cm  $= 7 \times 0.3937 = 2.7559''$ .  $1'' =$   
 $\frac{55}{2.7559} = 19.95$  miles or  $20$  nearly

- 13 Diagonal scale showing yards, feet and inches

Prop No 186

### PART I

PAGE 79, PROBLEMS 1 - 7

### Lines and Angles

Prop No 187 *fig. P. 34*

- 1 Prop No 188.

2 The angle ABC is a rt angle which is divided into three equal parts by the st lines BO and BP. Dividing again the CBP and PBO into two equal parts, the angle CBX  $= 45^\circ$ , which in turn is trisected by the st lines BX and BY



## Prop No. 194

8. AB is a given st line, and P a given point, it is required to draw a line PQ making with AB an  $\angle$  equal to a given  $\angle$

From P draw PS  $\parallel$  AB. At the point P in PS make an  $\angle$  SPQ = the given  $\angle$ , PQ meeting AB or AB produced if necessary at Q. Then because PS is  $\parallel$  AB and PQ meets them,

the  $\angle$  SPQ = the alternate  $\angle$  PQA [Theor 14]

. PQ is drawn inclining to AB at an  $\angle$  equal to the given  $\angle$

## Prop No 195.

9 In the two  $\Delta$ s PHK, and P'HK, the side PH = HP' (cons) and HK is common, and the  $\angle$  PHK = the  $\angle$  P'HK, for they are rt  $\angle$ s. the  $\Delta$  PHK = the  $\Delta$  P'HK in all respects  $\therefore$  the  $\angle$  PKH = P'KH. But the  $\angle$  P'KH = QKB [Theor 3]

. the  $\angle$  PKH = the  $\angle$  QKB

$\therefore$  the st. lines PK and QK make equal  $\angle$ s with AB

## Prop No 196

10 P is a given point, and A and B two other points. It is required to draw a st line from P so that the perpendiculars drawn from A and B on that line may be equal

(i) Join PB and AB, and at the point P in the st line PB make an  $\angle$  BPQ = the  $\angle$  PBA [Prob 5]. Then PQ shall be the required line. From A and B draw AO and BR perpendiculars to PQ. Then because AB  $\parallel$  PQ and AO and BR are at rt  $\angle$ s to PQ, making the angles AOR and BRO = two rt  $\angle$ s. [Theor 13]

$\therefore$  AO is  $\parallel$  BR. And the figure ABRO is a parallelogram.

$\therefore$  AD = BR [Theor 21]

(ii) (a)

## PART I

PAGE 84, PROB 8—10.

## Graphical Exercises.

## Prop. No 197

1 ABC is the required  $\Delta$

AD is the perpendicular from A on BC = 4.3 cm nearly.

BE " " " B on AC = 6.1 cm "

CF " " " C on AB = 5.2 cm. "

2

Prop No 198

$$BX = 1.57'' \text{ nearly } \therefore \frac{BX}{CX} = \frac{1.57''}{1.14''} = 1.09''$$

$$CX = 1.41 \quad \text{and} \quad \frac{c}{b} = \frac{2.75''}{2.5''} = 1.1.$$

3.

Prop. No 199.

$$AC = 210 \text{ yds.}$$

4

Prop. No 200.

$$\text{The } A = 180^\circ - (47^\circ + 68^\circ) = 65^\circ$$

By measurement the approximate size of  $AB = 77m$ , and  $AC = 62m$ .  $AD = 58m$

5 The yacht steers 9 knots in 1 hr. or 60 mts.

.. its motion in 20 mts =  $\frac{1}{3}$  of 9 = 3 kts.

$$\text{''} \quad 35 \text{ mts} = \frac{35 \times 9}{60} = 5.25 \text{ kts}$$

Her distance from A the harbour is 6.5 knots, and in order to run home she must steer  $45^\circ + 36^\circ = 75^\circ$  South of East or  $15^\circ$  Eastward from the South

Prop. No. 201.

6 The third side  $b = 9.05 \text{ cm.}$ 

$$\sqrt{c^2 - a^2} = \sqrt{(c-a)(c+a)} = \sqrt{5 \times 16.2} = \sqrt{81} = 9 \text{ cm.}$$

Prop No 202.

7. The third side has got two values as given below with corresponding values of the  $\angle C$

$(i) \quad a = 4.4 \text{ cm.}$ $\angle C = 118^\circ$	$(ii) \quad a = 9.5 \text{ cm.}$ $\angle C = 62^\circ$
---	---

$\therefore$  The two values of the  $\angle C$  are supplementary.

8. Prop. No. 203. Prop. No. 204 Prop. No 205. Prop. No. 206.

(i) This case is impossible for  $a$  is less than the perpendicular from  $C$  on  $AB$ , which measures about 4.8 cm.

Prop No. 207

(Scale  $1'' = 100 \text{ yds}$ )

9 The distance between the rods at A and bridge at C is 380 yds. by measurement

Prop. No 208

10.  $BC$  is the base = 4 cm. Bisect  $BC$  at  $D$ , from  $D$  draw  $DA$  at rt.  $\angle$ s to  $BC$  make  $DA = 6.2 \text{ cm.}$  Join  $AB$  and  $AC$ .

Then  $ABC$  is the required  $\triangle$ . Because  $BD = DC$ , and  $AD$  is common, and the included  $\angle$ s  $ADB$  and  $ADC$  are equal,

$\therefore AB = AC$ . [Theor 4]

## Prop No 209

11 Let A be the given st line and O the given vertical  $\angle$ , it is required to draw an isosc  $\triangle$  having its vertical  $\angle = \angle O$ , and the altitude = st line A

Take any st line CD, and a point P in it From the point P draw RP a st line at rt  $\angle$ s to CD, and make PR = st line A

Bisect the  $\angle O$  (Prob 1) At the point R in PR make an  $\angle PRX = \frac{1}{2}$  the  $\angle O$ , the arm RX meeting CD in X [Prob 5]

Similarly make the angle  $PRY = \frac{1}{2}$  the angle O, on the other side of PR

The figure XRY is the required  $\triangle$

The  $\angle PRX =$  the  $\angle PRY$ , and the  $\angle RPX =$  the  $\angle RPY$ , and PR is common,  $\therefore RX = RY$  [Theor 17]

## Prop No 210

Follow the same construction with the exception that the altitude is 6 cm. and the vertical  $\angle = 60^\circ$ . Each of the sides of the equi  $\triangle = 7$ cm.

12

## Prop No 211

13

## Prop No 212

Let P be the given altitude from the  $\angle A$  on BC, and L and M the given  $\angle$ s, it is required to draw a  $\triangle$ , having  $\angle B =$  the  $\angle M$ , and the  $\angle C =$  the  $\angle L$ , and altitude = st line P.

Take any line EF, and a point D in it

At D in EF draw DA at rt  $\angle$ s to EF, making AD = the st. line P At the point P make an  $\angle DAB =$  to the complimentary  $\angle$  of M (or  $90^\circ - \angle M$ ), the arm AB meeting EF at B

Similarly make the  $\angle DAC =$  the  $\angle (90^\circ - L)$  [Prob 5] Then ABC is the required  $\triangle$  In the  $\triangle ADB$ , the  $\angle$  at D is a rt  $\angle$ . [Const] the  $\angle$ s DAB and ABD are = to one rt  $\angle$ . [Theor 16]

But the  $\angle DAB =$  the  $\angle L$  (const)

the  $\angle ABD =$  the  $\angle M$

Similarly it can be proved that the  $\angle ACD =$  the  $\angle L$

## Prop No. 213

## Prop No 214

14. B and C are the given  $\angle$ s, and b one side Take a st line EF, and a point C' in it At C' make an  $\angle B'C'A =$  the given  $\angle C$ , and make C'A = the given st line b Now at the point A in

C'A make an  $\angle CA'B' = \text{the } \angle (180^\circ - B - C)$  or the  $\angle D$  supplementary to  $\angle s B$  and  $C$ . The arm  $AB$  meets  $EF$  at  $B$ .

Then  $AB'C'$  is the required  $\Delta$  of which the side  $AC' = b$  given side, and the  $\angle C' = \text{the } \angle C$ , and the  $\angle B' = 180^\circ - \text{the } \angle C = \text{the } \angle CAB'$  or the  $\angle B$ .

Prop No 215

Prop. No. 216

15 Produce one arm of the  $\angle L$ , the ext  $\angle$  thus formed is, the supplementary  $\angle M = 180^\circ - L$ . Bisect the  $\angle M$ .

$AC$  is the base of an isosc  $\Delta$  and the  $\angle L$  is the vertical  $\angle$  of that  $\Delta$ . It is required to describe that  $\Delta$  at the point  $C$  in  $AC$  make an  $\angle ACB = \frac{1}{2}$  the  $\angle M$  or half the supp  $\angle$  of  $L$  [Prob 5.]

In the same manner make the  $\angle CAB = \frac{1}{2} \angle M$  and let the two arms  $AB$  and  $CB$  meet at  $B$ . Then the  $\Delta ABC$  is the required one, and the vertical  $\angle ABC = \text{the given } \angle L$ . For the three angles of the  $\Delta ABC = \text{two rt. angles}$

But by construction the angles  $BAC$  and  $BCA = \text{the angle } M = 180^\circ - L$ . the remaining angle  $ABC = 180^\circ - M = \text{angle } L$

Prop No 217

16 Take a st line  $BD = 7.3 \text{ cm} = a + b$ . At  $D$  make an angle  $BDA = 45^\circ$ , and from the centre  $B$  at a distance  $BA = 5.3 \text{ cm}$ , draw an arc cutting  $AD$  in  $A$ , and from  $A$  draw  $AC$  at rt. angles to  $BD$ . Then  $ABC$  is the required  $\Delta$ . Since in the  $\Delta ACD$ , the angle  $ACD$  is a rt angle (Cons.) and the angle  $ADC = 45^\circ$ ,  $\therefore$  the angle  $DAC = 45^\circ$ .  $AC + CD$  [Theor 6]

By measuring  $CD$  or  $AC$  is found  $= 2.8 \text{ cm}$  and  $BC = 4.5 \text{ cm}$ ,  $\therefore$ ,  $BD = a + b = 4.5 + 2.8 = 7.3 \text{ cm}$

$$\sqrt{a^2 + b^2} = \sqrt{4.5^2 + 2.8^2} = \sqrt{28.09} = 5.3 \text{ cm.} = AB.$$

Prop No 218

17 Draw a st. line  $EF = a + b + c$  the perimeter  $= 12 \text{ cm}$ . At the point  $E$  in  $EF$  make an angle  $FEG = \text{the angle } B = 70^\circ$ , [Problem 5] Similarly make the  $\angle EFH = 80^\circ$  or  $\angle C$  at  $F$ . Now bisect the angles  $FEG$  and  $EFH$  by the straight lines  $EA$  and  $FA$  which meet when produced at  $A$  [Prob 1] From the point  $A$  draw  $AB \parallel EG$  and  $AC \parallel FH$  and meeting  $EF$  at  $B$  and  $C$  respectively. Then  $ABC$  is the required  $\Delta$ . The  $\angle AEG = \text{the } \angle EAB$  and the  $\angle AFH = \text{the } \angle FAC$ , for  $EG \parallel AB$ , and  $FH \parallel AC$ .

[Theor 14] But the  $\angle AEG =$  the  $\angle AEF$ , and the  $\angle AFH =$  the  $\angle AFE$  (Const)  $\therefore$  the angle  $EAB =$  the angle  $AEF$  or  $AEB$  and angle  $FAC =$  the angle  $AFC$ , and therefore  $EB = AB$  and  $FC = AC$ . (Theor. 6)  $\therefore$  the three sides  $AB$ ,  $BC$ , and  $CA$  are  $= EB$ ,  $BC$  and  $CF$  or  $a + b + c$  the perimeter.  $AB$  being  $\parallel EG$ , and  $AC \parallel FH$ , the ext angle  $ABC =$  the int oppt angle  $BEG$ , and the ext angle  $ACB =$  the int and oppt angle  $HFC$ . But these angles at  $E$  and  $F$  are  $= 70^\circ$  and  $80^\circ$  respectively

$\therefore$  the angle  $ABC = 70^\circ$  and the angle  $ACB = 80^\circ$ .

By measuring  $AB = c = 4.8$  cm.

$BC = a = 2.6$  cm

$AC = b = 4.6$  cm.

Prop No 219.

Prop No 220.

§ Draw a st line  $CD = b + c = 10$  cm, and at the point  $C$  make an angle  $DCB = 60^\circ$  and make the arm  $CB = 6.5$  cm. Join  $BD$ . At the point  $B$  in  $BD$ , make an angle  $DBA =$  the angle  $BDC$ , the arm  $BA$  meeting  $CD$  at  $A$ . [Prob 5] Then  $ABC$  shall be the required  $\triangle$ . Since the angle  $DBA =$  the angle  $BDC$ ,  $BA = AB$  (Theor 6)  $CD = b + c$   $\therefore CA + AB = b + c$ , and  $CB = 6.5$  cm and the angle  $C = 60^\circ$ . Hence  $ABC$  is the required  $\triangle$ .

Prop No 221.

$BD = c - b = 1$  cm, at the point  $B$  in  $BD$  make the angle  $DBC = 55^\circ$ , and make  $BC = a = 7$  cm. Join  $CD$ , and at the point  $C$  in  $CD$  make an angle  $DCA =$  to the ext  $\angle CDA$  of the  $\triangle CBD$ , and let  $CA$  and  $BD$  produced meet at  $A$ . Then  $ABC$  is the required  $\triangle$ . As the  $\angle ACD =$  the  $\angle ADC$  [Const]

$\therefore AC = AD$  [Theor 6]

But  $c - b = 1$  cm. Add  $AC = AD = b$  to both  $c - b + b = 1 + b$

$\therefore c = 1 + b$  or  $AB$ .

By measuring  $AC$  or  $b = 7$  cm

$\therefore C = 7 + 1 = 8$  cm.

PART I.

PAGE 89

### Construction of Quadrilaterals.

Prop No 222.

1.  $PQ$  is a given st. line. It is required to describe a rhombus

each of whose sides is = PQ Take a st. line  $BC = PQ$

Describe on BC an equi.  $\triangle ABC$  [Prob. 8]

From the point A draw  $AD \perp BC$ , and from C draw  $CD \parallel AB$ , meeting AD at D [Prob 6] AD is  $\perp BC$  and AC meets them.

$\therefore$  the angle DAC = the angle ACD In the same manner the angle BAC = the angle ACD. [Theor 14] and the angle ADC = the angle ABC [Theor 21.] But each of the angles ABC, BAC, and ACB, being an angle of the equi.  $\triangle$ . is =  $60^\circ$ .

$\therefore$  each of the angles CAD, ADC, and ACD is also =  $60^\circ$ .

Hence the angles ABC and ADC of the rhombus ABCD are equal and each of them is  $60^\circ$  while the remaining two equal angles are =  $360^\circ - 120^\circ = 240^\circ$ , or each of them is =  $120^\circ$ .

#### Prop No 223

**2** AB is the given st line of 2 5" inches The construction is the same as given in Prob 13

Join AC and BD In the two  $\triangle$ s DAB and CBA, the sides AD and AB are = sides CB and AB and the angle DAB = the angle CBA for they are rt angles.  $\therefore DB = AC$  [Theor. 4.]

By measurement  $AC = BD = 3.54$ " nearly

#### Prop No 224.

**3**  $AB = 3"$  is the diagonal. Bisect AB at O. From O draw CD at rt angles to AB. and make  $CD = OD = AO$  or  $OB$ . Join AD, AC, BC and BD. Then because in the  $\triangle AOC$ ,  $AO = OC$   $\therefore$  the angle ACO = the angle CAO. [Theor. 5] and the angle AOC is a rt. angle, therefore each of the angles ACO and CAO is half a rt.  $\angle$ .

In the same manner it can be proved that each of the angles ADO, DAO, DBO, BDO. CBO. BCO is half a rt. angle.

$\therefore$  each of the four angles A, D, B, and C is a rt angle.

Now in the two  $\triangle$ s ACO and BCO, the sides OA, OC and OB are = one another. and the angle AOC = the angle BOC, for they are rt. angles

$\therefore AC = BC$  [Theor. 4.] In the same manner it can be proved that AC or BC is equal to each of the sides BD and DA. Hence the figure is equilateral, it is also proved rectangular.

$\therefore ACBD$  is a square and it is described on AB a diagonal



By measurement each of the sides AC, CB, BD, and AD = 2 13" nearly

4 Make the side AB = 5.5 cm Bisect both the diagonals BD and AC. From the centres A and B and with radius equal to half AC = 3 cm and BD = 4 cm respectively, draw arcs cutting each other at O Join AO and OB Produce AO to C, making OC = AO, BO to D making OD = BO Thus AC = 6 cm and BD = 8 cm Join CD. Then CD is = and  $\parallel$  AB

Prop No 225

In the two  $\triangle$ s OBA and ODC, the two sides OB and OA of the one are = two sides OD and OC of the other, and the included angle BO = the included angle DOC

$\therefore$  the  $\triangle$  OBA = the  $\triangle$  ODC in all respects and side AB = side DC, and the angle OBA = the angle ODC, and the angle OAB = the angle OCD and they are the alternate angles

$\therefore$  AB is also  $\parallel$  CD [Theor 13]

Now join CB and DA Then because AB is proved = and  $\parallel$  CD,  $\therefore$  CB is also = and  $\parallel$  DA [Theor 21]  $\therefore$  ABCD is a parallelogram having the diagonals AC = 6 cm, and BD = 8 cm

By measurement AD = 5 cm nearly

Prop No 226 *fig P46*

5 Place the equal diagonals AC and BD in such a way that they bisect each other at O, and make vertically opposite angles AOB and COD =  $60^\circ$  Join AB and CD, as AO = BO = OC = OD for they are the halves of equal diagonals

each of them is = 3 cm and the angle AOB = the angle COD =  $60^\circ$  and the angle OAB = the angle OBA, and each of them is therefore = AOB the  $\triangle$  AOB is equilateral In the same manner the  $\triangle$  COD is also equilateral As the sides of these two are equal, DC is = and  $\parallel$  AB

Join now AD and BC The sides AD and BC join the two = and  $\parallel$  st lines, they are also = and  $\parallel$  [Theor 20]

The angles COD + DOA are = two rt angles, but the angle COD =  $60^\circ$  (hyp) the angle DOA =  $180 - 60 = 120^\circ$

Again OD = OA, angle ODA = angle OAD =  $\frac{1}{2}(180^\circ - 120^\circ)$  =  $30^\circ$

But the angle  $OAB = 60^\circ$ .  $\therefore$  the angle  $DAB = 90^\circ$  or a rt. angle.  $\therefore$  the parallelogram  $ABCD$  is a rectangle [Cor 1, Theor. 21]

$$\text{Perimeter} = 2 (AB + AD) = 2 (5.2 + 3) = 16.4 \text{ cm}$$

If the angle between the diagonals be increased from  $60^\circ$  to  $90^\circ$  the diagonals would bisect each other at right angles, and the parallelogram will assume the form of a square, whose perimeter will be  $= 4 \times \sqrt{16} = 4 \times 4 = 16 \text{ cm}$ .

$$\text{The excess above the former} = 16.4 - 16 = 0.4 \text{ cm}$$

$$\therefore \text{Percentage of excess} = 3.4 \%$$

Prop No 227.

**6** Only the four sides of a quadrilateral do not determine the exact shape of it. With the value of the four sides given in the exercise a series of figures can be drawn two of which  $ABCD$  and  $ABC'D'$  are given in the accompanying diagram. In order to determine the exact shape of a quadrilateral it is therefore necessary that either one of the angles or the diagonal be given.

At the point  $A$  in the given st. line  $AB = 5.6 \text{ cm}$  make an angle  $BAD = 60^\circ$ , and cut off  $AD = 3.3 \text{ cm}$ . Then from the points  $D$  and  $B$  and at the radius  $4 \text{ cm}$  and  $2.5 \text{ cm}$  respectively draw arcs cutting each other at  $C$ , then join  $DC$  and  $CB$ . Then  $ABCD$  is the required figure having the angle  $A = 60^\circ$ . In the same manner the figure  $ABC'D'$  can be described with the angle  $A = 30^\circ$ .

By increasing the angle  $A$  to  $100^\circ$  the position of the line  $AD$  will be given in the figure by  $AD''$ , and then the distance between  $D''$  and  $B$  would become greater than the sum of the two sides  $BC + CD = 6.5 \text{ cm}$ , and the construction fails.

In the same manner if the value of the angle  $A$  continues to decrease the two lines  $AD$  and  $CD$  at one position become a st. line as shown by the dotted line  $AC$  in figure. The value of the angle  $A$  at this position is  $17^\circ$  nearly, and the construction fails. Similarly when  $AD$  becomes at rt. angles to  $AB$ , the two sides  $BC$  and  $CD$  become a st. line as shewn by  $BD'$ , the construction fails.

$\therefore$  The construction of this figure is only possible so long as the value of the angle  $A$  remains between  $17^\circ$  to  $90^\circ$ .

Prop No 228

7. Draw the diagonal  $BD = 2.6''$ , and from the points  $B$  and  $D$

with the radius 3" and 2 8" respectively draw two arcs on the same side of  $BD$  cutting each other at  $A$ . Join  $BA$  and  $DA$ . In the manner with radius equal to 1 7" and 2 5" respectively draw two arcs on the opposite side cutting each other at  $C$ . Join  $BC$  and  $DC$ .

$ABCD$  is the required figure with  $BD$  as diagonal

The condition necessary to make the construction possible, is that the diagonal must be  $<$  the sum of the two sides on each side of it, otherwise the construction must fail.

The diagonal  $AC = 4\ 2''$  nearly by measure

(21) Prop No 229.

Describe the figure  $ABCD$ , about the diagonal  $AC$  in the manner given above in (1)

By measuring with protractor

the angle  $ABC = 90^\circ$

and the angle  $ADC = 90^\circ$

---

## PART I.

PAGE 94

On Loc 1.

Prop No 230 *fig. P48*

1 Let  $ABC$  be a circle, it is required to find the locus of a moving point  $P$  so that its radial distance from the circumference  $ABC$  be constant. Find  $O$  the centre of the circle  $ABC$ , and join  $OP$ .

Now from the centre  $O$  and radius  $= OP$  describe a circle  $PQR$ .

Then because every point in the circumference  $PQR$  is equidistant from  $O$ , and so every point in the circumference  $ABC$  is also equidistant from  $O$ .

$\therefore$  Every point on the circumference  $PQR$  is equidistant from the circumference  $ABC$ , i.e., to whatever position the point  $P$  may move on the circumference  $PQR$ , it is always at a constant distance from the circumference  $ABC$ .

The circumference  $PQR$  is the locus of the moving point  $P$ .

Prop No 231

2. For construction and proof see ex. 6 on Problems 1-7, p. 79.

## Prop No 232

3.  $A$  and  $B$  are the two points within the circle  $PQR$ . Join  $AB$ , and bisect  $AB$  at  $O$ . From  $O$  in  $AB$  draw another line  $ROP$  at rt angles to  $AB$  and meeting the circle  $PQR$  at  $R$  and  $P$ . Join  $AR$ ,  $BR$ ,  $AP$  and  $BP$ .

Then because  $AO = OB$  and  $OR$  is common and the angle  $AOR =$  the angle  $BOR$   $\therefore AR = BR$  [Theor 4]

Similarly  $AP = BP$ .

There are only two points

4 (i) Prop No. 233

(ii) Prop. No 234

This exercise can have two form —

(i) When  $AB$  is  $\parallel$   $CD$ . Take any transversal  $EF$ , meeting  $AB$  and  $CD$  at  $E$  and  $F$ . Bisect  $EF$  at  $O$ , and from  $O$  draw a st line  $\parallel$   $AB$  and  $CD$  meeting  $RQ$ , produced if necessary, at  $P$ . Then  $P$  is the position equidistant from  $AB$  and  $CD$ .

From  $P$  draw  $PG$  and  $PH$  perpendiculars to  $AB$  and  $CD$

Then  $PG = PH$  (For proof see solution of exer. 9 under Theor 17, page 49)

(ii) When  $AB$  and  $CD$  are not  $\parallel$ , let them meet at  $O$  when produced. Bisect the angle  $AOC$  by  $OP$  [Prob 1.] meeting  $RQ$ , produced if necessary at  $P$ . From  $P$  draw  $PG$  and  $PH$  perpendiculars to  $AB$  and  $CD$  produced. Then the two  $\Delta$ s  $OPG$  and  $OPH$  being equal in all respects [Theor 17.]  $PG = PH$ . Hence  $P$  is the position required

## Prop No 235.

5.  $A$  and  $B$  are the two fixed points. From the centre  $A$  with a radius 4 cm. describe an arc  $POR$ , and from the centre  $B$  with a radius = 5 cm describe another arc  $PSR$ , cutting the former at  $P$  and  $R$ . Because any point  $P$  or  $R$  moving along the arc  $POR$  is 4 cm. from  $A$ . In the same way any point  $P$  or  $R$  moving along the arc  $PSR$  is 5 cm from  $B$

$\therefore$  The two points  $P$  and  $R$  where two arcs cut each other are 4 cm. and 5 cm. from  $A$  and  $B$  respectively.

## Prop No 236

- (1) Let  $AB$  and  $CD$  be not parallel. Draw two st lines  $EF$  and  $GH \parallel AB$  each on one side of it at a distance of 3 cm. In like manner draw  $EG$  and  $FH \parallel CD$  on each side at a distance of 4 cm, and let these four st lines when produced meet at  $E, F, G$ , and  $H$ . These four points are at the distance of 3 cm from  $AB$  or  $AB$  produced, and of 4 cm from  $CD$  or  $CD$  produced. Let fall perpendiculars  $EQ, FP, GR$  and  $HO$  from  $E, F, G, H$  on  $AB$  produced if necessary. Then  $EQ = FP = GR = OH = 3$  cm. Similarly perpendiculars  $ES, FZ, HY$  and  $GX$  on  $CD$  produced are equal to one another,  $ES = FZ = HY = GX = 4$  cm.
- (11) When  $AB \parallel CD$  the construction fails

## Prop No 237

7  $AB$  and  $AC$  are two rulers placed at rt angles at  $A$ , and a rod  $AX$  slides on the pivot  $A$ , between  $AB$  and  $AC$ . Bisect  $AX$  at  $P$ . By sliding  $AX$  from  $AB$  to  $AC$ , the point  $P$  describes an arc  $OPR$ . Then this arc is the locus of  $P$ , as all the angles at  $A = 4$  rt angles, and the angle  $BAC = \text{one rt angle}$ .

the arc  $OPR$  is one fourth of the circle that can be drawn from the centre  $A$  and any radius  $AP$ .

## Prop No 238

8 Let  $AB$  be the hypotenuse of the rt angled  $\Delta$ s  $ACB, ADB$  and  $AEB$  on  $AB$  as their common base. Bisect  $AB$  at  $O$ . Join  $OC, OD$  and  $OE$ . Then  $AO = CO = OD = OE = OB$ . **Ex. 10-P 47**

a circle described from  $O$  as centre with the radius  $= AO$  will pass through  $C, D, E$  and  $B$ . the locus of the vertices of the rt angled  $\Delta$ s  $ACB, ADB$  and  $AEB$  is the semicircle  $ACDE$ .

## Prop No 239

9 Let  $X, X'$  and  $X''$  be the three positions of moving point  $X$  on the fixed st line  $BC$ .  $P$  is the middle point in  $AX$ , and  $P'$  and  $P''$  are the middle one in  $AX'$ , and  $AX''$ . Join  $PP'$  and  $P'P''$ .

Then the line  $PP'P''$  is the locus of the middle point  $P$ . In the  $\Delta AXX'$ ,  $PP'$  is the line joining the middle points of the sides  $AX$  and  $AX'$ ,  $PP' \parallel XX'$  [Ex. 2, Theor. 22, p 64]

In like manner  $P'P''$  is  $\parallel X'X''$ .  $PP''$  is a line  $\parallel XX''$ , and hence the locus of the middle point  $P$  is the line  $\parallel BC$ .

Prop No 240. (i), (ii), (iii)

10 There are three cases, (i) the fixed pt.  $A$  is on the circ of the given circle, (ii) the said point  $A$  is within the circle and (iii) the pt  $A$  is out of the circle.  $C$  is the centre of the circle, and  $X, X', X''$  and  $X'''$  are points in the circumference where the pt  $X$  comes by moving. In the (i) case  $A$  and  $X$  coincide. Join  $A$  with these points,  $C$  the centre lies in the line joining  $A$  and  $X''$ . Now bisect these lines  $AX, AX', AX''$  and  $AX'''$ , at  $P, P', P'', P'''$  respectively. Bisect the line  $PP''$  at  $O$ . If from the pt  $O$  as centre and with the distance  $OP$  or  $OP''$  a circle is drawn the circumference of it passes through  $P, P', P''$  and  $P'''$  the middle points of the st lines  $AX, AX', AX''$ , and  $AX'''$ . The circumference of this circle will touch the given circle in case (i), and in case (ii) it will pass between  $A$  and  $X$ , and will remain within the given circle, while in the (iii) it will pass between the pt.  $A$  and the given circle cutting the latter in two points.

Prop. No 241

Prop. No. 242.

11 Bisect  $AB$  at  $O$ , and  $AX$  at  $P$ . Join  $OP$ . Then  $OP$  is  $\parallel BX$ .  $BX$  revolves about  $B$ , and so traces out the circle  $X, X', X''$ . At whatever points  $X'$  or  $X''$  the moving point  $X$  reaches in the revolution  $AX$  always remains at rt angles to  $BX$ . The middle point  $P$  in  $AX$  always remains at a distance  $= PX$ , and consequently traces out a circular course  $PP'P'' \parallel$  the course of  $X$  round  $B$ .

Hence the locus of the middle point  $P$  in  $AX$  is a circle  $\parallel$  the circle  $XX'X''$ .

Prop. No. 243 (i)

Prop No 244 (ii)

12 (i)  $P$  is the given point from which  $PM$  and  $PN$  perpendiculars are drawn on  $OX$  &  $OY$  respectively. From  $OX$  &  $OY$  cut off  $OS = OS' = PM + PN = 6$  cm. Join  $SS'$ , which is the locus of the point so that  $PM + PN$  is always constant.

$SOS'$  is an isosc  $\Delta$ ,  $\therefore$  the angle  $OSS' =$  the  $\angle OS'S$  and each of them is  $=$  half a rt. angle.

$\therefore SM = PM$  and  $PN = NS'$ . But  $PN = OM$  and  $PM = ON$  for they are the opposite sides of a rectangle.

$\therefore PM + PN = SM + OM = NS' + ON = 6$  cm.

Similarly, by taking a point  $P'$  in  $SS'$ , and drawing  $P'M'$  and  $P'N'$  perpendiculars to  $OS$ , and  $OS'$ , it can be shewn that  $P'M' + P'N' = OM' + SM' = ON + N'S' = OS$  or  $OS' = 6$  cm

$\therefore SS'$  is the locus of the point  $P$  so that  $PM + PN = OS$  or  $OS' = 6$  cm. Constant

- (ii) In this case the constant  $PM - PN = 3$  cm From the side  $OX$  cut off  $OS = PM - PN = 3$  cm At the point  $S$  in  $SX$  make an angle  $XSP = 45^\circ$   $SP$  is the locus of the point  $P$ . From  $P$  draw  $PM$  and  $PN$  perpendiculars to  $OS$  and  $OS'$  respectively. Then  $SO = OM - MS = PN - PM$  or  $PM - PN = 3$  cm Constant

Similarly we take another point  $P'$  in  $SP$  and let perpendiculars  $P'M'$  and  $P'N'$  fall on  $OX$  and  $OY$  respectively Then  $OS = OM' - M'S = PN - PM = 3$  cm

13

Prop No 245.

- (i) Take any point  $M$  in  $OX$ , and cut off  $ON = 2 OM$  From the points  $M$  and  $N$  draw perpendiculars  $MP$  and  $NP$  meeting each other at  $P$ . Join  $OP$ , then  $OP$  is the locus. As  $MN$  is a rectangle,  $OM = PN$  and  $ON = PM$ . But  $ON = 2 OM$ .  $\therefore PM = 2 PN$ .

Prop No 246.

- (ii) Similarly to the above case (i), make  $ON = 3 OM'$ , and draw perpendiculars  $PN$  and  $PM$ , meeting at  $P$  Join  $OP$ .

Then  $OP$  is locus of the point  $P$  so that  $PM = 3 PN$ .

14.

Prop No 247.

Let  $BC$  and  $DE$  be the two given  $\parallel$  st. lines and  $A$  a given point, and  $F$  the given distance, it is required to find point or points at a given distance from the given point  $A$  and at an equal distance from the two  $\parallel$  st. lines

Prop. No 248.

The position of the point  $A$  admits three cases, (i) when  $A$  is out of the  $\parallel$  sides, (ii) when  $A$  lies between the  $\parallel$  lines, and (iii) when  $A$  is on one of the lines.

Prop No 249

From  $A$  draw  $AG$  perpendicular, if the position of  $A$  so admits, to  $BC$ , and produce  $AG$  or  $GA$ , as the case may be, to meet  $DE$  at

H Bisect GH at O, and from O draw POQ  $\parallel$  BC or DE [Prob 6.]

From A as centre with a radius = F draw an arc MXN cutting PQ at M and N. Then the points M and N are at a given distance F from the point A, and at an equidistance from BC and DE.

In the case when the given distance F is greater than the perpendicular AO from A on PQ, there are always two such points. But when F is = AO, there is only one point and that is O which is at a given distance from A and midway between the two parallels BC and DE. When F is less than AO this problem becomes impossible.

15. Prop No 251.

Let S be the given point and MX the given st. line and the perpendicular SO from S on MX =  $2\frac{1}{2}$ ".

Produce OS to P and make OP =  $2\frac{1}{2}$ ".

From P draw a st line QPR  $\parallel$  MX [Prob 6]

From the centre S with a radius =  $2\frac{1}{2}$ " draw arcs to cut QPR at P and R. Join SQ and SR. Then Q and R are the two points which are at a distance of  $2\frac{1}{2}$ " from S and also a distance OP =  $2\frac{1}{2}$ " from MX the given st. line

16 Prop No 252.

MX is the given st line and S the given point. From S draw SO perpendicular to MX and produce OS to Y. Bisect OS at P. Then the point P is the vertex of the curve

Below this point P draw a series of st. lines all  $\parallel$  MX from points 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, &c on PY. Now from the centre S with the radius = 01, 02, 03, 04, 05, 06, &c, draw arcs, cutting parallels drawn from the points 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, &c, respectively on both sides of OY, at P<sup>1</sup>, P<sup>2</sup>, P<sup>3</sup>, P<sup>4</sup>, P<sup>5</sup>, P<sup>6</sup>, &c. These points P, P<sup>1</sup>, P<sup>2</sup>, P<sup>3</sup>, &c, &c, are equidistant from the point S and the st line MX. Join these points and there will be a curve which is called a parabola having MX for its axis and the point S for its focus

Prop No 253.

17. Let AB be the base, C the altitude and DE the given st line. At B in AB draw BF at rt angles to AB, making BF = C. From F draw FG  $\parallel$  AB [Prob. 6] meeting DE, and DE produced at G. Join AG and BG. Then AGB is the required  $\Delta$ , of which



AB is the base and  $FB = C$  the altitude, and the  $\angle$  AGB on the st line DE

Prop No 254.

18. ABC is a triangle Bisect the  $\angle$ s B, A, C by st lines BO, AO and CO All these bisecting lines meet at the point O [Ex II, page 96]. From this point O, draw OP, OR, and OQ, perpendiculars to BC, AC, and AB respectively Then  $OP = OR = OQ$

In the two  $\triangle$ s OBP and OBQ, the  $\angle$  OBP = the  $\angle$  OBQ and the  $\angle$  OPB = the  $\angle$  OQB, and OB being common, then the  $\triangle$  OBP = the  $\triangle$  OBQ, and  $OP = OQ$

In the same manner it can be shewn that  $OP = OR$ .

$OP = OR = OQ$

Prop No. 255 (i)

Prop No 256 (ii)

- (i) Take points  $Q'$  and  $R'$  in OX and OY respectively so that  $OQ' = OR' = \frac{1}{2}(OQ + OR)$  Join  $Q'R'$  Then  $Q'R'$  is the locus of the middle point P of QR Draw PS and PT perpendiculars to OX and OY respectively The  $\triangle$ s QSP and RTP are congruent and  $QP = PR$

Similarly by taking  $Q''$  and  $R''$  points in OX and OY, it can also be proved that  $Q''P'' = P''R''$  when  $OQ'' + OR'' = OQ + OR = \text{constant}$

- (ii) From OQ cut off  $OQ' = OR - OR$  Bisect  $OQ'$  at S at S in QS make an angle  $QSP = 45^\circ$  Then the st line SP is the locus of the middle point of QR

Prop No 257 (i)

Prop No 258 (i)

Let S and S' be the two points in PP'', so that  $PS = S'P'$  or  $SP + SP'$  or  $SP + S'P' = \text{constant}$  3 5'' Bisect SS' at 6 or O Take any number of points between SO, and number them 1, 2, 3, 4, 5 They should be close together near S, and the spaces should gradually widen as they approach O Take the distance P 1 in the compasses, and with centres S and S' describe arcs at P', P<sup>1</sup> and P<sup>2</sup>, P<sup>2</sup> on both sides of S & S' respectively Take the distance P<sup>1</sup> 1 in the compasses, and with centre S' cross the arcs at P' and P', and with the centre S cross the arcs at P<sup>2</sup>, P<sup>2</sup>.

Take the distance P 2 in the compasses, and with centres S and S<sup>1</sup> describe arcs at P<sup>3</sup> P<sup>3</sup> on both sides of S, and P<sup>4</sup> and P<sup>4</sup> on

that of  $S^1$ . Take  $P^2$  in the compasses, and with centre  $S$  cross the arcs at  $P^4$ ,  $P^4$ , and with centre  $S'$  cross the arcs  $P^1$ ,  $P^3$

Proceed in the manner described above with each of the points 3, 4, 5, and 6 in  $SO$ , and then join the intersecting points of arcs. The curve thus sketched is the ellipse.

The intersecting points of the arcs at  $P^1$ ,  $P^2$ ,  $P^4$ , &c, &c., are the successive places of the point  $P$  in its progress round the foci  $S$  and  $S'$  so that  $SP + S'P = S'P^2 + SP^2 = SP^4 + S'P^4 = S'P^6 + SP^6 = 3 \frac{1}{2}$  constant

(11) Prop No 259

Join  $SS'$  and in the st line  $SS'$  take two points  $P$  and  $P'$  such that  $SP = S'P'$ , and the distance between  $P$  and  $P' = 1 \frac{1}{2} = SP - S'P$ . Produce  $SS'$  both ways and take any number of points  $J$ ,  $L$ ,  $M$ , and  $N$  in  $PS$  produced, and points  $J'$ ,  $L'$ ,  $M'$ , and  $N'$  in  $P'S'$  produced, so that  $SJ = S'J'$ ,  $JL = J'L'$ ,  $LM = L'M'$ ,  $MN = M'N'$

Now with centre  $S'$  or  $S$  with a radius  $= P'J'$  or  $PJ$ ,  $P'L'$  or  $PL$ ,  $P'M'$  or  $PM$ ,  $P'N'$  or  $PN$  describe arcs on both sides of  $SS'$ . Again with  $SS'$  as centres with radius  $= P'J$  or  $PJ'$ ,  $P'L$  or  $PL'$ ,  $P'M$  or  $PM'$ ,  $P'N$  or  $PN'$  describe arcs cutting the former arcs  $P^2$ ,  $P^3$ ,  $P^4$  and  $P^5$  on both sides of  $P'S'$ , and at  $P_0$ ,  $P_1$ ,  $P_2$ ,  $P_3$  on both sides of  $PS'$ . Now join  $P'$  with the points of intersection  $P^2$ ,  $P^3$ ,  $P^4$ ,  $P^5$  on both sides of  $S'$ , and similarly join  $P$  with points of intersection  $P_0$ ,  $P_1$ ,  $P_2$ ,  $P_3$  on both sides of  $S$ . Two curves of a peculiar shape will be formed as shown in the diagram one round the point  $S'$  or the other round the point  $S$ . This kind of curves are called Hyperbolas with  $S'$ ,  $S$  for their foci. The property of such curves is that the difference of the distance of any point on the curve from the two foci is constant. For example  $SP^3 - S'P^3 = PL' - P'L' = PP' = 1 \frac{1}{2}$  for  $P'L'$  is common

## PART I

PAGE 98.

### Miscellaneous problems.

Prop No 260 *also Hall*

1 Through  $A$  draw  $DAE \parallel BC$  [Prob 6] at  $A$  in  $AE$  make an  $\angle FAE = X$  [Prob 5] Produce  $FA$  to meet  $BC$  at  $G$ .

Then  $\angle AGC$  is the required  $\angle$ ,  $DE$  is  $\parallel BC$ , and  $FAG$  meets them, then the  $\angle FAE =$  the  $\angle AGC$  [Theor 14]

But the  $\angle FAE =$  the  $\angle X$  (const)

$\therefore$  the  $\angle AGC =$  the  $\angle X$

Prop No 261 *also Hall*

2 From  $OB$  the greater arm of the  $\angle AOB$  cut off  $OC = OA$ . Join  $AC$ . From the centres  $A$  and  $C$  with any radius describe two arcs cutting each other at  $D$ . Join  $D$  with  $E$  the middle point in  $AC$ . Then  $DE$  produced will bisect the  $\angle AOB$ .

In the two  $\triangle s AOB$  and  $COE$ ,  $OA = OC$  (Const) and  $OE$  is common, while the base  $AE =$  the base  $CE$ .

$\therefore$  the  $\angle AOE =$  the  $\angle COE$ . [Theor 4]

Prop No 262 *also Hall*

3 Join  $OP$ , and produce it to  $R$  making  $PR = OP$ . From  $R$  draw  $RC \parallel OB$  meeting  $AO$  at  $C$  (Prob 6). Join  $CP$  and produce it to  $D$  meeting  $OB$ . Then  $CPD$  is the required line. For  $CR$  is  $\parallel OB$ , <sup>and</sup>  $OR$  meets them, the  $\angle CRP =$  the  $\angle POD$ . [Theor. 14,] and the  $\angle CPR =$  the  $\angle DPO$  [Theor. 3,] and  $OP = PR$  (Const)

$\therefore CP = PD$ .

Prop No 263 *also Hall*

4 Bisect  $OB$  at  $D$ , and from  $B$  draw  $BE \parallel OC$ , meeting  $OA$  at  $E$ . Join  $ED$  and produce it to  $F$  to meet  $OC$ . Then  $EDF$  is the required transversal. Prove in the same way as given in the last preceding Exercise 3.

Prop No 264

5 Let  $A$  be the given point,  $BC$  and  $DE$  two  $\perp$  st lines. It is required to draw lines from  $A$  to  $DE$  so that the intercepted parts of them between  $BC$  and  $DE$  be  $=$  the given line  $F$ .

From  $A$  draw  $AO$  perpendicular to  $BC$ , and produce it to meet  $DE$  at  $P$ .  $O$  as centre with a radius  $= F$ , draw two arcs cutting  $DE$  at  $Q$  and  $R$ . Join  $OQ$  and  $OR$ .

From the point  $A$  draw  $AGH$  and  $AKM \parallel OQ$  and  $OR$  respectively, meeting or terminate with  $DE$  at  $H$  and  $M$ . Then  $GH = KM = F$ . Because  $GHQO$  and  $KMRO$  are parallelograms, of which the opposite sides are  $=$ , viz,  $GH = OQ$  and  $KM = OR$ . But  $OQ = OR = F$ ,  $\therefore GH = KM = F$ .

There will be only one solution of this exer if  $OP = F$  only touches  $DE$ ; and when the distance between the parallels or  $OP$  is greater than  $F$ , there will be no solution.

Prop No 265

6(c) Bisect the angle  $A$  by  $AD$ , meeting  $BC$  at  $D$ . Through  $D$  draw  $DE \parallel AB$  meeting  $AC$  at  $E$ , and  $BF \parallel AC$  meeting  $AB$  at  $F$ .

Then  $AEDF$  is the required rhombus. The side  $AE = DF$  and  $DE = AF$ , for they are the opposite sides of a parallelogram [Theor. 21] and the angle  $EAF = EDF$ . But  $AD$  bisects the angles  $EAF$  and  $EDF$ ,  $\therefore$  the angle  $EAD =$  the angle  $EDA$ .

$\therefore ED = EA$ . But  $ED = AF$  and  $AE = DF$ .

$\therefore AE = ED = DF = AF$  Hence the figure  $EAFD$  is a rhombus.

Prop No 266.

7.  $AB$  is the given st line, it is required to trisect it. On  $AB$  describe an equil  $\triangle ABC$  Bisect the  $\angle$ s  $A$  and  $B$  by  $AO$  and  $BO$ . From the point  $O$  draw  $OD$  and  $OE \parallel AC$  and  $BC$  respectively, meeting  $AB$  at  $D$  and  $E$ . Then the st. line  $AB$  is trisected at  $D$  and  $E$ ,  $OD \parallel AC$ ,  $OE \parallel BC$  and  $AB$  meets them,  $\therefore$  the  $\angle CAD =$  the  $\angle ODE$ , and the  $\angle CBE =$  the  $\angle OED$ . [Theor. 14] But the  $\angle CAB =$  the  $\angle CBA$  for they are the  $\angle$ s of equil  $\triangle$ ,  $\therefore$  the  $\angle ODE =$  the  $\angle OED = 60^\circ$ ,  $\therefore$  the  $\angle DOE = 60^\circ$ .

$\therefore OD = OE = DE$ , again  $OD \parallel AC$  and  $AO$  meets them.

$\therefore$  the  $\angle CAO =$  the  $\angle AOD$ . [Theor 14]

But the  $\angle CAO =$  the  $\angle OAD$   $\therefore$  the  $\angle OAD =$  the  $\angle AOD$ , and so  $AD = DO$ . In the same manner  $OE = EB$ . But  $OD = OE = DE$   $\therefore AD = EB = DE$ .  $\therefore AB$  is trisected at  $D$  and  $E$ .

Prop No 267.

8. (2) Let  $O, P, Q$ , be the middle points of the  $\triangle$ .

Join  $OP, OQ, PQ$ .

From the point  $O$  draw a st. line  $AOB \parallel PQ$ , and from  $P$  draw  $BPC \parallel OQ$ . Similarly from the point  $Q$  draw  $AQC \parallel OP$ , meeting  $AB$  and  $BC$  at  $A$  and  $C$  respectively

Then the figure  $ABC$  is the required  $\triangle$ .

Prop No 268

Prop No 269

- (ii) Let  $X$  and  $Y$  be the two sides, and  $AD$  the median on the third side. From the centre  $A$  with a radius  $= \frac{1}{2} Y$  describe an arc on one side of  $AD$  and from the other point  $D$  as centre with a radius  $= \frac{1}{2} Y$  describe an arc cutting the former at  $E$ . Join  $AE$  and  $DE$ , produce  $AE$  to  $C$  making  $EC = AE$  or  $AC = Y$ . Join  $CD$  and produce it to  $B$ . From the centre  $A$  with radius  $= X$  draw an arc cutting  $CD$  produced at  $B$ . Join  $AB$ . Then  $ABC$  is the  $\triangle$  required. Bisect  $AB$  at  $F$ . Join  $EF$ . Then  $EF$  which joins the middle points  $E$  and  $F$  is  $\parallel BC$ , and also half of  $BC$ . [Ex 2 and 3, p 64]

Prop No 270

- (iii)  $P$  and  $Q$  are the two medians and  $AB$  is the third side. From the centre  $A$  with radius  $= \frac{2}{3}$  of  $Q$  draw an arc, and from  $B$  as centre with radius  $= \frac{2}{3}$  of  $P$  draw an arc cutting the former at  $O$ . Join  $OA$  and  $OB$ , and produce  $AO$  to  $D$  making  $AD = Q$ . Produce  $BD$  to  $E$  making  $BE = P$ . Join  $AE$  and  $BD$  and produce them to meet at  $C$ .

Then  $ABC$  is the required  $\triangle$ 

Prop No 271

- (iv)  $P, Q, R$  are the three medians. Draw a  $\triangle ODC$ , with the  $\frac{2}{3}$  of the three medians as sides of which  $OD = \frac{2}{3}$  of  $Q$ ,  $OC = \frac{2}{3}$  of  $R$ , and  $CD = \frac{2}{3}$  of  $P$ . Produce  $CO$  to  $G$  and make  $CG = R$ . Produce  $DO$  to  $A$  making  $OA = DO$ . Join  $AG$  and produce it to  $B$  making  $AG = GB$ . Join  $BC$  and  $AC$ . Bisect  $AC$  at  $F$ . Join  $FO$  and  $BO$ . By (Theor III, page 96)  $CG$  and  $BF$  are concurrent, and  $AE$  also joins them at  $O$  from the  $\angle A$ .  $AE$  bisects  $BC$ .

.  $ABC$  is the required  $\triangle$ 

## PART II.

PAGE 101

## On Tables of length and area.

Prop No 272

1. (i) Suppose  $AB =$  one yard, then  $ABCD$  is the sq on  $AB =$  one sq yard. But  $AB$  and  $AD$  are divided into 3 equal

parts at  $a$ , and  $b$ , and 1 and 2. From these points draw  $\parallel$ s to the adjacent sides. As  $Aa = \frac{1}{3}$  of  $AB$  or one yard = one ft.  $\therefore$  the figure  $la = sq.$  on  $Aa = sq.$  on 1 ft. There are such 9 squares within  $ABCD$ .

$\therefore 1 \text{ sq. yd} = 3 \times 3 \text{ sq. ft.}$

Prop No 273.

- (ii)  $AB$  represents one ft, and it is divided into 12 parts.  $\therefore$  each of the parts on  $AB =$  one inch, and 1, 1 is = one sq inch  $ABCD = sq.$  on  $AB = 1 \text{ sq. ft.}$  There are 12 sq inches in the first row, but there are 12 such rows,  $1 \text{ sq. ft} = 12 \times 12 \text{ sq. inches}$  or  $12^2 \text{ sq. inches.}$

Prop. No. 274.

- (iii) Suppose  $AB$  represents one cm, then  $ABCD$  is one sq. cm.  $AB$  is divided into 10 equal parts. So there are 10 rows of 10 sq cm, i. e.,  $10^2 \text{ cm.}$

Hence  $1 \text{ sq. cm.} = 10^2 \text{ sq. mm.}$

Prop. No. 275.

2  $AB$  is a given st. line, and the figure  $ABCD$  a sq. on it. Bisect  $AB$  at  $a$  and  $AD$  at  $b$ . From  $a$  and  $b$  draw st. lines  $\parallel$  the adjacent sides  $AD$  and  $AB$  respectively. Thus the whole figure  $ABCD$  is divided into four minor sqs which are on sides =  $Aa$  or  $Ba$ , i. e., half of  $AB$   $\therefore$  the sq  $ABCD$  on  $AB =$  four times the sqs. on  $Aa$ , i. e., half of  $AB$ .

Prop No 276

3  $ABCD$  is a sq. described on  $AB = 1''$   $AB$  is sub-divided into 10 parts and so is  $AD$ . Hence there are  $10 \times 10$  small sqrs. within  $ABCD$ . But every one of these small sqs. has for its side one of the parts into which  $AB$  is divided, i. e.,  $\frac{1}{10}$  of  $1''$   $\therefore$  the sq. on  $1'' = 10 \times 10$  times the sq. on  $\frac{1}{10}''$  or  $0.1''$ .

4.  $1'' = 5 \text{ miles}$  Hence  $1 \text{ sq. inch} = 25 \text{ sq. miles.}$   $\therefore 6 \text{ sq. inches}$  represent 150 sq miles.

---

PART II.

PAGE 102

On area of rectangles.

Prop No 277.

1.  $a = 2''$  and  $b = 3''$ .  $ABCD$  is the required figure  $AB = 3''$  inches.

and  $AD = a = 2''$ . Divide AB into three equal parts, each = 1 inches and AD into two parts, each = 1". Now there are two rows each containing 3 sqrs.  $\therefore$  the rectangle AC contains  $2 \times 3$  sqs = 6 sqr. inches.

$a \times b = \text{area}$ .  $\therefore 2 \times 3 = 6$  sqr. inches area.

Prop No 278

2. ABCD is the rectangle  $AB = 4''$  and  $AD = 1\frac{1}{2}''$

$\therefore$  the area =  $a \times b = 1\frac{1}{2}'' \times 4'' = 6''$  sqr inches

AB is divided into 4 parts each = 1'', and AD contains one such part and a half.  $\therefore$  there are 4 sqrs. in the first row along AB, while in the second row there are half squares. Or in other words each part on AB is divided into 10 equal parts, hence there are  $10 \times 1 = 40$  equal parts on AB. In the same manner AD is divided into  $10 + 5 = 15$  equal parts. Now there are 15 rows of 40 sqrs in each.  $\therefore$  the rectangle contains  $40 \times 15 = 600$  small sqrs. But a sqr. having its one side = 1" contains 100 such small sqrs

$\therefore$  the rectangle ABCD contains  $\frac{600}{100} = 6$  sqr. inches.

Prop No 279.

3. ABCD is a rectangle  $AB = 3\frac{1}{2}''$  and  $AD = 8''$  or  $\frac{8}{10}''$

One inch is divided into 10 parts.  $\therefore$  AB is divided into  $10 \times 3\frac{1}{2} = 35$  parts and AD is divided into 8 or  $\frac{8}{10} \times 10 = 8$  parts.  $\therefore$  the first row along AB contains 35 small sqrs. each side of which =  $\frac{1}{10}''$ , and there are such 8 rows.

$\therefore$  the figure ABCD contains  $35 \times 8 = 280$  small sqrs.

But one small sqr =  $(\frac{1}{10})^2$  or  $\frac{1}{100}''$ .  $\therefore$  the whole figure or 280 small sqrs. =  $\frac{280}{100} = 2\frac{8}{10}''$  sqr. inches

The area =  $a \times b = 8 \times 3\frac{1}{2} = 2\frac{8}{10}$  sqr inches.

Prop No, 280.

4. ABCD is a rectangle such that  $AB = a = 2\frac{1}{2}''$ , and  $AD = b = 1\frac{1}{4}''$ . Every 1" of the squared paper is divided into 10 parts.  $\therefore$  AB contains  $2\frac{1}{2} \times 10 = 25$  divisions and AD contains  $1\frac{1}{4}'' \times 10 = 14$  divisions.  $\therefore$  the rect. ABCD is divided into  $25 \times 14 = 350$  compartments each of which represents  $\frac{1}{100}$  square inch. There are 25 rows containing 14 such squares,  $\therefore$  the rectangle contains  $25 \times 14 = 350$  sqrs. But 100 sqrs make up 1 sqr inch.  $\therefore$   $\frac{350}{100} = 3\frac{5}{10}$  sqr. inches is the area. In other words area =  $2\frac{1}{2} \times 1\frac{1}{4} = 3\frac{5}{10}$  sqr. inches.

Prop. No. 281.

5 In the rectangle ABCD,  $AB = a = 2\ 2''$ ,  $AD = b = 1\ 5''$ . The rectangle ABCD is therefore divided into compartments each of which represents  $\frac{1}{10}$  sqr inch. Now there are  $2\ 2 \times 10 = 22$  rows each containing  $1\ 5 \times 10 = 15$  sqrs.  $\therefore$  the rectangle contains  $22 \times 15 = 330$  sqrs, each of which is  $\frac{1}{100}$  sqr inch  $\therefore$  the figure contains  $\frac{330}{100} = 3\ 3$  sqr inches.

The area  $= 2\ 2'' \times 1\ 5'' = 3\ 3''$  sqr inches.

Prop. No 282.

6 The side AB of the rectangle  $= a = 1\ 6''$ , and the side AD  $= b = 2\ 1''$ . Each inch is divided into 10 equal parts.  $\therefore$  AB is divided into  $1\ 6 \times 10 = 16$  parts, and AD into  $2\ 1 \times 10 = 21$  parts. The rectangle ABCD is divided into compartments each of which is  $= \frac{1}{10} \times \frac{1}{10}$  sqr inches.

Now there are 16 rows of such sqrs along AB, and 21 rows along AD.  $\therefore$  the whole figure ABCD contains  $21 \times 16 = 336$  such squares  $\therefore$  ABCD contains  $\frac{336}{100} = 3\ 36$  sqr. inches. The area  $= 2\ 1'' \times 1\ 6'' = 3\ 36$  sqr inches.

7 The area of the figure is  $= ab$

But  $a = 18$  metres, and  $b = 11$  metres.

$\therefore$  the area  $= 18 \times 11 = 128$  sq metres.

8 The area of the rectangle is  $= ab$

But  $a = 7$  ft, and  $b = 72$  in or  $\frac{72}{12} = 6$  ft.

$\therefore$  the area  $= 7 \times 6 = 42$  sqr. ft

9. The area of a rectangle  $= a \times b$ .

But  $a = 2\ 5$  km and  $b = 4$  metres, as 1 km. is  $= 1000$  metres, hence  $a = 2\ 5 \times 1000 = 2500$  metres.

The area  $= 4 \times 2500 = 10000$  sqr metres.

10. Area  $= a \times b$ . But  $a = \frac{1}{4}$  mile or  $\frac{1760 \times 36}{4}$  inches and  $b = 1$  inch.  $\therefore$  the area  $= \frac{1760 \times 36}{4} \times 1 = 15840$  sq. inches or 110 sq ft.

11 The area  $= a \times b = 30$  sq cm., but  $a = 6$  cm.  $\therefore b = \frac{30}{6} = 5$  cm.

Below is given the figure

Prop. No. 283.

ABCD is the rectangle of which length  $AB = 6$  cm. or divided into 6 parts, 6 if multiplied by 5 produces 30.  $\therefore$  there are 5 rows



each containing 6 sqrs there are 30 sqs each of which is = 1 sq cm.

Prop. No 284.

Prop No 285

12 Area =  $a \times b$  But area = 39 sq in. and breadth  $b = 15$ .

$$\therefore 39 \text{ sq in} = a \times 15 \therefore a = \frac{39}{15} = 2.6 \text{ cm.}$$

ABCD is the required rectangle of which length  $a = 2.6$  cm and breadth  $b = 15$ .

But each inch contains 10 parts, so length  $a$  contains 26 parts, and breadth  $b$  contains 15 parts  $\therefore$  there are  $26 \times 15 = 390$  compartments in the figure each of which is  $\frac{1}{10} \times \frac{1}{10}$  sq in in area

the area =  $\frac{390}{100}$  sq inches or 3.9 sq in

13 (i) When the length is tripled without altering the breadth, the area becomes thicefold, for the area is repeated three times.

(ii) But when length and breadth both are tripled the area becomes nine times, for we multiply both the dimensions of the figure by 3, which means three rows of squares in the length three times

ABCD is the original figure, but when tripled in one direction it assumes the form and size of AEFD, which contains only three such figures as ABCD. But when this tripled form tripled again in the other dimensions it assumes the form and size of AEGH. Thus there are three rows each containing three squares or 9 squares.

Prop No 286.

Prop. No. 287

14. ABCD is a plan of a rectangular garden of which  $AB = a = 36$ ", and  $AD = b = 25$ ", but each inch = 10 yards  $AB = 36$  yds and  $AD = 25$  yds. The area =  $36 \times 25 = 900$  sq yds

Now the area is made =  $900$  sq yds +  $300$  sq yds =  $1200$  sq. yards, but the breadth remains 25 yds Then  $a = \frac{\text{area}}{b} = \frac{1200}{25 \text{ yds}} = 48$  yds as  $10 \text{ yds} = 1'' \therefore 48 \text{ yds.} = 4.8''$  in our plan.

$\therefore$  The length of the new plan would be represented by 4.8".

15 The length of the rectangular enclosure = 65 cm and the breadth = 45 cm But 1 cm. represents 20 metres  $6.5 \text{ cm.} = 6.5 \times 20 = 130$  metres and  $4.5 \text{ cm.} = 4.5 \times 20 = 90$  metres.

Hence the area  $= a \times b = 130 \times 90 = 11700$  sq. metres.

16 The length, and breadth of a plan are 4.5 cms and 3.2 cm.  
 $\therefore$  the area  $= 4.5 \times 3.2 = 14.40$  sq. cms. Thus a plan of 14.4 sq. cm, represents an area of 1440 sq. yds.

$\therefore$  1 sq. cm represents  $\frac{1440}{14.4}$  sq. yds. or 100 sq. yds.

$\therefore$  1 cm represents 10 yds. and consequently the scale is 1 cm. = 10 yards.

17. The scale being 1" = 100 ft and 1" <sup>2</sup> sq. in. = 100 <sup>2</sup> sq. ft

$\therefore$  the area 52000 sq. ft. can be represented by 5.2 sq. inches.  
 $\therefore$  area  $= a \times b = 5.2$  sq. in.

But  $a = 3.25$   $b = \frac{5.2}{3.25} = 1.6$ "

Then the breadth of the plan is = 1.6".

18 First neglecting the gap on the upper side of the figure and the lap on the right side, the area of the figure would be  $= 20 \times 30 = 600$  sq. ft

Now taking the gap the area of which  $= 5 \times 10 = 50$  sq. ft. and that of the lap being  $5 \times 10 = 50$  sq. ft.  $\therefore$  By subtracting the area of the gap and adding that of the over lap we get the same result, for these areas are equal  $\therefore$  the area of the figure is 600 sq. ft.

19. The area of the gap on the upper side being  $24 \times 12 = 288$  sq. ft., and that of the extended part on the upper right hand corner being also the same, i. e.,  $24 \times 12 = 288$  sq. ft.

$\therefore$  by neglecting these equal addition and subtraction the area of the whole figure  $= 48 \times 24 = 1152$  sq. ft.

20 Area of the whole figure  $= 15 \times 10 = 150$  sq. ft. The area of the rectangular white space  $= (10 - 5)(15 - 5) = 50$  sq. ft. This being subtracted from the above area of the figure 150 sq. ft. - 50 sq. ft. leaves 100 sq. ft. for the area of the shaded part of the figure.

21 The length of the whole figure  $= 7 + 4 + 4 = 15$  and the breadth  $= 4.5 + 4 + 4 = 12.5$ .

$\therefore$  the area of the figure  $15 \times 12.5 = 187.5$  sq. ft. The area of the white space  $= 4.5 \times 7 = 31.5$  sq. ft. which when subtracted from the area of the whole figure 187.5 sq. ft. leaves the area of the shaded part = 156 sq. yards.

22 The whole length of the figure being 15 ft., from which subtracting the breadth of the shaded part 5 ft. we get the length of the two white parts = 10 ft. In the similar way by subtracting the breadth 5 ft from the breadth of the whole figure 12 ft we get the breadth of the white parts = 7 ft.

∴ the area of the four white corners in the figure =  $7 \times 7 = 49$  sq ft

But the area of the whole figure =  $12 \times 15 = 180$  sq ft.

∴ the area of the shaded cross =  $180 - 49 = 131$  sq ft

23. The length of each of the shaded corners =  $\frac{30 - 18}{2} = 6$  feet  
and the breadth is =  $\frac{20 - 8}{2} = 6$  ft.

∴ the area of the 4 corner squares =  $4 \times 6 \times 6 = 144$  sq ft and the area of the middle shaded portion =  $18 \times 8 = 144$  sq ft which when added to the area of the four shaded corners 144 sq ft gives the area of all the shaded parts =  $144 + 144 = 288$  sq ft

24 The whole figure is a square, its area =  $12 \times 12 = 144$  sq ft But the middle shaded square is half of the whole figure.

the area of the shaded part =  $\frac{1}{2}$  of  $144 = 72$  sq ft

25 The whole figure is a rectangle The diagonals bisect it the shaded parts are equal to the white portion. Hence the area of the shaded parts =  $\frac{1}{2}$  of  $(10 \times 15) = 75$  sq feet

## PART II.

### PAGE 105, THEOR 24

1 The area of a parallelogram = base  $\times$  height

(i) Area =  $5.5 \text{ cm} \times 4 \text{ cm} = 22$  sq. cm

(ii) „ =  $2.4'' \times 1.5'' = 3.6$  sq inches.

Prop No 287

2 Make  $AB = 2.5''$ . At the point A make an  $\angle BAD = 65^\circ$  Cut off  $AD = 1.5'$  From points B & D draw BC & DC parallel to AD and AB respectively Then ABCD is the required parallelogram.

Draw DE a perpendicular from D on AB. - Measure DE which is found to be  $1.37''$  nearly ∴ area =  $1.37'' \times 2.5'' = 3.425''$  sq in. approximately, because no perpendicular can be exactly found out without the help of trigonometry and logarithms The perpendicular BF from B on AD is  $2.28''$ , and ∴ area =  $1.5'' \times 2.28'' = 3.42$  sq in.

$\therefore$  The average of the two areas being  $\frac{3 \cdot 425 + 3 \cdot 42}{2} = \frac{6 \cdot 845}{2} = 3 \cdot 4225$  sq. in.

Prop No 288.

3 5 metres are represented by 1 cm  $\therefore$  by scale 30 mtrs. = 6 cm, and 25 mtrs = 5 cm. ABCD is the parallelogram, AB = 6 cm. and AD = 5 cm while  $\angle A = 50^\circ$  DE and BF are perpendiculars from D and B on AB and AD respectively. DE = 3.8 cm and BF = 4.6 cm in the plan or 19 metres and 23 metres respectively.  $\therefore$  areas are 570 sq metres, and 575 sq. metres. Hence average of these two areas =  $\frac{570 + 575}{2} = \frac{1145}{2} = 572.5$  sq. metres

Prop No. 289

4 Area of a parallelogram = base  $\times$  height

$$\therefore \text{height} = \frac{\text{area}}{\text{base}} = \frac{42 \text{ sq in}}{2.8} = 15$$

If AD = 2" the parallelogram would be as given in the figure.

Prop No 290

5 Area of a rhombus = base  $\times$  height  $\therefore$  Altitude =  $\frac{\text{area}}{\text{base}} = \frac{386 \text{ sq in}}{2} = 193$ . Now the adjacent sides and altitude being given, a rhombus can be drawn which is given in the figure ABCD

The acute  $\angle$ s at A and C =  $70^\circ$ .

## PART II.

PAGE 107, THEOP. 25

1. Area of a  $\triangle = \frac{1}{2} \times \text{base} \times \text{height}$ .  $\therefore$  area in

(i)  $= \frac{1}{2} \times 24 \text{ ft.} \times 15 \text{ ft} = 180$  sq. ft.

(ii)  $= \frac{1}{2} \times 48'' \times 3 \cdot 5'' = 840$  sq in.

(iii)  $= \frac{1}{2} \times 160 \text{ mtr.} \times 125 \text{ mtr} = 10000$  sq metres

Prop No 291.

2 (i) In the  $\triangle ABC$ , AD, the perpendicular = 4.5 cm.

$$\therefore \text{area} = \frac{1}{2} \times 3.4 \times 8.4 = 14.28 \text{ sq cm.}$$

Prop No 292.

(ii) The perpendicular on AC = b = 6.1

$$\therefore \text{area} = \frac{1}{2} \times 6.1 \times 5 = 15.25 \text{ sq cm.}$$

Prop No 293

(iii) The perpendicular AD on BC of  $\alpha = 6.5$  cm.

$$\therefore \text{area} = \frac{1}{2} \times 6.5 \times 6.5 = 21.12 \text{ sq cm}$$

Prop No 294

3 ABC is a rt  $\angle$ ed  $\Delta$  having C as rt  $\angle$ . The area of a  $\Delta = \frac{1}{2} \times \text{base} \times \text{height}$ . In this  $\Delta$  AC is the perpendicular on BC, and it is the height.

The area of the  $\Delta$  ABC =  $\frac{1}{2} \times BC \times AC$  now substituting their values. The area =  $\frac{1}{2} \times 6 \times 5 = 15$  sq cm. The hypotenuse AB =  $C = 7.8$  cm and the perpendicular CD from C on AB or  $c = 3.8$  cm. The area =  $\frac{1}{2} \times 3.8 \times 7.8 = 14.82$  sq cm nearly. The error is =  $15 - 14.82 = .18$  sq cm.

$$\therefore \text{The P.C. of error is} = \frac{100 \times 18}{15} = 1.2 \text{ sq cm}$$

Prop No 295

4 ABC is a rt  $\angle$ ed  $\Delta$  having a rt  $\angle$  at C.

The area =  $\frac{1}{2} \times 4.5'' \times 2.8'' = 6.30''$  sq in. The hypot AB =  $5.3''$ , and the perpendicular CD from C on AB =  $2.37''$ .

Now area =  $\frac{1}{2} \times 2.37'' \times 5.3'' = 6.28''$  sq in. The error is =  $6.3 - 6.28 = .02$  sq in. P.C. of error is =  $.31$  sq in.

$$5 \text{ In a } \Delta, \text{ altitude} = \frac{\text{area}}{\text{base}} \text{ or base} = \frac{\text{area}}{\text{altitude}}.$$

$$\therefore (i) \text{ altitude} = \frac{80 \text{ sq in}}{20''} = 4'' \text{ inches}$$

$$(ii) \text{ base} = \frac{104 \text{ sq cm}}{16 \text{ cm}} = 6.5 \text{ cm.}$$

Prop No. 296.

6 ABC is the required  $\Delta$ , in which  $BC = a = 3''$ ,  $AC = b = 2.8''$ , and  $AB = c = 2.6''$ . The perpendicular from A on BC =  $2.23''$ .

$$\therefore \text{the approximate area} = \frac{1}{2} \times 3'' \times 2.24'' \times 3.36'' = \text{sq. in.}$$

## PART II.

PAGE 109

## On area of a Triangle.

Prop No 297.

1. (i) XY is  $\parallel$  BC, and  $\Delta$ s XBC and YBC are on the same base BC, and between the same  $\parallel$ s XY and BC.

$\therefore$  the  $\Delta$  XBC = the  $\Delta$  YBC. [Theor 26]

(ii) The  $\triangle$ s BXY and CXY are on one base XY and between the same  $\parallel$ s XY and BC.

$\therefore$  the  $\triangle$  BXY = the  $\triangle$  CXY. [Theor. 26.]

(iii) The  $\triangle$  BXY is proved to be = the  $\triangle$  CXY. Add the  $\triangle$  AXY to both

$\therefore$  the whole  $\triangle$  ABY = the whole  $\triangle$  ACX.

(iv) Because the  $\triangle$  BXY = the  $\triangle$  CXY. From these equals take away the common  $\triangle$  XKY, then the remainder  $\triangle$  BKN = the remainder  $\triangle$  CKY.

Prop No 298.

2 ABC is a  $\triangle$  and D the middle point in BC Join AD. Then because BD = DC. The two  $\triangle$ s ABD and ACD are on equal bases BD and DC, and between the same  $\parallel$ s BC and that drawn through A  $\parallel$  BC.  $\therefore$  the  $\triangle$  ABD = the  $\triangle$  ACD [Note Theor. 26]

In order to divide the area of a  $\triangle$  into 3 equal parts, the base must be divided into three parts, and the points of section be joined with the vertex. Thus the  $\triangle$  will be divided into three  $\triangle$ s of equal areas

Prop. No. 299.

3 ABCD is a parallelogram, AC and BD are its diagonals intersecting each other at E, and they bisect each other at E. [Theor 21, Cor 3]

AE = EC and BE = ED.

Now the  $\triangle$  ABC = the  $\triangle$  DBC, for they are on one base BC and between the  $\parallel$ s AD and BC. From these take away the common part BEC

$\therefore$  the  $\triangle$  AEB = the  $\triangle$  DEC

In the same manner it can be shewn that the  $\triangle$  AED = the  $\triangle$  BEC

But the  $\triangle$  AEB = the  $\triangle$  AED, for they are on equal bases and between the same  $\parallel$ s.  $\therefore$  the  $\triangle$  AED = the  $\triangle$  AEB or DEC, and hence all the four  $\triangle$ s AEB, AED, DEC and BEC are equal.

Prop No. 300.

4 Because BX = XC The  $\triangle$  BXY = the  $\triangle$  CXY. [Theor. 26, Note] And for the same reason the  $\triangle$  ABX = the  $\triangle$  ACX.

[Theor. 26, Note.] Subtracting the former from the latter the remainders are equal,  $\therefore$  the  $\triangle ABY =$  the  $\triangle ACY$ .

Prop No 301.

5 The  $\triangle ABC =$  the  $\triangle ADC$  [Theor 21] as they are on the same base AC,  $\therefore$  their altitudes BP and DQ are equal [Conv. Corol, Theor 24] (1) and (2) since the  $\triangle s$  ADX and ABX on the same base AX, and similarly the  $\triangle s$  CDX and CBX on the base CX, and these  $\triangle s$  have equal altitudes BP and DQ,  $\therefore$  the  $\triangle ADX = \triangle ABX$ , and the  $\triangle CDX = \triangle CBX$  [Cor Theor. 24], whether the point X be taken in AX or AC produced

Prop No 302.

6 ABC is a  $\triangle$  D and E are the middle points in AB and AC Join DE DE shall be  $\parallel$  BC Join BE and CD As the median BE bisects the  $\triangle ABC$ , the  $\triangle ADC =$  the  $\triangle DBC$ , and the median DC bisects the same  $\triangle$ , the  $\triangle AEB =$  the  $\triangle ECB$ . Half of the same thing are equal  $\therefore$  the  $\triangle DBC =$  the  $\triangle ECB$ . But they are on the same base,  $\therefore$  DE is  $\parallel$  BC [Theor. 27.]

Prop. No 303.

u 7. ABCD is a trapezium of which the side AD is  $\parallel$  BC. E and F are the middle points in the oblique sides AB and DC Join EF. EF shall be  $\parallel$  AD and BC. From A draw AH  $\parallel$  DC, and cutting EF at G.

As proved in the exer. 11 it can be proved that EF is  $\parallel$  AD or BC.

Prop No 304.

8 In the parallelogram ABCD, AD = BC, and the point X bisects AD and Y bisects BC.  $\therefore$  AX = BY or CY.  $\therefore$  the parallelogram AY = the parallelogram DY.

the parallelogram AY is half of ABCD But the diagonal BX divides AY into two equal parts or bisects it. The  $\triangle XAB$  is = the  $\triangle ZAB$  or the  $\triangle Z'AB$ , since they are on the same base AB, and between the same parallels AB and XYZ'.

$\therefore$  the  $\triangle AZB$  or  $\triangle Z'B$  is also half of the parallelogram AY,  $\therefore$  e, one fourth of the whole figure ABCD.

Prop. No 305.

9. Since the  $\triangle BYC$ , and the parallelogram  $ABCD$  are on the same base  $BC$ , and between the same  $\parallel$ s  $AD$  and  $BC$ .

$\therefore$  the  $\triangle BYC$  is half of the parallelogram  $ABCD$ . [Theor. 25]

In the same manner the  $\triangle AXB$  is half of  $ABCD$ .

$\therefore$  the  $\triangle BYC =$  the  $\triangle AXB$

Prop No. 306.

10. Through  $P$  draw  $OPQ \parallel AB$  and  $DC$ . Then because the  $\triangle APB =$  half of the parallelogram  $BO$ , [Theor. 25] and the  $\triangle DPC =$  half of the parallelogram  $CO$  [Theor. 25] But the two figures  $BO$  and  $CO =$  the whole figure  $ABCD$ .

$\therefore$  the two  $\triangle$ s  $APB$  and  $DPC$  are together  $=$  half the whole parallelogram  $ABCD$ .

## PART II.

PAGE 110

### On area of Triangles.

Prop No 307.

1.  $ABC$  is a plan of a triangular field,  $AB = 1.9''$ ,  $AC = 2''$  and  $BC = 3.7''$

From  $A$  draw  $AD$  perpendicular on  $BC$ .  $AD = 0.68$ .  $\therefore$  the area of the plan  $ABC = \frac{1}{2} \times 68'' \times 3.7'' = 1.258''$  sq inches. The area of the field  $= \frac{1}{2} \times 370 \times 68 = 12580$  sq yds

Prop No 308.

2.  $ABC$  is the plan of a triangular enclosure in which  $AB = 6.2$  cm.,  $BC = 7.2$  cm. included  $\angle ABC = 45^\circ$ .  $AD$  the perpendicular from  $A$  upon  $BC = 4.4$  cm.

$\therefore$  the area of the plan  $= \frac{1}{2} \times 4.4 \times 7.2 = 15.84$  sq cm

And the area of the enclosure  $= \frac{1}{2} \times 144 \times 88 = 6336$  sq. metres.

Prop. No 309.

3. Area of the  $\triangle ABC = 6.6$  sq cm, and the base  $BC = 5.5$  cm.  $\therefore$  the altitude  $= \frac{6.6 \times 2}{5.5} = 2.4$  cm. The locus of the vertex  $A$  of the  $\triangle ABC$  is therefore the line drawn through the point  $A \parallel$  the base  $BC$ , or a line on either side of  $BC \parallel$  it and at a distance  $= 2.4$  cm.

Now in the  $\triangle ABC$ ,  $BC = 5.5$  cm,  $BA = 2.6$  cm., and the altitude  $AD = 2.4$  cm.

$\therefore AC = 5.2$  cm



Prop No 310

4. The area of the  $\triangle ABC = 3.06$  sq in, and  $BC = a = 3''$ .Then the altitude  $AD = \frac{3.06 \times 2}{3} = 2.04''$  The locus therefore of Ais a st line at a distance of 2.04 cm and  $\parallel BC$ Now in the  $\triangle ABC$ ,  $BC = 3''$ ,  $AD = 2.04''$  and the  $\angle C = 68^\circ$ By measurement  $AC$  or  $b = 2.22''$ 

Prop No 311 (i), (ii), (iii), (iv), (v), (vi), and (vii)

5 (i) When the  $\angle ABC = 0^\circ$ , AB and BC coincide, and consequently there is no  $\triangle$ , and hence area = 0(ii) AB makes with BC an  $\angle = 30^\circ$  The altitude AD from A on  $BC = 2.5$  cm $\therefore$  the area of  $\triangle ABC = \frac{1}{2} \times 2.5 \times 6 = 7.5$  sq cm.(iii) The  $\angle ABC = 60^\circ$ , and  $AD = 4.3$  cmthe area of  $\triangle ABC = \frac{1}{2} \times 4.3 \times 6 = 12.9$  sq cm(iv) The  $\angle ABC = 90^\circ$ , i.e., AB becomes altitude, the area  $= \frac{1}{2} \times 5 \times 6 = 15$  sq cm(v) The  $\angle ABC = 120^\circ$ , the altitude AD on BC produced = 4.3 cm  $\therefore$  the area of the  $\triangle ABC = \frac{1}{2} \times 4.3 \times 6 = 12.9$  sq cm.(vi) The  $\angle ABC = 150^\circ$ , and  $AD = 2.5$  cm $\therefore$  the area  $= \frac{1}{2} \times 2.5 \times 6 = 7.5$  cm(vii) Here the  $\angle ABC$  becomes  $180^\circ$  or = 2 rt  $\angle$ s  $\therefore$  AB and BC are in one st line, hence no  $\triangle$  and area = 0

Angle	$0^\circ$ & $180^\circ$	$30^\circ$ & $150^\circ$	$60^\circ$ & $120^\circ$	$90^\circ$
Base BC	6 cm	6 cm	6 cm	6 cm
Altitude AD	0	2.5 cm	4.3 cm	5 cm
Area of the $\triangle ABC$	0	7.5 sq cm	12.9 sq cm	15 sq cm.

## Theoretically.

Prop No 311.

6  $\triangle ABC$  and  $\triangle DEF$  are  $\triangle$ s having the two sides  $AB$  and  $AC$  of the one = the two sides  $DE$  and  $DF$  of the other, and the  $\angle BAC$  supplementary to the  $\angle EDF$ . Produce  $BA$  to  $G$ , and make  $AG = AB$ . Join  $GC$ . Then because  $AG$  and  $AC = DE$  and  $DF$  respectively, and  $\angle GAC =$  the  $\angle EDF$ , for each of the  $\angle$ s  $GAC$  and  $EDF$  is supplementary to the  $\angle BAC$ .  $\therefore$  the  $\triangle GAC =$  the  $\triangle EDF$  [Theor 4]. But the  $\triangle GAC =$  the  $\triangle BAC$ , because they are on equal bases and between the same parallels [Theor. 26.]  $\therefore$  the  $\triangle ABC =$  the  $\triangle DEF$ .

Such  $\triangle$ s can be identically equal if the  $\angle$ s contained by equal sides are rt  $\angle$ s, i.e., the  $\angle$ s  $BAC$  and  $EDF$  are rt  $\angle$ s.

Prop No 312.

7 Let  $ABC$  be a  $\triangle$ , it is required to draw an isosc  $\triangle$  on the base  $BC =$  the  $\triangle ABC$ .

Bisect  $BC$  at  $D$ . From  $D$  in  $BC$  draw  $DE$  at rt.  $\angle$ s to  $BC$ . Through  $A$  draw  $AEF \parallel BC$  meeting  $DE$  at  $E$ . Join  $EB$  and  $EC$ . Then  $EBC$  is the required isosc  $\triangle$ .

Since the  $\triangle$ s  $ABC$  and  $EBC$  are on the same base  $BC$ , and between the same  $\parallel$ s  $BC$  and  $AF$ ,  $\therefore$  the  $\triangle ABC =$  the  $\triangle EBC$ . [Theor 26.]

Prop No 313

8  $ABCD$  is a four-sided figure, and  $EFGH$  is a parallelogram formed by joining the middle points  $E, F, G$  and  $H$  in the four sides  $AB, BC, CD$ , and  $DA$ . Then the area of the parallelogram  $EFGH$  is half of the figure  $ABCD$ . Join  $AC$ , and from  $D$  draw  $DM$  altitude on  $AC$ . Then because in the  $\triangle ADC$  the st. line  $HG$  joins the middle points  $G$  and  $H$  in  $DC$  and  $DA$ .  $\therefore$   $GH$  is  $\parallel$  and half of the base  $AC$ , and it also bisects  $DM$  at  $O$ . The area of triangle  $ADC = \frac{1}{2} \times AC \times DM$ .

And the area of the parallelogram  $HKLK = KLXOM$  or  $= \frac{1}{2} AC \times \frac{1}{2} DM = \frac{1}{4} \times AC \times DM$ .  $\therefore$  the area of the parallelogram  $HKLK = \frac{1}{2}$  the area of the  $\triangle ADC$ .

In the same manner by drawing  $BN$  perpendicular to  $AC$ , it can be shewn that the area of the parallelogram  $EKLK = \frac{1}{2}$  the area of the  $\triangle ABC$ .

∴ the area of the parallelogram EFGH =  $\frac{1}{2}$  the area of the quadrilateral ABCD

Prop No 314.

9 RQ is  $\parallel$  BC ∴ the  $\triangle RBQ =$  the  $\triangle RCQ$  [Theor 26]  
From these equals take away RXQ, then the remainder  $\triangle RXB =$   
the remainder  $\triangle QXC$  Again the  $\triangle AQB =$  the  $\triangle CQB$ , for they  
are on equal bases AQ and CQ and having the same altitude. [Cor.  
Theor 26] Now from the  $\triangle AQB$  take away RXB, and from the  
 $\triangle CQB$  take away the  $\triangle QXC$ , then the remainder AQXR = the  
 $\triangle BXC$

Prop No 315.

10 ABC and DCB are two equal  $\triangle$ s on the base BC, but on opposite sides of BC, join AD. Then AD shall be bisected by BC, at G  
From A and D draw AE and or BC produced, DF perpendiculars  
to BC or BC produced Then because the  $\triangle$ s ABC and DCB are  
equal and on the same base BC, then altitudes AE and DF are  
also equal, for area of  $\triangle = \frac{1}{2} \times \text{base} \times \text{height}$ .

Now in the  $\triangle$ s AEG and DFG, the  $\angle AEG =$  the  $\angle DFG$ ,  
being rt  $\angle$ s, and the  $\angle AGE =$  the  $\angle DGF$ , [Theor 3,] and one  
side AE = the one side DG

∴ AG = DG [Theor 17]

## PART II.

PAGE 111

To be attempted after Theor 29.

Prop No 316

1.  $a = 20$  ft,  $b = 13$  ft.,  $c = 11$  ft.

$$p^2 = c^2 - x^2, p^2 = b^2 - (a - x)^2$$

$$c^2 - x^2 = b^2 - (a - x)^2$$

$$11^2 - x^2 = 13^2 - (20 - x)^2 = 169 - 400 + 40x$$

$$40x = 352 \quad x = \frac{352}{40}$$

$$\text{Now } c^2 - x^2 = p^2 \text{ or } p^2 = 121 - 78.3225 = 42.6775 \quad p = \sqrt{42.6775} = 6.54 \text{ ft}$$

$$\text{area} = \frac{1}{2} \times a \times p = \frac{1}{2} \times \frac{352}{10} \times 6.54 = 65.4 \text{ sq ft}$$

2.  $a = 14$ ,  $b = 15$ ,  $c = 13$  yds

$$13^2 - x^2 = 15^2 - (14 - x)^2$$

$$\therefore 28x = 169 - 29 - 140 \quad \therefore x = \frac{140}{28} = 5 \text{ yds.}$$

Now  $p^2 = 169 - 25 = 144 \quad \therefore p = \sqrt{144} = 12$  yds.

$$\text{area} = \frac{1}{2} \times 12 \times 14 = 84 \text{ sq yds.}$$

3.  $a = 21\text{m}, b = 20\text{m}, c = 13\text{m}$

$$c^2 - a^2 = b^2 - (a - r)^2$$

$$169 - a^2 = 400 - 441 + 12x - x^2$$

$$\therefore 12x = 210 \therefore x = 5\text{m}$$

$$\text{and } p = \sqrt{169} = 13\text{m} - \text{area} = \frac{1}{2} \times 21 \times 12 = 126 \text{ sq m.}$$

4  $a = 30\text{cm}, b = 25\text{cm}, c = 11\text{cm}$

$$c^2 = 625 - 900 + 60r$$

$$60x = 121 + 275 = 396 \quad \therefore x = \frac{396}{60} = 6.6\text{cm.}$$

$$\text{Now } p = \sqrt{121 - 43.56} = 8.8\text{cm}$$

$$\text{area} = \frac{1}{2} \times 30 \times 8.8 = 132 \text{ sq cm.}$$

5.  $a = 37 \text{ ft.}, b = 30 \text{ ft.}, c = 13 \text{ ft}$

$$c^2 - a^2 = b^2 - (a - r)^2$$

$$169 = 900 - 1369 + 74r \text{ or } 74x = 638.$$

$$\therefore x = \frac{638}{74} = 8.62 \text{ ft}$$

$$\text{Now } p = \sqrt{169 - 74.361} = 9.73 \text{ ft nearly}$$

$$\text{area} = \frac{1}{2} \times 37 \times 9.73 = 180.2 \text{ sq. ft. nearly.}$$

6.  $a = 51\text{m}, b = 37\text{m}, c = 20\text{m.}$

$$c^2 - a^2 = b^2 - (a - r)^2$$

$$400 = 1369 - 2601 + 102x, \quad 102x = 1632.$$

$$\text{Now } p = \sqrt{400 - 256} = 12\text{m}$$

$$\therefore \text{area} = \frac{1}{2} \times 12 \times 51 = 306 \text{ sq m.}$$

7. (i)  $c^2 - a^2 = b^2 - (a - r)^2$  or  $c^2 - a^2 = b^2 - a^2 + 2ax - x^2$ .

$$\therefore 2ax = c^2 + a^2 - b^2.$$

$$\therefore x = \frac{c^2 + a^2 - b^2}{2a}.$$

(ii)  $p^2 = c^2 - x^2$ , by substituting the value of  $x$  we get

$$p^2 = c^2 - \left( \frac{c^2 + a^2 - b^2}{2a} \right)^2$$

$$(iii) p^2 = c^2 - \left( \frac{c^2 + a^2 - b^2}{2a} \right)^2$$

Resolving into factors the right hand term becomes.

$$\left( c - \frac{c^2 + a^2 - b^2}{2a} \right) \left( c + \frac{c^2 + a^2 - b^2}{2a} \right)$$

$$= \frac{b^2 - c^2 - a^2 + 2ac}{2a} \times \frac{a^2 + c^2 - b^2 + 2ac}{2a}$$

$$= \frac{1}{4a^2} (b^2 - [a - c]^2) ([a + c]^2 - b^2)$$

$$= \frac{1}{4a^2} (b - a + c) (b + a - c) (a + c + b) (a + c - b)$$

$$p^2 = \frac{(b - a + c) (b + a - c) (a + c + b) (a + c - b)}{4a^2}$$

$$p = \sqrt{\frac{(b - a + c) (a + b - c) (a + b + c) (a + c - b)}{4a^2}}$$

$$\therefore \text{Area} = \frac{1}{2} \times p \times a$$

$$= \frac{a}{2} \times \frac{1}{2a} \times \sqrt{(b + c - a) (a + b - c) (a + b + c) (a + c - b)}$$

$$= \frac{1}{4} \sqrt{(a + b + c) (a + c - b) (a + b - c) (b + c - a)}$$

## PART II

### PAGE 113, THEOREM 28

1 Area of a trapezium =  $\frac{h}{2} (a + b)$

$a = 3 \text{ } 3''$ ,  $b = 4 \text{ } 7''$  and  $h = 1 \text{ } 5''$

area =  $\frac{1}{2} \times 1 \text{ } 5'' \times (3 \text{ } 3'' + 4 \text{ } 7'') = 6'' \text{ sq in.}$

2 Area of a quadrilateral =  $\frac{1}{2} \times \text{diagonal} \times \text{sum of offsets.}$

Diagonal AC = 17 ft and sum of offsets = 11 + 9 = 20 ft

area =  $\frac{1}{2} \times 17 \times 20 = 170 \text{ sq ft}$

3 Diagonal AC = 8.2 cm sum of offsets being 3.4 + 2.6 cm = 6 cm

area =  $\frac{1}{2} \times 8.2 \times 6 = 24.6 \text{ sq cm}$

When 1 cm represents 5 metres, then 1 sq cm represents 25 sq metres. the area =  $25 \times 24.6 = 615.0 \text{ sq metres}$

Prop No 317.

4. Diagonal BD = 4.2", sum of offsets AE and CF =  $2.4'' \times 1.6'' = 4''$

Area =  $\frac{1}{2} \times 4.2 \times 4 = 8.4'' \text{ sq in.}$

Prop No 318

5 The  $\angle$  DAB =  $90^\circ$  or a rt.  $\angle$ . Hence diagonal BD =  $\sqrt{7.7 \times 3.6} = 8.5 \text{ cm.}$

By measurement the  $\angle$  at C is also a rt  $\angle$ , or by calculation from the sides BC and CD find  $BD = \sqrt{68^2 + 51^2} = 85$ , hence also the  $\angle$  C is a rt  $\angle$ .

$\therefore$  the area of the whole figure is the sum of the area of two rt.  $\angle$ ed  $\Delta$ s

$$\Delta ABD = \frac{1}{2} \times 77 \times 36 = 1206 \text{ sq cm.}$$

$$\Delta BCD = \frac{1}{2} \times 68 \times 51 = 1734 \text{ ,,}$$

---


$$\text{Sum} = 2940$$

By drawing perpendiculars AE and CF on BD and measuring them they are found 32 cm and 41 cm respectively.

$$\text{The area of the whole figure} = \frac{1}{2} \times 85 \times 73 = 3102 \text{ sq cm.}$$

Prop No 319.

6 ABCD is the required trapezium in full size Measure CD which is = 2", and from C drop a perpendicular CE on AB, on measurement it is found to be 175". Now apply the formulæ for the area of a trapezium,  $\frac{1}{2} \times b \times (a + b)$

$$\text{Here } b = 175", a = 2", b = 4",$$

$$\text{The area} = \frac{1}{2} \times 175 \times 6 = 525 \text{ sq in.}$$

Prop No 320.

7 In the trapezium ABCD, let fall DE a perpendicular from D on AB which = 4 cm. by measure

$$\begin{aligned} \therefore \text{the area} &= \frac{1}{2} \times b \times (a + b) \\ &= \frac{1}{2} \times 4 \times 12 \\ &= 24 \text{ sq cm.} \end{aligned}$$

8 When the diagonals are at rt  $\angle$ s, one of the diagonals becomes offsets of the other,  $\therefore$  the area of a quadrilateral =  $\frac{1}{2} \times \text{diagonal}^2$ .

9 When the given diagonals intersect each other at a given  $\angle$  the sum of the offsets is constant, wherever they may cut each other and consequently the area of the figure is the same.

## PART II.

PAGE 115.

Prop. No. 321.

1. (i) Area of the  $\Delta ADE = \frac{1}{2} \times 3 \times 5 = 7.5 \text{ sq cm.}$
- " " "  $DAC = \frac{1}{2} \times 4 \times 6 = 12 \text{ sq cm.}$
- " " "  $ABC = \frac{1}{2} \times 2 \times 6 = 6 \text{ sq cm.}$

The area of the whole figure  $ABCDE = 25.5 \text{ sq cm.}$

Prop No 322

- (ii) The  $\triangle ABD$  is equilateral and its area  $= \frac{1}{2} \times 5.2 \times 6 = 15.6 \text{ sq cm}$ . In order to find the area of the figure  $ABCDE$ , it is necessary to add the area of the  $\triangle BDQ = \frac{1}{2} \times 1 \times 6 = 3 \text{ sq cm}$  to the area of the  $\triangle ABD$ , and subtract that of the  $\triangle ADE = \frac{1}{2} \times 1 \times 6 = 3 \text{ sq cm}$  because the chain line  $AD$  falls outside the figure.

$\therefore$  the area of the figure  $= 25.5 + 3 - 3 \text{ sq cm} = 25.5 \text{ sq cm}$

2. (i) The figure  $ABDE$  is a square,  $\therefore$  its area  $= 2.5'' \times 2.5'' = 6.25'' \text{ sq in}$  and the area of  $\triangle DBC = \frac{1}{2} \times 2.16 \times 2.5 = 2.7 \text{ sq in}$ .

$\therefore$  the area of the figure  $ABCDE = 8.95'' \text{ sq in}$

- (ii) Area of the  $\triangle AXD = \frac{1}{2} \times 2.5 \times 1.25 = 1.5625 \text{ sq in}$

" " "  $CYB = \frac{1}{2} \times 2 \times 1.75 = 1.75 \text{ sq in}$

" " " trap  $DXYC = \frac{1}{2} \times 2.75 \times 4.5 = 6.1875 \text{ sq in}$

$\therefore$  the area of the whole figure  $= 9.5 \text{ sq cm}$ .

Prop. No 323

- 3 In the accompanying figure  $ABCDEF$ ,

area of the triangle  $ABC = \frac{1}{2} \times 50 \times 180 = 4500 \text{ sq in.}$

" " "  $AXF = \frac{1}{2} \times 50 \times 60 = 1500$  "

" " "  $CZD = \frac{1}{2} \times 30 \times 80 = 1200$  "

" " " trap  $m FXYE = \frac{1}{2} \times 70 \times 100 = 3500$  "

" " "  $EYZD = \frac{1}{2} \times 30 \times 120 = 1800$  "

$\therefore$  the area of the whole figure  $= 12500$  "

## PART II

PAGE 116 —THEORETICALLY.

Prop No 324

1. (i)  $P, Q, R$ , and  $S$  are the middle points of  $AB, BC, CD$  and  $DA$  respectively. Join  $PQ, QR, RS$ , and  $PS$ . Then because  $AP = PB = CR = DR$ , and  $AS = SD = BQ = QC$ , and the  $\angle$ s at  $A, B, C$ , and  $D$  are rt.  $\angle$ s, the four  $\triangle$ s  $ASP, DSR, PQB$ , and  $RQC$  are equal to one another in all respects. [Theor. 4.]

$\therefore$  the sides PS, PQ, QR and RS are equal to one another,  $\therefore$  the figure PQRS is a rhombus.

(ii) Join PR and QS. Then PR is parallel and equal to AD and BC, and SQ is  $\parallel$  and  $=$  AB and DC.

But the area of a rectangle  $=$  ht  $\times$  base.

$\therefore$  the area of the rectangle ABCD  $=$  SQ  $\times$  PR.

But SQ and PR are the diagonals of the rhombus PQRS,  $\therefore$  the area of the rhombus  $= \frac{1}{2} \times PR \times QS$ .

$\therefore$  the area of the rhombus PQRS is half of the rectangle.

Yes. It is true for all quadrilaterals whose diagonals bisect at rt. angles

In the accompanying rhombus the diagonals PR and QS intersect each other at rt. angles

The area of the  $\triangle$  PSR  $= \frac{1}{2} \times SO \times PR$ .

" " " PQR  $= \frac{1}{2} \times OQ \times PR$ .

Adding these the area of the rhombus  $= \frac{1}{2} (SO + OQ) PR$   
 $= \frac{1}{2} \times SQ \times PR$

Prop No. 325.

2. ABCD is a parallelogram and BD is its diagonal and E the middle point in BD. Through E draw any line FG meeting AD at F, and BC at G.

Now the  $\triangle$  ADB  $=$  the  $\triangle$  CBD, and the  $\triangle$  FED  $=$  the  $\triangle$  GEB [Theor 17]  $\therefore$  the remainder ABEF  $=$  CDEG. Add the  $\triangle$  GEB to the former and the  $\triangle$  FED to the latter.  $\therefore$  the figure ABGF  $=$  the figure CDEG, i.e., the parallelogram ABCD is divided into two equal parts.

Therefore any st line drawn through the middle point in a diagonal bisects the parallelogram.

Hence. (i) Join the given point P with the middle point E produce EP both ways to meet AD and BC at X and Y respectively,  $\therefore$  the line XEY bisects the parallelogram.

(ii) From the point E draw EL perpendicular to AB and produce LE to meet CD at M,  $\therefore$  the st line LEM bisects the figure.

(iii) QR is a given st line. Through the point E draw Q'ER'  $\parallel$  QR meeting AD and BC at Q' and R' respectively.

$\therefore$  the st line Q'ER' bisects the parallelogram.



## Prop No 326.

3. (i) By the help of Theor 17 it can be proved that the  $\triangle PXB =$  the  $\triangle QXC$ . Therefore by adding the  $\triangle QXC$  to the trapezium and taking away the  $\triangle PXB$  from it, the trapezium ABCD becomes the parallelogram APQD.

Hence trapezium ABCD = parm APQD

- (ii) The area of the  $\triangle AXD = \frac{1}{2}$  the area of the parm, APQD [Theor 25]

the  $\triangle AXD = \frac{1}{2}$  of the trapezium ABCD or the trapezium = twice the  $\triangle AXD$ .

## Prop No 327

- 4 ABCD is a quadrilateral of which the diagonals AC and BD cut each other at rt  $\angle$ s,  $AC = 25''$  and  $BD = 3''$

the area of  $ABCD = \frac{1}{2} \times 25 \times 3 = 37.5$  sq in. Now in the accompanying two figures of a quadrilateral in (i) the diagonals bisect each other at rt  $\angle$ s, and in (ii) they cut each other at rt  $\angle$ s, but do not bisect each other, but the area remains the same. Suppose they cut each other at O.

Then the area of  $\triangle ABD = \frac{1}{2} \times AO \times BD$ .

and " "  $BCD = \frac{1}{2} \times CO \times BD$

sum of these  $= \frac{1}{2} \times BD (AO + CO)$   
 $= \frac{1}{2} \times BD \times AC$

Hence the rule that when the diagonals of a quadrilateral cut at rt  $\angle$ s, the area = half of the product of the two diagonals, whether the diagonals bisect each other or not.

## Prop No 328

5 Draw  $AB = 8$  cm. From A draw  $AE$  at rt  $\angle$ s to  $AB$ , making  $AE = 3$  cm. Through the point E draw the st line  $DEC \parallel AB$ . From the centre A with a radius = 3.2 cm draw an arc cutting  $DC$  at D. Join  $AD$ . Then from the point B, draw  $BC \parallel AD$ , ABCD is the required parallelogram, area of the parallelogram  $ABCD = 8 \times 3 = 24$  sq cm.

the perpendicular  $CF$  on  $AD$  from  $C = \frac{24}{8} = 3$  cm. By measurement also  $CF = 3$  cm.

## Prop No 329

6 Draw a st line  $AB = 2.5''$ , from the centre A with a radius  $= 1.7''$  half of one diagonal draw an arc, and from the centre B with a radius  $= 1.2''$  half the other diagonal draw another arc cutting the former at E. Produce AE to C making  $EC = AE$ , and also produce BE to D making  $ED = BE$ . Join DC, AD and BC. Then ABCD is the required parallelogram.

In order to determine the area of the parallelogram, the perpendicular distance on either of the adjacent sides AB or AD should be known. Draw DF perpendicular to AB and measure it out. In this case  $DF = 1.44''$ .

$\therefore$  area of ABCD  $= 1.44 \times 2.5'' = 3.6$  sq in.

7 ABCD is a parallelogram on the fixed base AB, and EABF another parallelogram on AB of equal area with ABCD, i. e., on the same base AB and between the same parallels BC and DF.

Join AC and BD the two diagonals cutting each other at K. Also join EB and AF diagonals cutting each other at M. Join KM as the diagonals of a parallelogram bisect each other  $AK = KC$ ,  $DK = KB$  and  $EM = MB$  and  $AM = MF$ . Now in the  $\triangle DBE$ , the sides DB is bisected at K and EB is bisected at M.

$\therefore$  the st. line KM joining them is  $\frac{1}{2}$  the base DE or DF.

$\therefore$  the locus of the intersection the parallelogram's diagonals is the st. line " to the fixed base AB, drawn from the point of the intersection of the diagonals

## PART II

PAGE 117.

## Prop. No 330.

1. By measurement AB is found to be 5 cm.

$\therefore$  the area of the square on AB  $= 5^2 = 25$  sq cm.

## Prop No. 331.

2. Draw a line  $BC = 2.4''$ . At C draw CA at rt  $\angle$  to BC, making  $AC = 1''$ . Join AB. Then  $\triangle ABC$  is the required  $\triangle$ . The hypotenuse  $AB = \sqrt{1^2 + 2.4^2} = 2.6''$  and the area  $= \frac{1}{2} \times 1'' \times 2.4'' = 1.2''$

sq. in. By measurement  $AB = 2\ 6''$ , and  $\therefore$  the area of the square on  $AB = 2\ 6^2 = 6\ 76''$  sq. in.

Prop. No 332.

3.  $a = 15$ ,  $b = 8$ , and  $c = 17$

Now  $c^2 = 17 \times 17 = 289$ .

$$a^2 = 15 \times 15 = 225$$

$$b^2 = 8 \times 8 = 64$$

$$\therefore a^2 + b^2 = 289. \text{ But } c^2 = 289$$

$$\therefore a^2 + b^2 = c^2 = 289.$$

## PART II.

PAGE 121.

Prop. No 333.

1. (i)  $a = 3$  cm,  $b = 4$  cm

$$\text{But } c^2 = a^2 + b^2 = 3^2 + 4^2 = 25.$$

$$\therefore c = \sqrt{25} = 5 \text{ cm}$$

By measurement also,  $c$  is found 5 cm.

Prop No 334.

(ii)  $a = 2\ 5$  cm, and  $b = 6$  cm

$$\text{But } c^2 = a^2 + b^2$$

$$= 2\ 5 \times 2\ 5 + 6 \times 6,$$

$$= 42\ 25.$$

$$\therefore c = \sqrt{42\ 25} = 6\ 5 \text{ cm,}$$

On measuring  $AB$  is found just 6.5 cm.

Prop. No. 335

(iii)  $a = 1\ 2''$ ,  $b = 3\ 5''$

$$c^2 = a^2 + b^2 = 1\ 2^2 + 3\ 5^2$$

$$= 7\ 44 + 12\ 25,$$

$$= 13\ 69$$

$$\therefore c = \sqrt{13\ 69} = 3\ 7''.$$

On measurement  $AB$  is found  $= 3\ 7''$

Prop No. 336.

2. (i) Draw  $AB = C = 3\ 4''$

Upon  $AB$  describe a semi circle  $ACB$  From the centre  $B$  with a radius  $= 3''$  draw an arc cutting the semicircle at  $C$  join  $AC$  and  $BC$ .

Then ABC is the required  $\Delta$

AB or  $c = 3\frac{1}{2}$ , and BC or  $a = 3$

But  $c^2 = a^2 + b^2$

or  $c^2 - a^2 = b^2$

$\therefore 3\frac{1}{2}^2 - 3^2 = 2\frac{1}{4} = b^2$

$\therefore b = \sqrt{2\frac{1}{4}} = 1\frac{1}{2}$

This result is also verified by measurement of AC.

Prop. No 337.

(ii) Construct the  $\Delta$  ABC by the method explained above

$c = 5\frac{1}{2}$  cm,  $b = 4\frac{1}{2}$  cm.

Now  $c^2 = a^2 + b^2$  or  $c^2 - b^2 = a^2$

$\therefore (c - b)(c + b) = a^2$

Hence  $(5\frac{1}{2} - 4\frac{1}{2})(5\frac{1}{2} + 4\frac{1}{2}) = a^2$

or  $a^2 = 8 \times 9\frac{1}{2} = 78\frac{1}{2}$

$\therefore a = \sqrt{78\frac{1}{2}} = 8\frac{1}{2}$  cm

On measuring BC it is found  $= 8\frac{1}{2}$  cm.

Prop No 338.

3 AB is a ladder whose one end A reaches the window-sill 40 ft high from the ground BC. B the foot of the ladder is 9 ft from the wall AC

$\therefore$  the ladder AB  $= \sqrt{AC^2 + BC^2} = \sqrt{40^2 + 9^2} = \sqrt{1681}$ .

$\therefore AB = 41$  ft.

Prop. No 339.

4 A ship started from A southward and sailed 33 miles then reaching C she turned her course due west and sailed 56 miles.

Her distance at B from A  $= \sqrt{33^2 + 56^2} = \sqrt{1225} = 35$  miles.

Prop No 340.

5 A is the signal station from which two ships B and C are observed to bear respectively N. E. at a distance of 6 km, and N. W. at a distance of 1.1 km. now it is required to find out BC the distance between them.

The  $\angle$  of bearing at A between both the ships is  $90^\circ$ .

Then  $AC^2 + AB^2 = BC^2$  or  $1.1^2 + 6^2 = BC^2$ .

$\therefore BC = \sqrt{37\frac{1}{4}} = 6\frac{1}{2}$  km.

## Prop No 341

6 AB a ladder 65 ft. long one end of which rests against a wall AC 63 ft high The distance BC of the other foot B of the ladder from the wall is to be known

Now in the rt  $\angle$ ed  $\triangle$  ACB, AC=63 st and AB the hypotenuse=65 ft.

$$BC = \sqrt{65^2 - 63^2} = \sqrt{2 \times 128} = 16 \text{ ft.}$$

## Prop No. 342.

7  $a = 55$  metres,  $b = 73$  metres

$$b^2 = a^2 + c^2, \text{ or } b^2 - a^2 = c^2$$

$$\text{Then } c^2 = (b - a)(b + a)$$

$$= 18 \times 128 = 2304.$$

$$c = \sqrt{2304} = 48 \text{ metres}$$

## Prop No. 343

8 A man travels from A 27 miles due South to B, and then 24 miles due West to C, finally 20 miles due North to D Join AD, and from D draw DE  $\parallel$  BC.

Now CD=BE=20 miles

$$AE = 27 - 20 = 7 \text{ and } DE = BC = 24 \text{ miles}$$

Then in the rt angled  $\triangle$  ADE, AE=7 miles, and DE=24 miles.

$$AD = \sqrt{7^2 + 24^2} = \sqrt{625} = 25 \text{ miles.}$$

## Prop No 344

9 From A draw AF  $\parallel$  BC meeting CD at F, and from E draw EG  $\parallel$  CD meeting AF at G

Now CB=AF=60 metres, and GE=DF=80-25=55 metres, and AG=60-12=48 metres, for DE=FG

In the  $\triangle$  AGE, the  $\angle$  G is a rt  $\angle$ , and GE and AG are known.

$$\therefore AE = \sqrt{55^2 + 48^2} = \sqrt{5329} = 73 \text{ metres.}$$

## Prop No 345.

10. AC a ladder 50 ft long reaches the wall AB at A, a point 48 ft. from the ground BD, and by turning the ladder on its other end C over to the other side of the street it reaches a point E, 14 ft. high in the opposite wall DE.

There the two rt angled  $\triangle$ s ABC and EDC, the  $\angle$ s at D and Bare rt  $\angle$ s, and the ladder forms the hypotenuse in both the  $\triangle$ s, and the walls as one side, then of the other sides or the two parts

DC and BC of the street BD  $DC = \sqrt{EC^2 - DE^2} = \sqrt{50^2 - 14^2}$  and  
 $BC = \sqrt{AC^2 - AB^2} = \sqrt{50^2 - 48^2}$

$$\begin{aligned}\therefore BD &= \sqrt{EC^2 - DE^2} + \sqrt{AC^2 - AB^2} \\ &= \sqrt{50^2 - 14^2} + \sqrt{50^2 - 48^2} = 48 + 14 = 62 \text{ ft.}\end{aligned}$$

---

## PART II

PAGE 123, THEOR 29, 30

Prop. No 346

1 ABCD is a square, and AC a diagonal. Then  $AC^2 = AB^2 + BC^2$  But  $AB = BC$ , and  $AB^2 = BC^2$   $AC^2 = 2 AB^2$  and the figure  $ABCD = AB^2$ .

$\therefore AC^2 =$  twice the figure ABCD, i. e., the square on the diagonal is equal to double of the given square.

Prop No 347.

2.  $AB = c$ ,  $BC = a$ ,  $AC = b$ , and  $AD = p$

$$p^2 = AB^2 - BD^2 = c^2 - BD^2$$

$$p^2 = AC^2 - DC^2 = b^2 - DC^2$$

$$c^2 - BD^2 = b^2 - DC^2$$

$$\text{or } c^2 - b^2 = BD^2 - DC^2.$$

Prop No 348.

3 Join OA, OB and OC

Then because  $OA^2 = AZ^2 + OZ^2 = AY^2 + OY^2$  and

$$OB^2 = BX^2 + OX^2 = BZ^2 + OZ^2$$

$$OC^2 = CY^2 + OY^2 = CX^2 + OX^2$$

by adding these together

$$\begin{aligned}OA^2 + OB^2 + OC^2 &= AZ^2 + OZ^2 + BX^2 + OX^2 + CY^2 + OY^2 \\ &= AY^2 + OY^2 + BZ^2 + OZ^2 + CX^2 + OX^2\end{aligned}$$

$$\therefore AZ^2 + BX^2 + CY^2 + OZ^2 + OX^2 + OY^2 = AY^2 + BZ^2 + CX^2 + OY^2 + OZ^2 + OX^2$$

Now taking away common  $OX^2 + OY^2 + OZ^2$  from these equals there remains  $AZ^2 + BX^2 + CY^2 = AY^2 + BZ^2 + CX^2$ .

---

## PART II

PAGE 123, THEOR. 29, 30.

Prop No. 349.

4. The  $\angle A$  is a rt  $\angle$

$$\therefore BC^2 = AB^2 + AC^2$$

$$BC^2 + PQ^2 = AB^2 + AC^2 + AP^2 + AQ^2 \text{ and } PQ^2 = AP^2 + AQ^2$$

But  $PC^2 = AC^2 + AP^2$ , and  $BQ^2 = AB^2 + AQ^2$

$$\therefore BC^2 + PQ^2 = PC^2 + BQ^2.$$

Prop No 350.

5  $\triangle ABC$  is a rt  $\angle$ ed  $\triangle$ , the  $\angle A$  being the rt  $\angle$ ,  $BD$  and  $CE$  are the two medians from the acute  $\angle$ s  $B$  and  $C$

Now  $BD^2 = AB^2 + AD^2$ ,  $4BD^2 = 4AB^2 + 4AD^2$  and  $EC^2 = AC^2 + AE^2$ ,  $4EC^2 = 4AC^2 + 4AE^2$  By adding

$$4 BD^2 + 4 CE^2 = 4 AB^2 + 4 AC^2 + 4 AD^2 + 4 AE^2.$$

But  $BE = AE$ , and  $AD = DC$ .

$\therefore BE^2 = AE^2$ , and  $AD^2 = DC^2$

$$4AE^2 = AB^2, \text{ and } 4AD^2 = AC^2$$

$\therefore$  by substituting  $AB^2$  and  $AC^2$  for  $4AE^2$  and  $4AD^2$

$$4BD^2 + 4CE^2 = 4AB^2 + 4AC^2 + AB^2 + AC^2 = 5AB^2 + 5AC^2$$

But  $AB^2 + AC^2 = BC^2$

$$\therefore 4BD^2 + 4CE^2 = 5BC^2$$

Prop No 331

6. ABCD and EFGH are the two given squares. Draw a st. line  $OP = EF$  one side of the square EFGH. From O draw  $OQ$  at rt  $\angle$ s to  $OP$ , and make  $OQ = AB$  one side of the square ABCD. Join  $QP$ . Upon  $QP$  describe a square  $QPYX$ . Now  $QP^2 = OQ^2 + OP^2$ .  $QPYX$  is the square on  $QP$ .  $QPYX = ABCD + EFGH$ .

Prop No 352

7 Let ABCD and EFGH be the two squares as in the last preceding exercise. In the square EFGH describe a semi-circle FOG on one side FG. With F as centre and radius = AB one side of the smaller square draw an arc cutting the semi-circle at D. Join FO and GO. On OG describe a square OQ. Then  $OQ = FG^2 - FO^2$

Because the  $\triangle FOG$  is a rt  $\triangle$   $FG^2 = FO^2 + OG^2$ .

But  $FO^2 =$  the square  $ABCD$ , and  $FG^2 =$  the square  $EFGH$ .

$\therefore$  the square  $OQ$  = square  $EG$  - sq  $AC$ .

Prop No. 353.

8. AB is the given st. line At A make an  $\angle BAC =$  quarter of a rt  $\angle$ . From B draw BC at rt.  $\angle$ s to AB meeting AC at C At the point C in AC make an  $\angle ACD =$  the  $\angle A$ , the side CD meeting AB at D. The st. line AB is divided at B, such that  $AD^2 = 2BD^2$ .

Because the  $\angle BAC =$  the  $\angle ACD$ ,  $AD = CD$ , and the extr.  $\angle CDB =$  two inter  $\angle$ s  $DAC$  and  $ACD$ . But each of the  $\angle$ s  $DAC$  and  $ACD$  is  $\frac{1}{2}$  of a rt.  $\angle$ ,  $\therefore$  the extr.  $\angle CDB = \frac{1}{2}$  a rt.  $\angle$

$\therefore BC = BD$ .

Now  $AD = CD$ ,  $\therefore AD^2 = CD^2$ . But  $CD^2 = BC^2 + BD^2$ .

$\therefore AD^2 = CD^2 = BC^2 + BD^2 = 2BD^2$

$\therefore AB$  is divided at  $D$  so that  $AD^2 = 2BD^2$ .

Prop No. 354.

Prop. No. 355

9.  $AB$  is the given st. line, and  $CE$  the given square. It is required to divide  $AB$  into such two parts that the squares on those two parts is equal to the given square

From the centre  $A$  with a radius = the side of the given square, describe an arc  $XO$ . At  $B$  in  $AB$  make an  $\angle ABO = \frac{1}{2}$  the rt.  $\angle$ . The arm  $BO$  meeting the arc  $OX$  if possible at  $O$  and  $X$ . Join  $AO$ , and from  $O$  draw perpendiculars  $OP$  on  $AB$ .  $AB$  is divided at  $P$  so that  $AP^2 + BP^2 =$  square  $CE$

Then because  $\angle$ s at  $P$  are rt.  $\angle$ s, and the  $\angle B$  is half a rt.  $\angle$ .  $\therefore$  the  $\angle BOP = \frac{1}{2}$  a rt.  $\angle$  and  $BP = OP$ . But  $AO^2 = AP^2 + OP^2$  for  $OPA$  is a rt.  $\angle$ ed  $\triangle$ , and  $AO^2 =$  figure  $CE$  and  $OP^2 = BP^2$ .

$\therefore$  the square  $CE = AP^2 + BP^2$ .

If from  $X$  the other point where  $BX$  cuts the arc, perpendicular  $XY$  be drawn on  $AB$  then as shown above the square  $CE = AY^2 + BY^2$

In case any of the perpendiculars  $OP$  or  $XY$  falls on  $AB$  produced then  $AB$  can be said to be externally so divided.

There is another case where  $BO$  does not reach the arc, and then  $AB$  cannot be divided

Prop No 356

10. (i)  $a^2 + b^2 = c^2$   $14^2 + 48^2 = 50^2$   $196 + 2304 = 2500$ .

$\therefore$  This case forms a rt.  $\angle$ ed  $\triangle$ .

(ii)  $40^2 + 10^2 = 41^2$   $1600 + 100 = 1681$ .

This case does not form a rt.  $\angle$ ed  $\triangle$ .

(iii)  $20^2 + 99^2 = 101^2$   $400 + 9801 = 10201$

$\therefore$  This is also a case of rt.  $\angle$ ed  $\triangle$

Prop No ~~354~~ 356

11. In the  $\triangle ABC$ , the side  $AC =$  the side  $CB$  and  $\angle C$  is a rt.  $\angle$ .



$$\therefore AB^2 = AC^2 + BC^2 \text{ or } = 2AC^2.$$

ADEB is the square on AB, and ACFG is the square on AC. Join AE, BD, and CG. The whole figure BD is divided into four equal parts by the diagonals AE and BD. The  $\triangle ABC =$  the  $\triangle CGA$ , and the  $\triangle ABC =$  the  $\triangle ABO$ . the  $\triangle CGA =$  the  $\triangle ABO$ .

But the square CG = twice the  $\triangle CGA$  and the square BD = four times the  $\triangle ABO$ .

the square BD = twice the square CG. When  $AC = BC = 2''$ ,  $AB = \sqrt{4+4} = 2.83''$ , and by measurement AB is found nearly  $2.83''$ .

Prop No 357.

12 AC = 6 cm is the diagonal, it is required to describe the square of which it is a diagonal. Bisect AC at O, from O draw OD at rt  $\angle$ s to AC, and produce DO to B, making OD and OB = AO or OC. Join AB, BC, CD, and AD. Then ABCD is the required square.

As the  $\angle AOB$  is a rt  $\angle$ ,  $\therefore AB = \sqrt{AO^2 + OB^2} = \sqrt{2AO^2} = \sqrt{18} = 2.24 \text{ cm}$

On measurement 2.3 cm nearly

Area of the figure ABCD =  $2 \times \frac{1}{2} \times 3 \times 6 = 18 \text{ sq cm}$

13 In the Problem it is shown that if  $OP = OA = 1$ , then  $PA^2 = OP^2 + OA^2 = 1 + 1 = 2$ .  $\therefore PA = \sqrt{2}$ , i.e., the diagonal PA of a square whose side  $OP = OA = 1$ , is  $\sqrt{2}$ . Then it is clear that if the given side of a square be multiplied by  $\sqrt{2}$  it becomes equal to the diagonal of the square.

the diagonal of a square whose side is 50 metres =  $50 \times \sqrt{2}$  metres = 70.7 metres

Prop No. 358

14 ABC is an equilateral  $\triangle$ , each side of which = 2 m. AD is a perpendicular from the vertex A on the base BC.  $BD = DC = m$ .  $AD = p$ . Now  $p^2 = (2m)^2 - m^2$  or  $4m^2 - m^2 = 3m^2$

$$p = \sqrt{3m^2} = \sqrt{3} \times m$$

Suppose each side = 8 cm then  $p = \frac{8 \times \sqrt{3}}{2} = 6.928 \text{ cm}$

By drawing another equilateral  $\triangle ABC$  having each side equal to 8 cm. and then measuring AD the altitude, it is found nearly 6.9 cm.

## Prop No 359.

15.  $a = m^2 - n^2$ ,  $b = 2mn$ , and  $c = m^2 + n^2$  Now  $(m^2 - n^2)^2 = m^4 - 2m^2n^2 + n^4$ .

$\therefore a^2 = m^4 - 2m^2n^2 + n^4$ , and  $b^2 = 4m^2n^2$  adding these two  
 $a^2 + b^2 = m^4 - 2m^2n^2 + n^4 + 4m^2n^2 = m^4 + 2m^2n^2 + n^4 = (m^2 + n^2)^2$

But  $c^2 = (m^2 + n^2)^2 \therefore a^2 + b^2 = c^2$ .

If $m =$	2	3	4	3	4	4	&c
and $n =$	1	1	1	2	2	3	&c
Then $a =$	3	8	15	5	12	7	&c
$b =$	4	6	8	12	16	24	&c
$c =$	5	10	17	13	20	25	&c

## Prop. No 360

16 (i)  $a = 25$  cm.  $p = 12$  cm  $BD = 9$  cm

$$c = \sqrt{p^2 + BD^2} = \sqrt{12 \times 12 + 9 \times 9} = \sqrt{225} = 15 \text{ cm.}$$

$$\text{Similarly } b = \sqrt{12^2 + 16^2} = \sqrt{400} = 20 \text{ cm}$$

$$\therefore b = 20, \text{ and } c = 15.$$

(ii)  $b = 41''$   $c = 50''$ ,  $BD = 30''$

$$p = \sqrt{50^2 - 30^2} = \sqrt{1600} = 40''$$

$$\text{and } a = BD + DC = 30'' + \sqrt{6^2 - p^2} = 30'' + \sqrt{41^2 - 40^2} \\ = 30'' + 9'' = 39''$$

$$BD = \sqrt{c^2 - p^2}, \text{ and } DC = \sqrt{b^2 - p^2}$$

$$\text{add } BD + DC = \sqrt{c^2 - p^2} + \sqrt{b^2 - p^2}$$

$$\text{But } BD + DC = a$$

$$\therefore a = \sqrt{c^2 - p^2} + \sqrt{b^2 - p^2}$$

## Prop No. 361

17 In the  $\triangle ABC$ ,  $AD$  is the altitude.

$$p^2 = c^2 - BD^2, \text{ and again } p^2 = b^2 - DC^2$$

$$\therefore c^2 - BD^2 = b^2 - DC^2$$

$$\text{If } a = 51 \text{ cm, } b = 20 \text{ cm, } c = 37 \text{ cm.}$$

$$\text{Now } c^2 - BD^2 = b^2 - DC^2 \therefore c^2 - b^2 = BD^2 - DC^2 \text{ or } c^2 - b^2 =$$

$$(BD + DC)(BD - DC) = a(BD - DC)$$

Now substituting the values.

$$BD - CD = \frac{c^2 - b^2}{a} = \frac{37^2 - 20^2}{51} = \frac{1369 - 400}{51} = \frac{969}{51} = 19 \text{ cm.}$$

$$\text{Again } BD + CD = 51$$

$$\frac{BD - CD = 19}{2 \text{ } BD = 70}$$

$$\therefore BD = 35 \text{ cm and } CD = 51 - 35 = 16 \text{ cm}$$

$$\text{Now again } p = \sqrt{c^2 - BD^2} = \sqrt{(37 - 35)(37 + 35)} = \sqrt{2 \times 72} = 12 \text{ cm}$$

$$\therefore \text{ area of the } \triangle ABC = \frac{1}{2} \times a \times p \\ = \frac{1}{2} \times 51 \times 12 = 306 \text{ sq. cm.}$$

Prop. No. 362

$$18. \text{ (i) } b^2 - c^2 = (DC + BD)(DC - BD)$$

$$DC - BD = \frac{10^2 - 9^2}{17} = \frac{19}{17}$$

$$\text{But } DC + BD = 17''$$

$$\text{add } 2 \text{ } DC = \frac{19}{17} + 17 = \frac{308}{17}$$

$$\therefore DC = \frac{308}{34}$$

$$\text{And } BD = 17 - \frac{308}{34} = \frac{270}{34}$$

$$\text{Now } p = \sqrt{9^2 - \left(\frac{270}{34}\right)^2} = \frac{72}{17} \text{ cm.}$$

$$\therefore \text{ the area of } \triangle ABC = \frac{1}{2} \times \frac{72}{17} \times 17 = 36'' \text{ sq in.}$$

Prop. No. 363.

$$\text{(ii) } b^2 - c^2 = (DC + BD)(DC - BD)$$

$$\therefore DC - BD = \frac{17^2 - 12^2}{25} = \frac{289 - 144}{25} = \frac{145}{25} = \frac{29}{5}$$

$$\text{But } DC + BD = 25$$

$$\text{Add } 2 \text{ } DC = 25 + \frac{29}{5} = \frac{154}{5} \text{ ft.}$$

$$\therefore DC = \frac{154}{10} \text{ ft}$$

$$\text{Now } p = \sqrt{17^2 - \left(\frac{14}{10}\right)^2} = \frac{\sqrt{921 + 16}}{10} = \frac{72}{10} \text{ ft.}$$

$$\therefore \text{ the area of the } \triangle ABC = \frac{1}{2} \times \frac{72}{10} \times 25 = 90 \text{ sq ft.}$$

Prop No. 364.

$$(iii) (DC + BD)(DC - BD) = b^2 - c^2.$$

$$\therefore DC - BD = \frac{28^2 - 15^2}{41} = \frac{559}{41}$$

$$\therefore \frac{DC + BD = 41}{2DC = 41} - \frac{559}{41} = \frac{422}{41}$$

$$\therefore DC = \frac{1122}{81}$$

$$\text{Now } p = \sqrt{28^2 - \left(\frac{1122}{81}\right)^2} = \frac{252}{41} \text{ cm.}$$

$$\therefore \text{Area of } \triangle ABC = \frac{1}{2} \times \frac{252}{41} \times 41 = 126 \text{ sq cm.}$$

Prop No 365

$$(iv) (DC + BD)(DC - BD) = b^2 - c^2$$

$$DC - BD = \frac{37^2 - 13^2}{40} = \frac{50 \times 24}{40} = 30 \text{ yds}$$

$$\text{Sum } \frac{DC + BD = 40 \text{ yds}}{2DC = 70 \text{ yds}} \therefore DC = 35 \text{ yds}$$

$$\text{Now } p = \sqrt{37^2 - 35^2} = \sqrt{72 \times 2} = 12 \text{ yds}$$

$$\therefore \text{the area of the } \triangle ABC = \frac{1}{2} \times 12 \times 40 = 240 \text{ sq yds}$$

Prop No 366.

19. The angle POQ is a rt angle.  $\therefore PQ^2 = OP^2 + OQ^2 = 56^2 + 33^2$   $\therefore PQ = \sqrt{56^2 + 33^2} = 65 \text{ cm}$  Now PQ slides and takes the position as P'Q' where OQ' = 4 cm.

$$\therefore OQ' = \sqrt{65^2 - 4^2} = \sqrt{2625} = 51 \text{ cm.}$$

Prop No 367.

$$20. \text{Area of the } \triangle = \frac{1}{2} \times a \times b$$

$$\text{and also } \triangle = \frac{1}{2} \times p \times c$$

$$\therefore \frac{1}{2} ab = \frac{1}{2} pc$$

$$\therefore ab = pc$$

$$\text{Now } pc = ab \text{ or } \frac{1}{p} = \frac{c}{ab}$$

$$\therefore \frac{1}{p^2} = \frac{c^2}{a^2 b^2} \text{ But } c^2 = a^2 + b^2$$

$$\therefore \frac{1}{p^2} = \frac{a^2 + b^2}{a^2 b^2} \text{ or } \frac{1}{a^2} + \frac{1}{b^2}$$

## PART II

PAGE 127, PROP. 17.

Prop No 368

1 ABCD is a square described on  $BC = 5$  cm. Join BD. Then BD is a diagonal of the square, and the  $\angle CBD = 45^\circ$ . From C draw  $CE \parallel BD$  meeting AD produced at E. DBCE is the parallelogram on the same base BC having the same altitude DC as the square.

the square ABCD = the parallelogram DBCE. The diagonal BD which is also the oblique side of the parallelogram DBCE =  $\sqrt{2 \times 5^2} = 5 \times \sqrt{2} = 7.1$  cm. By measurement also  $BD = 7.1$  cm nearly.

Prop No 369

2 On the base  $AB = 2.5''$  describe a parallelogram whose opposite oblique sides  $AD = BC = 2''$ . From the points A and B as centres with a radius  $= 2.5''$  draw two arcs cutting DC, and DC produced at E and F respectively. Join AE and BF. Then EABF is the rhombus required on the same base AB and between the same parallels AB and DF.

Prop No <sup>370</sup>~~369~~

3 In the figure given on page <sup>127</sup>~~65~~ to explain the definition of complements, AC is the diagonal of the parallelogram ABCD.

the  $\triangle ABC = \triangle ADC$ . Again AK is the diagonal of the parallelogram EH, and KC of GF, the  $\triangle AHK = \triangle AEK$ , and the  $\triangle KFC = \triangle KGC$ . From the  $\triangle ADC$  take away the  $\triangle s AHK$  and  $KFC$ , and from the  $\triangle ABC$  take away the  $\triangle s AEK$ , and  $KGC$ , then the remainder HF = the remainder EG.

EG is a parallelogram, produce GK one of its sides to H, making KH equal to given st line HK. From H draw  $HA \parallel EK$  or GB, meeting BE produced at A. Join AK, as AH is  $\parallel EK$ , AK if produced will meet BG produced, and let them meet at C. From C draw  $CD \parallel GH$  or AB meeting EK and AH produced at F and D respectively. Then HF is the parallelogram equal and equiangular to the given parallelogram EG.

Prop No 371

4 Let CDEF be the given rectangle, and AB the given st line. Produce EF to G, making  $FG = AB$ . Proceed as in the

construction of the last preceding exercise, and complete the figure HDKM, in which FM is the required rectangle which is = the rectangle CDEF, because each of them are complements to the figures CG and EL parallelograms about the diagonal HK

The remaining side FL of the rectangle FM is by measurement equal to 4 cm.

Prop No 372.

5 ABCD is the given parallelogram in which  $AB = 2\frac{1}{2}"$ ,  $AD = 1\frac{1}{2}"$ , and the  $\angle A = 55^\circ$ . It is required to draw a parallelogram whose greatest side =  $2\frac{1}{2}"$ . Proceed as in last preceding exercise and complete the figure AFKG, in which CK is the required parallelogram equiangular to the given parallelogram ABCD.

The shorter side of the parallelogram CK measures  $1\frac{1}{2}"$ .

Prop No. 373

If the  $\angle A$  is increased the area of the given parallelogram ABCD will also increase so that when the  $\angle A$  becomes a rt  $\angle$  the area of the figure will reach its maximum, for with the increase of the  $\angle A$ , the altitude from D upon AB increases till AD itself becomes the altitude. With the increase of the area of ABCD, the area of the parallelogram CK also increases. In the similar manner with the decrease of the  $\angle A$  the area also decreases, and it becomes zero when the  $\angle A$  is  $= D$ , or the sides AB and AD coincide.

Prop. No. 374.

6. ABC is an equilateral  $\triangle$  on a side  $BC = 6$  cm. From the vertex A draw AD perpendicular to BC. From C draw  $CF \parallel AD$ , and from A draw  $AEK \parallel BC$  cutting CF at E, and make  $EF = 5$  cm. From F draw  $FG \parallel AE$  or  $BC$ , meeting DA produced at G. Join GE. Produce GE to meet BC produced at H. From H draw  $HKL \parallel CF$  or  $DA$ , meeting AE and GF produced at K and L respectively. The figure EL is the rectangle required, and it is described on  $EF = 5$  cm.

The remaining side EK of the rectangle EL measures 3.1 cm. nearly.

The area of  $EL = 5 \times 3.1 = 15.5$  sq cm, approximately.

## PART II

PAGE 130

## Problems 18—19.

PROP. NO. 375

1. ABCD is the quadrilateral. Join DB. From C draw CE  $\parallel$  DB, meeting AB produced at E. Join DE.

The triangle ADE is = in area to the figure ABCD

AE the base = 10.9 cm, and DF the altitude = 4.4 cm

$\therefore$  the area of the triangle ADE =  $\frac{1}{2} \times 10.9 \times 4.4 = 23.98$  sq. cm.

PROP. NO. 376

2. ABCD is the given quadrilateral and BD the diagonal. Proceed as in the above exercise, and measure out AE = 5.7" and the altitude DF = 2.9".

$\therefore$  the area of the triangle ADE =  $\frac{1}{2} \times 5.7 \times 2.9 = 8.41$  sq. in.

PROP. NO. 377

3. ABCDE is a regular pentagon of which each side = 4 cm. Join DA and DB, and produce AB both ways to F and G. From the points C and E draw CG and EF  $\parallel$  s DB and DA respectively meeting AB produced at G, and BA produced at F. Join DF and DG. Then the  $\triangle$  FDG is equal to the pentagon ABCDE. The altitude from D on FG = 6.1 cm and FG measures 9.2 cm

$\therefore$  area of the  $\triangle$  =  $\frac{1}{2} \times 6.1 \times 9.2 = 28.06$  nearly

PROP. NO. 378

4. From the point D draw DE  $\parallel$  AC meeting BA produced at E. From C draw CF perpendicular to AB produced. Join CE. The ECB is the  $\triangle$  required AD = 365 m, and EB = 710 m.

$\therefore$  the area of the  $\triangle$  ECD =  $\frac{1}{2} \times 710 \times 365$   
= 129575 sq. metres.

PROP. NO. 379.

PROP. NO. 380.

5. D the other extremity of the given base BD lies in BC or BC produced. Join AD. From C draw CE  $\parallel$  AD, meeting BA produced or BA at E. Join DE. Then EBD is the required  $\triangle$ . The  $\triangle$  ADE = the  $\triangle$  DAC, for they are on the same base AD, and between the same parallels AD and EC. [Theor. 26.] To each of these add the  $\triangle$  ABD in case (i) or the figure BEOC in case (ii). Then the whole  $\triangle$  ABC = the whole  $\triangle$  EBD.

(i) Prop. No 381.

(ii) Prop. No 382.

6. Let  $ABC$  be the given  $\triangle$ , and  $P$  the altitude. If the given altitude = the altitude of the  $\triangle ABC$ , then proceed to describe a  $\triangle$  as given in Problem 8. But in case the given altitude be less or greater than the altitude of the  $\triangle ABC$  proceed thus. From the points  $B$  and  $C$  draw  $BE$  and  $CD$  at rt.  $\angle$ s to  $BC$ , and through  $A$  draw  $EAD \perp BC$ , meeting  $BE$  and  $CD$  at  $E$  and  $D$ . From  $CD$  or  $CD$  produced cut off  $CF = P$ . Join  $BF$ . Produce  $BF$  if necessary to meet  $EAD$  or  $EAD$  produced at  $G$ . From  $G$  draw  $GK \parallel BE$  or  $CD$ , meeting  $BC$  or  $BC$  produced at  $K$ , and through  $F$  draw  $MF \parallel BC$  or  $ED$ , meeting  $BE$ , and  $GK$  or these produced at  $M$  and  $H$ . Take any point  $O$  in  $MF$ , and join  $BO$  and  $KO$ . Then  $OBK$  is the required  $\triangle$ . Then because (i)  $EK$  or (ii)  $MC$  is a rectangle and (i)  $BG$  or (ii)  $BF$  the diagonal,  $\therefore$  the complements  $EF$  and  $HC$  are equal.  $\therefore$  the rectangle  $EC =$  the rectangle  $MK$ .

But the  $\triangle ABC = \frac{1}{2}$  of  $EC$ , and the  $\triangle OBK = \frac{1}{2}$  of  $MK$ , because they are on the same base  $BC$  and  $BK$ , and between the same  $\parallel$ s  $BC$  and  $ED$  or  $BK$  and  $MH$ .  $\therefore$  the  $\triangle ABC =$  the  $\triangle OBK$ .

Prop No 383.

Prop No 384.

7. Let  $ABC$  be the given  $\triangle$  and  $X$  the given point. Through the points  $B$  and  $C$  draw  $BE$  and  $CD$  st. lines at rt.  $\angle$ s to  $BC$ , and through  $A$  draw a st. line  $EAD \parallel BC$ , meeting  $BE$  and  $CD$  at  $E$  and  $D$ . From the given point  $X$  draw a st. line  $XM \parallel BC$ , meeting  $BE$  and  $CD$  or these produced at  $M$  and  $F$ . Join  $BF$ , meeting  $ED$  or  $ED$  produced at  $G$ . From  $G$  draw  $GK \parallel BE$  and  $CD$ , meeting  $BC$  at  $K$ , and produce if necessary to meet  $MX$  at  $H$ . Join  $BX$  and  $XK$ . Now  $EK$  (i), or  $MC$  (ii) the rectangle, and the complement  $EF =$  the complement  $FK$ ,  $\therefore$  the figure  $BD =$  the figure  $MK$ , and also their halves are equal,  $\therefore$  the  $\triangle ABC$  half of  $BD =$  the  $\triangle XBK$  half of  $MK$ .

Prop No. 385.

8.  $ABCD$  is a quadrilateral, and  $X$  a given point in  $DC$ , it is required to construct a  $\triangle$  having its vertex at  $X$ , and its base being in the same st. line with  $AB$ . First construct the  $\triangle ADE =$  the quadri figure  $ABCD$  [Prob 18] Then proceeding as in the last preceding exercise construct a  $\triangle AXN =$  the  $\triangle ADE$ .



## Prop No 386

9  $\triangle ABC$  is a given  $\triangle$ . Divide one of its sides  $BC$  into any  $n$  say 4 parts at  $D, E$ , and  $F$  points. Join these points with the  $\perp$  opposite to them,  $i.e.$ ,  $AD, AE$ , and  $AF$ , &c. Now the  $\triangle ABC$  is divided into  $n$  here four equal  $\triangle$ s  $ABD, ADE, AEF$  and  $AFC$

Because  $AO$  is the altitude of the  $\triangle ABC$  and  $AO$  is the common altitude for all these  $n$  here four triangles, and then bases are equal. But the  $\text{area} = \frac{1}{2} \times \text{base} \times \text{ht}$  the areas of these triangles are equal. Or, all these triangles are on equal bases and between the  $\parallel$ s  $BC$  and that drawn through  $A$  the common vertex, these triangles are *equal in area* [Theor. 26]  $O$  is the point of intersection of  $PQ$  and  $ZC$ .

10  $Z$  is the middle point of  $AB$ , then  $ZC$  bisect the  $\triangle ABC$ ,  $i.e.$ , the  $\triangle BZC = \triangle AZC$ . But the  $\triangle ZPQ = \triangle QCZ$ , take away the equal parts  $ZOQ$ , then  $\triangle ZOP = \triangle COQ$ . Now by taking  $\triangle COQ$  from the  $\triangle BZC$  and adding  $\triangle ZOP$ , and similarly by taking away the  $\triangle ZOP$  from the  $\triangle AZC$  and adding the  $\triangle COQ$ , the  $\triangle BPQ = \text{the figure } APQC$

11 Let  $AP$  and  $HX$  intersect at  $O$ , and  $AQ$  and  $KX$  at  $O'$ , then with the same reasoning as given above the  $\triangle BHX = \triangle APQ$ , and the  $\triangle CKX = \triangle APQ$ .  $\therefore$  the  $\triangle BHX = \triangle CKX = \triangle APQ$ . But as the  $\triangle HOA = \triangle POX$  and the  $\triangle KO'A = \triangle QO'X$ .  $\therefore$  the  $\triangle BHX = \triangle CKX = \text{the figure } AHXK$

## Prop No 387

12  $\triangle ABC$  is a  $\triangle$ , and  $X$  is a point in the base  $BC$ . It is required to cut off from the  $\triangle ABC$  in an  $\frac{1}{n}$ th part by a st line drawn from the point  $X$ . Make  $BD = \frac{1}{n}$ th part of  $BC$ , say here  $\frac{1}{8}$ th part. Join  $AD$  and  $AX$ . From  $D$  draw  $DE \parallel AX$ , meeting  $AB$  at  $E$  and join  $EX$ . Then  $BEX$  is the required part. Because the  $\triangle BAD$  is the  $\frac{1}{n}$ th part of the  $\triangle ABC$ , and the  $\triangle BEX$  can be proved on the analogy of the proof of the last preceding exercise = the  $\triangle BAD$  as the  $\triangle BAD$  is  $\frac{1}{n}$ th or near  $\frac{1}{8}$ th part, the  $\triangle BEX$  is the  $\frac{1}{n}$ th and here  $\frac{1}{8}$ th part of the  $\triangle ABC$

Prop. No 388.

13. ABCD is a quadrilateral. Join DB. From C draw CE || PB meeting AB produced at E. Join DE. Then the  $\triangle ADE$  = the figure ABCD. [Prob 18]

Bisect the base AE of the  $\triangle ADE$ , at F, and join DF.  
Then the triangle ADF = the triangle FDE.

$\therefore$  the triangle ADF is half of the triangle ADE and  $\therefore$  the triangle ADF is also half of the figure ABCD.

Prop No 389.

14. ABCD is a quadrilateral. Construct a triangle ADE = the figure ABCD [Prob 18.] Bisect the base AE of the triangle ADE into  $n$  parts, and make  $AF = \frac{1}{n}$ th of AE. Join DF. Because the  $\triangle ADF = \frac{1}{n}$ th part of the  $\triangle ADE$

$\therefore$  the  $\triangle ADF$  is also  $\frac{1}{n}$ th part of the quadrilateral ABCD.

## PART II.

PAGE 134.

Prop No 390.

1. XOX' and YOY' are the axis of reference and O the point of origin.

(i) Along OX mark off OM, 4 units in length, and at M draw MA perp. to OX, making MA = 6 units of length. Then A is the point whose co-ordinates are (6, 4).

Similarly mark off A in the following three cases whose co-ordinates are (-6, 4), (-6, -4), (6, -4)

(ii) Prop. No. 391.

(iii) Prop No 392.

2 (i) Prop No 393. (ii) Prop. No. 394.

Prop No 395.

3 (i) Co-ordinates of the middle point are (8, 5).

(ii) " " (10, 10).

Prop. No. (i) 396 (ii) 397. (iii) 398 (iv) 399

4 Co-ordinates of mid-points.

(i) (4, 5), (ii) (1, 5), (iii) (-4, -5), (iv) (-4, -5).

Prop. No 400.

5. The co ordinates of the points of trisection of the line joining (0, 0) to (18, 15) are (6, 5) and (12, 10)

Prop No 401

6. The abscissa of the points P in (i) is the same while ordinate changes,  $\therefore$  the position of the P points lies on the line parallel to YOY' While in case (ii) the abscissa changes but ordinate is the same throughout,  $\therefore$  the line of position of points P remains parallel to XOX' If the line of position of P points be produced it intersects that of P' points, the co-ordinate of which are (5, 8.)

Prop No. 402

7 (i) The distance  $OP = \sqrt{8^2 + 15^2} = 17.$

From the centre O with a radius = OP, describe an arc PQ cutting the abscissa at Q which is 17 parts distant from the origin O  $\therefore DP = 17.$

Prop. No 103

(ii) Here the distance  $OP = \sqrt{(-8)^2 + (-15)^2} = 17.$

From the centre O with radius OP describe an arc PQ meeting the ordinate of X at Q which is 17 parts from the origin.  $\therefore OP = 17.$

Prop No. 404

(iii) The distance  $OP = \sqrt{21^2 + 7^2} = 22$

From the centre O with the radius OP, describe an arc PQ meeting the ordinate of X at Q which is 22 from the origin O.  $\therefore OP = 22$

Prop. No. 405

7. (iv)  $OP = \sqrt{7^2 + 24^2} = 25$

From the centre O and with radius OP draw an arc PQ meeting line of X at Q which reads 25.  $\therefore OP = 25.$

Prop No 406.

(i)  $PP' = \sqrt{5^2 + 4^2} = 5$  From the centre O with a radius = PP' draw an arc cutting OX' at Q which is 5 parts distant from O.  $\therefore PP' = 5.$

## Prop No 407

- (ii) From P' draw P'M
- $\parallel$
- OX' meeting PS at M

P'M = 9 - 5 = 4, and PM = 8 - 5 = 3.  $\therefore$  PP' =  $\sqrt{3^2 + 4^2}$  = 5. From the centre O with a radius = PP' draw an arc cutting OX' at Q, i.e., at 5th division from O.

$\therefore$  PP' = 5.

## Prop No 408

- (iii) OP' = 8, OP = 15
- $\therefore$
- PP' =
- $\sqrt{8^2 + 15^2}$
- = 17.

From the centre O and with a radius PP' draw an arc cutting OX' at Q which point is at the 17th division from O.  $\therefore$  PP = 17

## Prop No. 409.

- (iv) From the point P draw PM
- $\parallel$
- XOX' meeting P' 5 at M.

Now PM = 10 + 5 = 15, and P'M = 12 - 4 = 8  $\therefore$  PP' =  $\sqrt{15^2 + 8^2}$  = 17

From the centre O with radius PP' draw an arc cutting XO at Q, a point 17 divisions apart from O.

$\therefore$  PP' = 17.

## Prop No 410.

- (v) PP' =
- $\sqrt{8^2 + 35^2}$
- = 36 approximately.

From the centre O with radius = PP' draw an arc cutting OX' at Q just near the 36th division from O.

$\therefore$  PP' = 36 nearly.

## Prop No 411

8. (vi) From P' draw P'M = XOX' meeting P20 produced at M

Now P'M = 20 + 15 = 35, and PM = 15  $\times$  3 = 18.

PP' =  $\sqrt{35^2 + 18^2}$  = 39.4. By measuring PP' in the compasses and then applying the legs of the compasses along XOX' it covers something above 39 divisions.

$\therefore$  PP' = 39 nearly

## Prop No 412

9. Join PP', P'P'', and PP'' As P and P'' are 2 divisions on the Y ordinate, and hence PP''  $\parallel$  XOX', and = 7 + 3 = 10. From the centre O with radius PP' draw an arc cutting OX' at X', a point 10 divisions from O.

$\therefore$  PP' = 10, and PP'' = 10 also  $\therefore$  PP' + PP'' are the equal sides of the isosceles  $\triangle$  PP'P''.

## Prop No 413

- 10 The co ordinates of A = (0, 5) . OA = 5  
 „ B = (3, 4) . OB =  $\sqrt{3^2 + 4^2} = 5$   
 „ C = (3, 0) . OC = 3  
 „ D = (4, - 3) .. OD =  $\sqrt{4^2 + (-3)^2} = 5$   
 „ E = (- 5, 0) . OE = 5  
 „ F = (0, - 5) . OF = 5.  
 „ G = (- 4, 3) .. OG =  $\sqrt{(-4)^2 + 3^2} = 5$   
 „ H = (- 4, 3) OH =  $\sqrt{(-4)^2 + (-3)^2} = 5$

Hence it appears that the distance of all these 8 points from O is 5, and if a circle be drawn from the centre O with a radius = the distance of one of these points from D, it will pass through all other points

## Prop No 414.

- 11 (i) Suppose  $oa = 4$ ,  $ob = 8$

$$\text{Then } ab = \sqrt{4^2 + 8^2} = \sqrt{a^2 + b^2}$$

- (ii)  $ob = b$ ,  $oa = a$  join  $ab$

$$\therefore ab = \sqrt{a^2 + b^2}$$

- (iii) join  $bo$ , then  $ob = \sqrt{a^2 + b^2}$

$\therefore$  the distances between these points are equal.

## Prop No 415

12. These points when plotted become the angular points of a square, and the st lines joining them become diagonals of that square, and hence they bisect each other.

## Prop No 416

13. When these points are plotted they occupy the places indicated in the figure by A, B, &c, respectively The distance between B and C =  $9 + 4 = 13$  From the centre A with a radius AB, draw an arc cutting the parallel through A at Q, i.e., 13 divisions from A  $\therefore AB = 13$  AB = BC

The base AC is cut by the axis of X at 6th division which divides AC into two equal parts

## Prop. No 417

14. The co-ordinates of the fourth vertex is (0, 0) and the co-ordinates of the intersection of the diagonals are (7, 5).

## Prop No 418

15. By joining the four points ABCD, as the co-ordinates of D (5, 12),  $\therefore AD = \sqrt{5^2 + 12^2} = 13$ , which is = AB.

$\therefore$  the four sides of the figure ABCD are equal, but the  $\angle$ s are not right  $\angle$ s,  $\therefore$  the figure is a rhombus. Join AC and BD, and they intersect each other at 2 the co-ordinates of which are (9, 6)

16 The locus of the point is the st line bisecting OP at rt  $\angle$ s, and the locus cuts the axis at the points (4, 0) and (0, -4)

17. (i) ABCD is a rectangle, side AB = 17 - 4 = 13, and AD = 12 - 3 = 9.  $\therefore$  the area =  $9 \times 13 = 117$ .

(ii) AB = 15 - 2 = 13 and AD = 6 + 3  $\therefore$  area =  $9 \times 13 = 117$ .

(iii) AB = 5 + 8 = 13, and AD = 8 + 1 = 9.

$\therefore$  area =  $9 \times 13 = 117$ .

18 The quadrilateral formed is a square AC and BD are the diagonals  $\therefore$  area =  $\frac{AC^2}{2} = \frac{2^2}{2} = 2$  sq in. Now joining the middle points of the sides of the above square, we get another smaller square PQRS each side of which = 1".

$\therefore$  the area of PQRS =  $1^2$  or 1 sq inch

19 ABC is a  $\triangle$ , BC = 18 - 4 = 14, and altitude AD = 10.

$\therefore$  the area of  $\triangle ABC = \frac{1}{2} \times 14 \times 10 = 70$  units of area. The above rules apply to all the four  $\triangle$ s which have the equal bases and altitudes

## Prop No 415

20. (i) ABC is the  $\triangle$ , AC is the base = 6, while BS the altitude = 3. area of  $\triangle = \frac{1}{2} \times 3 \times 6 = 9$  units of area

## Prop No. 116

(ii) In this  $\triangle$  base AB = 3, and altitude AC = 6.

$\therefore$  the area of the  $\triangle = \frac{1}{2} \times 3 \times 6 = 9$  units of area. The  $\angle$ s in the  $\triangle$  in (i) are  $31^\circ$ ,  $71^\circ$  and  $78^\circ$

## Prop No 417

21 (i) The side BC joining two points B and C the co-ordinates of which are (12, 10) and (12, -6) lie on the line 12 units distant from O, and  $\parallel$  the axis Y. The area of the  $\triangle = \frac{1}{2} \times (10 + 6) \times 12 = 96$  units of area.

## Prop No 418.

(ii) In this  $\triangle$  the side BC is  $\parallel$  the axis of X

The area =  $\frac{1}{2} \times (5 + 15) \times 8 = 80$  units of area.

Prop. No. 419

(iii) In the  $\triangle ABC$ ,  $BC$  is  $\parallel$  the axis of  $Y$ The area  $= \frac{1}{2} \times (12 + 8) \times 12 = 120$  units of area.

Prop. No. 420.

(iv) In this  $\triangle$  base  $BC$  is  $\parallel$  the axis of  $X$ The area  $= \frac{1}{2} \times (6 + 20) \times 8 = 104$  units of area.

Prop No 421

23. (i) The area of the  $\triangle ABC = \frac{1}{2} \times (15 - 5) \times (15 - 5) = 50$  units of area.

Prop No 422.

(ii) " "  $= \frac{1}{2} \times 8 \times (18 - 3) = 60$  " "

Prop No 423

(iii) " "  $= \frac{1}{2} \times (8 + 4) \times (16 + 4) = 120$ , " "

Prop No 424

(iv) " "  $= \frac{1}{2} \times (15 + 7) \times (11 + 1) = 132$ , " "

Prop No 425

23. Plot the points  $A, B, C$ , and  $D$ , and join  $AB, BC, CD$ , and  $AD$ . Then  $ABCD$  is a parallelogram. From the centre  $D$  with the radius  $= DA$  draw an arc  $AP$  cutting the st line  $DE$  drawn  $\parallel$  the axis of  $X$  at  $P$ , then  $DP = 7 - 2 = 5$  units of length, i.e.,  $AD = 5$ . In the same manner from the centre  $D$  with radius  $= DC$ , draw an arc  $CQ$  cutting the st. line  $PD$  produced at  $Q$ , then  $DQ = DC = 11 + 2 = 13$ .

$\therefore$  the adjacent sides of the parallelogram are 5 and 13 respectively.

Area of the parallelogram  $= (15 \times 9) - 2 \left\{ \left( \frac{1}{2} \times 12 \times 5 \right) + \left( \frac{1}{2} \times 4 \times 3 \right) \right\}$   
 $= 135 - 2 \{ 30 + 6 \} = 135 - 72$   
 $= 63$  units of area.

Prop No. 426.

24. (i)  $ABDC$  is a trapezium of which  $AB \parallel CD$ .  $AC = 9 - 3 = 6$ ,area  $= \frac{1}{2} \times 6 \times (3 + 6) = 27$  units of area.

Prop. No 427.

(ii)  $ABCD$  is a trapezium.  $AD = 3 + 3 = 6$ .area  $= \frac{1}{2} \times (5 + 2) \times 6 = 30$  units of area.

Prop. No. 428

(iii)  $ABDC$  is a trapezium.  $DC = 11 - 3 = 8$ . From  $B$  draw $BE \parallel AC$ , and  $BE$  if produced is the altitude,  $BE = 5$ .The area of the parallelogram  $AE = 5 \times 4 = 20$  units of area.

and the area of the  $\triangle BDE = \frac{1}{2} \times 4 \times 5 = 10$  units of area.  
 $\therefore$  the area of the trapezium  $= 20 + 10 = 30$  units of area.

Prop. No. 429

(iv) From C draw  $CE \parallel AB$ , and  $BF = 5$  is the altitude.  $\therefore$  the area of the figure  $BE = 5 + 3 = 8$  and the area of the  $\triangle CDE = \frac{1}{2} \times (8 - 3) \times 5 = 12.5$   $\therefore$  the area of the trapezium  $= 8 + 12.5 = 20.5$  units of area.

Prop No 430.

25. (i) From A and B draw  $AP$  and  $BQ \parallel YY'$ , and through C draw  $PCQ \parallel XX'$ , meeting  $AP$  and  $BQ$  at  $P$  and  $Q$ .  
 Now area of the trapezium  $APQB = \frac{1}{2} (9 + 4) \times 15 = 97.5$ . From this subtract the area of two  $\triangle$ s  $APC$  and  $BQC = \frac{9 \times 7}{2} + \frac{4 \times 8}{2} = 31.5 + 16 = 47.5$ .

$\therefore$  the area of the  $\triangle ABC = 97.5 - 47.5 = 50$  units of area.

Prop No 431

(ii) Draw  $AP$  and  $BQ \parallel YY'$  and  $QCP \parallel XX'$  similar to the case above

Now the area of the trapezium  $BQPA = \frac{1}{2} (7 + 9) \times 17 = 138$ . From this subtract the area of  $\triangle$ s  $APC$  and  $BQC = \frac{9 \times 11}{2} + \frac{7 \times 6}{2} = \frac{99}{2} + \frac{42}{2} = \frac{141}{2} = 70.5$

$\therefore$  the area of the  $\triangle ABC = 138 - 70.5 = 67.5$  units of area

Prop. No 432.

(iii) From C draw  $CP \parallel XX'$  meeting  $YY'$  at  $P$ . The area of the  $\triangle APC = \frac{1}{2} \times 11 \times 14 = 77$  From which subtract the area of  $\triangle BPC = \frac{1}{2} \times 14 \times 8 = 56$

the area of the  $\triangle ABC = 77 - 56 = 21$  units of area.

Prop. No 433.

(iv) Complete the trapezium as in cases (i) and (ii). Then the area of the trapezium  $= \frac{1}{2} (9 + 19) \times 13 = 182$  subtract the area of two triangles  $APC$  and  $BQC = \frac{19 \times 8}{2} + \frac{9 \times 5}{2} = \frac{152 + 45}{2} = 98.5$ .

$\therefore$  the area of the  $\triangle ABC = 182 - 98.5 = 83.5$  units of area.



## Prop No 434.

26 Join BD Then AC and BD are the diagonals, but AC lies along the axis XX', BD at it  $\perp$ s to AC is  $\parallel$  YY'

$$\therefore \text{area of the rhombus } ABCD = \frac{10 \times 24}{2} = 120 \text{ units of area.}$$

From the centre D with radius = DC, draw an arc CQ cutting the st line DQ which is parallel to the axis of X, the co-ordinates of the point Q are (20, -5)

$$\therefore \text{the length of } DQ = 20 - 7 = 13$$

$$\therefore \text{each side of the rhombus is } = 13 \text{ units}$$

## Prop No 435

$$27 \quad CB = \sqrt{CE^2 + EB^2} = \sqrt{6^2 + 8^2} = \sqrt{100} = 10$$

$$AB = \sqrt{5^2 + 12^2} = \sqrt{169} = 13$$

$CD = CG + GD = \sqrt{6^2 + 8^2} + \sqrt{4^2 + 3^2} = 10 + 5 = 15$  By measuring AD is found = 8.3 The area of BCFO = area of  $\triangle BCG - \triangle FOG = (\frac{1}{2} \times 16 \times 6) - (\frac{1}{2} \times 3 \times 4) = 48 - 6 = 42$  units of area, and the area of  $\triangle AOB = \frac{1}{2} \times 12 \times 5 = 30$  units of area

## Prop No 436

28 In the figure ABCD produce DA and CB to meet at F, the co-ordinates of F are (-10, -10)  $AB = \sqrt{3^2 + 4^2} + \sqrt{3^2 + 4^2} = 5 + 5 = 10$

$$BC = 13 - 4 = 9, \text{ and } CD = \sqrt{15^2 + 8^2} = \sqrt{289} = 17$$

From the centre A with radius = AD draw an arc DQ cutting AQ at Q the co-ordinates of which are (9, -4)  $AD = 4 + 9 = 13$  nearly or by measuring AD with the help of a decimal diagonal scale  $AD = 12.7$

From D draw DE  $\parallel$  XX' meeting CF at E

The area of the  $\triangle FCD = \frac{1}{2} \times DE \times CF = \frac{1}{2} \times 15 \times 23 = 172.5$  sq units, and

$$\text{The area of the } \triangle ABF = \frac{1}{2} \times AG \times BF = \frac{1}{2} \times 6 \times 14 = 42 \text{ sq units}$$

$$\therefore \text{the area of the figure } ABCD = 172.5 - 42 = 130.5 \text{ sq units}$$

## Prop No. 437

29 The points B and D are on the same  $\parallel$ s, join BD, = 8 + 4 = 12, and  $CD = 8 - 3 = 5$ .

$\therefore AB = \sqrt{8^2 + 6^2} = 10$ ,  $BC = \sqrt{12^2 + 5^2} = 13$ ,  $CD = 5$  and  $DE = \sqrt{4^2 + 3^2} = 5$ , and  $AE = 3$ .

The area of the figure  $ABCDE = \text{area of } \triangle ABF + \text{area of } \triangle BCD + \text{area of } \triangle DEF = \frac{1}{2} \times 8 \times 6 + \frac{1}{2} \times 12 \times 5 + \frac{1}{2} \times 4 \times 3 = 24 + 30 + 6 = 60 \text{ sq. units.}$

Prop No 438.

30 For want of space the scale has been reduced to  $\frac{1}{2}'' = 100$  yds or  $1'' = 200$  yds From B and C draw CE and BF  $\parallel$  YY', and from A draw EF  $\parallel$  XX'

The area of the trapezium CEFB  $= \frac{1}{2} (CE + BF) \times EF$ .

But  $CE = 100$  and  $BF = 700$ , and  $EF = 800$  yds.

$\therefore$  the area of the trapezium  $= \frac{1}{2} (100 + 700) \times 800 = 320000 \text{ sq. yds.}$

and the area of the  $\triangle ABF = \frac{1}{2} \times 400 \times 700 = 140000 \text{ sq. yds}$

and that of the  $\triangle ACE = \frac{1}{2} \times 100 \times 400 = 20000$

Sum of the area of both the  $\triangle s = 160000$ .

$\therefore$  the area of the  $\triangle ABC = 320000 - 160000 = 160000 \text{ sq. yds.}$

From the centre C with radius  $= CB$  draw an arc cutting the st. line through C  $\parallel$  XX' at Q the co-ordinates of which are  $(5'', -2'')$ .

$\therefore CQ = 5'' + 5'' = 10''$  or 1000 yds. (in the plan  $\frac{1}{2}''$  represents  $1''$  of the question)

From A draw AP perpendicular on BC, and measure it.  $\therefore AP = 320$  yds.

Prop. No. 439

31. On measuring the lines that join the points it is found that they are all = one another, and the  $\angle s$  they contain are rt.  $\angle s$ .  $\therefore$  the figure is a square

From the centre A with AB as radius draw an arc AQ cutting AX at Q, then  $AQ = 15$  approximately, and  $\therefore$  the area  $= 225 \text{ sq. units approximately}$

(2) From C draw ECF  $\parallel$  XX', meeting YY' at E, and from B draw GBF  $\parallel$  YY' meeting XX' at G and ECF at F. Each side of this square EOGF  $= 20$ ,  $\therefore$  area  $= 20^2 = 400 \text{ sq. units.}$  and the area of each of the  $\triangle s$  ADO, ABG, BFC and CED  $= \frac{1}{2} \times 6 \times 14 = 42 \text{ sq. units.}$   $\therefore$  area of the 4  $\triangle s = 4 \times 42 = 168 \text{ sq. units.}$  Subtract this area of  $\triangle s$  from that of the square, i. e.,  $400 - 168$  the area of the square ABCD  $= 232 \text{ sq. units.}$

- (ii) Divide the square ABCD, as given in example 1, page 120, into four equal  $\Delta$ s and one middle square

The area of the middle square  $= 8^2 = 64$  sq units

The area of the 4 rt  $\angle$ ed  $\Delta$ s  $= 4 \left\{ \frac{1}{2} \times 14 \times 6 \right\} = 4 \times 42 = 168$  sq units

the area of the given square ABCD  $= 64 + 168 = 232$  sq units

## PART II.

PAGE 138.

### Miscellaneous.

Prop No 140

1. The side AB > the side AC From C draw CE  $\parallel$  AP, meeting BA produced at E Because AP  $\parallel$  CE, the  $\angle$  BAP = the  $\angle$  AEC, and the  $\angle$  PAC =  $\angle$  ACE But the  $\angle$  BAP =  $\angle$  PAC  $\therefore$  the  $\angle$  AEC = the  $\angle$  ACE. Hence AE = AC Now in the  $\Delta$  BCE the st line AP is  $\parallel$  CE  $\therefore$  AP divides BC and BE proportionally, i.e., BP : PC = BA : AC. But AE = AC  $\therefore \frac{BP}{PC} = \frac{BA}{AC}$  But BA > AC  $\therefore$  BP > PC

But BX = XC (Hyp)  $\therefore$  BP > BX, again AB > AC, then the  $\angle$  ACB > the  $\angle$  ABC, add to each one of the  $\angle$ s BAP, and CAP Then the  $\angle$ s ACB and CAP are > the  $\angle$ s ABC and BAP. But these four  $\angle$ s = 4 rt  $\angle$ s the  $\angle$ s ABC and BAP = the exterior  $\angle$  APC are less than a rt  $\angle$   $\therefore$  the  $\angle$  APD is < the  $\angle$  ADP, AP is > AD, or AP lies towards B from AD the perpendicular, AP lies between AX and AD, and it is also intermediate in magnitude

Prop. No 441

2 ABC is a  $\Delta$ , AP bisects the  $\angle$  BAC. From C draw CQ perpendicular to AP or AP produced. Produce CQ to meet AB or AB produced at E Then because AD the bisector of the  $\angle$  BAC is perpendicular on CE, AE = AC, and the  $\angle$  AEC = the  $\angle$  ACE.

- (v) The exter  $\angle$  AEC = inter  $\angle$ s CBE and BCE To these add the  $\angle$  ACE  $\therefore$  the  $\angle$ s AEC and ACE = the  $\angle$ s ABC and ACB  $\therefore$  each of the  $\angle$ s AEC or ACE =  $\frac{1}{2}$  of the  $\angle$ s ABC and ACB.

(ii) The  $\angle AEC =$  the  $\angle ACE$  Add the  $\angle BCE$   $\therefore$  the  $\angle$ s  $AEC + BCE =$  the  $\angle$ s  $ACE + BCE =$  the  $\angle ACB$ . But the  $\angle$ s  $AEC$  and  $ACE$  are equal, and the  $\angle AEC =$  the  $\angle$ s  $ABC$  and  $BCE$

$\therefore$  the  $\angle ACB = 2 \angle BCE +$  the  $\angle ABC$

Hence twice the  $\angle BCE =$  the  $\angle ACB -$  the  $\angle ABC$ .

$\therefore$  the  $\angle BCE = \frac{1}{2} (\angle ACB - \angle ABC)$ .

Prop No 442

3 In the figure of the last preceding exer. 2, draw  $AD$  perpendicular to  $CB$  The  $\angle$ s  $APD$  and  $PAD$  are  $=$  the  $\angle ADP$ , for the  $\angle ADP$  is a rt  $\angle$ . Hence the  $\angle PAD$  is complementary to the  $\angle APD$ .

But also in  $\triangle PQC$ , the  $\angle PQC$  is a rt  $\angle$ ,  $\therefore$  the  $\angle PCQ$  is complementary to the  $\angle CPQ$  or  $DPA$   $\therefore$  the  $\angle PAD =$  the  $\angle PCQ$

But the  $\angle PCQ = \frac{1}{2}$  (the  $\angle ACB -$  the  $\angle ABC$ ) by the last preceding exercise  $\therefore$  the  $\angle PAD = \frac{1}{2} (\angle ACB - \angle ABC)$

Prop No 443

4 Let  $C$  be the hypotenuse and  $AB$  the difference of the other two sides of a rt  $\triangle$  At the point  $A$  make an  $\angle BAO = 45^\circ$  or  $\frac{1}{2}$  rt  $\angle$  From  $B$  as centre and with radius  $= C$  the hypotenuse Draw an arc cutting  $AO$  at  $O$  From  $O$  drop  $OP$  perpendicular on  $AB$  produced. Then  $BOP$  is the  $\triangle$  required. In the  $\triangle APO$ , the  $\angle P$  is rt  $\angle$ , and the  $\angle A = 45^\circ$ ,  $\therefore$  the remaining  $\angle AOP = 45^\circ$ ,  $\therefore PO = AP$ . For  $AB = AP - BP = PO - BP$ ,  $\therefore PO$  and  $PB$  are the two sides of the rt  $\triangle BOP$ ,  $BO = C$  is the hypotenuse.

Prop No 444

5. Let the  $\angle A$  be the difference of the base  $\angle$ s, and  $B$  the difference of the two sides, and  $CD$  the given base. It is required to describe the  $\triangle$ . Bisect the  $\angle A$  At the point  $C$  make an  $\angle DCE = \frac{1}{2} \angle A$ . From the centre  $D$  with radius  $= B$  draw an arc cutting  $CE$  at  $E$ . Join  $DE$  Bisect  $CE$  at  $O$ , and draw  $OP$  at rt.  $\angle$ s to  $CE$ , meeting  $DE$  produced at  $P$  Join  $CP$  Then  $CPD$  is the required  $\triangle$ . Since  $OP$  is drawn from the middle point of  $CE$  at rt.  $\angle$ s to  $CE$ ,  $\therefore PC = PE$ ,  $ED = PD - PE = PD - PC$ .

Now the exter  $\angle CEP =$  the  $\angle$ s  $CDE + DCE$  or the  $\angle PCE =$  the  $\angle$ s  $CDE + DCE$ . Add the  $\angle DCE$ .

$\therefore$  the whole  $\angle PCD = 2 \angle DCE + \angle CDE$

Twice the  $\angle BCE =$  the  $\angle PCD -$  the  $\angle CDE$ , or the  $\angle A =$  the  $\angle PCD -$  the  $\angle CDE$

Prop No 415.

(11) Let B be the sum of the two sides and others as given above

At C make an  $\angle DCE = \frac{1}{2}$  the  $\angle A$  Draw CO at rt.  $\angle$ s to CE From the point D as centre and with a radius = B draw an arc cutting CO at O Join OD cutting CE at E Bisect OE at O, and join CO. Then because the  $\angle OCE$  is a rt  $\angle$  and CO is drawn from the rt  $\angle$  to the middle point of OE the hypotenuse,  $\therefore$  CO = PO = OE [Exer 10 to cor 2 Theor 16, page 47] Then PCD is the  $\Delta$  required CD is the base PD and PC are the two sides, the sum of which = DO = B, and the  $\angle A =$  the difference of the  $\angle$ s PCD and PDC

Prop No 446

6 Let BC be the base and A the sum of one side and the altitude Bisect the base BC at D, and draw DE at rt  $\angle$ s to BC, making DE = A, join BE. Bisect BE at F, and draw FG at rt  $\angle$ s to BE, meeting DE at G Join BG and CG Then GBC is the  $\Delta$  required In the  $\Delta$ s BGF and EGF, the  $\angle$ s at F are rt  $\angle$ s, the side BF = EF, and FG is common,  $\therefore$  the  $\Delta$ s BGF and EGF are congruent, and BG = EG. ED = BG + GD But ED = A,  $\therefore$  BG + GD = A Now BD = DC, and GD is common, and the  $\angle$ s at D are rt.  $\angle$ s  $\therefore$  the  $\Delta$ s BGD and CGD are congruent, and BG = CG.  $\therefore$  GBC is the required isosceles  $\Delta$

Prop. No 447.

7. Let AB be the given st line At B in AB draw BC at rt.  $\angle$ s to AB At the point A make an  $\angle BAD = 22\frac{1}{2}^\circ$  or  $\frac{1}{4}$  rt  $\angle$  AD meeting BC at D At D in AD make the  $\angle ADP =$  the  $\angle BAD$  DP meeting AB at P. The P is the point where AB is divided so that  $AP^2 = 2BP^2$ , now because the  $\angle BAD =$  the  $\angle ADP$  (const)  $AP = DP$  The exter  $\angle DPB =$  the  $\angle$ s PAD and ADP =  $45^\circ$  or half a rt  $\angle \therefore$  the  $\angle BPD =$  the  $\angle BDP$ , and hence BP = BD.

The  $\angle$  at B is a rt  $\angle$   $PD^2 = BD^2 + BP^2$ , but BD = BP  $\therefore$   $PD^2 = 2BP^2$ , and DP = AP.  $\therefore$   $PA^2 = 2BP^2$ .

## Prop No 448

- 8 (i) The point O is outside the  $\angle$  BAD or its vertical opposite  $\angle$ . Join OA, OD, OC, AC and OB

From O draw EOF  $\parallel$  AD, meeting BA and CD produced at E and F respectively. Join EC and ED. The  $\triangle AOD =$  the  $\triangle EAD$ , and the  $\triangle AEC =$  the  $\triangle AED$   
 $\therefore$  the  $\triangle AEC =$  the  $\triangle AOD$

In the same manner the  $\triangle OBE =$  the  $\triangle OCE$   
 $\therefore$  The sum of the  $\triangle$ s  $AEC + OCE = \triangle$ s  $OAD + OBE$ .

From these equals take away the part AEO.  
 $\therefore$  the  $\triangle AOC =$  the  $\triangle$ s  $AOD + OBA$

## Prop. No 449.

- (ii) Let the point O be within the  $\angle$  BAD The same construction being made The  $\triangle AOD =$  the  $\triangle ACE$  or the  $\triangle AOD =$  the  $\triangle$ s  $ACO + OCE + AOE$  But the  $\triangle OCE =$  the  $\triangle OBE$   $\therefore$  the  $\triangle AOD =$  the  $\triangle$ s  $ACO + OBE + AOE$   $\therefore$  the  $\triangle ACO =$  the  $\triangle AOD -$  the  $\triangle OBA$ .

## Prop No 450.

9 Let ABCD be the given quadrilateral, of which AC and BD are the diagonals, intersecting each other at E. Produce CA to F and make AF = CE, so that EF = CA Join DF and BF. Produce DB to G, and make BG = DE so that EG = BD. Join FG Then EFG will be the  $\triangle$  required.

Then because the base AC = EF, the  $\triangle ADC =$  the  $\triangle DEF$ , and the  $\triangle ABC =$  the  $\triangle BEF$  [Theor. 26]

$\therefore$  the triangle BDF = the triangles ABC + ADC = the figure ABCD.

But the triangle EFG = the triangle BDF, because they are on equal bases EG and BD, and between the same  $\parallel$ s [Theor 26].

$\therefore$  the triangle EFG = the figure ABCD, and the side EF = the diag AC, and the side EG = the diag BD, and the angle AEB is common.

## Prop No 451.

10. Let the  $\triangle$ s ABC and DBC be on the same base BC and of given area, & e, between the same parallels BC and AD. Bisect

BC at E and join AE and DE. Then AE and DE are the medians on the base BC in the triangles ABC and DBC. According to the Cor III, page 97, the medians of a triangle are concurrent about  $\frac{1}{3}$  of the median from the base. In the  $\triangle ABC$  the medians are concurrent at the point O, OE being  $\frac{1}{3}$  of AE, and in the  $\triangle DBC$  the medians are concurrent at P, a point about  $\frac{1}{3}$  of DE from BC.

Now in the  $\triangle AED$ , the point O is  $\frac{1}{3}$  of AE from E, and P is  $\frac{1}{3}$  of DE from E, the line joining OP is parallel to AD or BC, and it is therefore the locus of the intersection of the medians of  $\triangle$ s described on BC and having the same area.

Prop No 452 *also Hall*

11 Let ABC be the given  $\triangle$ , and D the given st line. It is required to draw a  $\triangle$  on the base BC equal in area to the  $\triangle ABC$  and having its vertex at the given line D. From A draw AE  $\parallel$  BC, meeting the st line D, or D produced at E. Join EB and EC. Then EBC is the  $\triangle$  required. Since they are  $\equiv$  for they are on the same base BC and between the same parallels BC and AE, and the vertex E rests on the st line D.

In case the parallel AE does not meet D or D produced, then D must be  $\parallel$  BC and either above or below AE, and then the construction fails.

Prop No 453

12 Let ABCD be a parallelogram of rods turnable at all the corner points, but the side AB is fixed, and E is the middle point of DC. Bisect AB at F, and join EF.

As the rods AD and BC remain constant, and when turn round the points A and B, they move in a circle round A and B. Similarly the st line joining the middle points of AB and CD moves round the point F, and E the middle point of DC describes a circle round F, and hence the locus of E is the circle described round F with radius = FE.

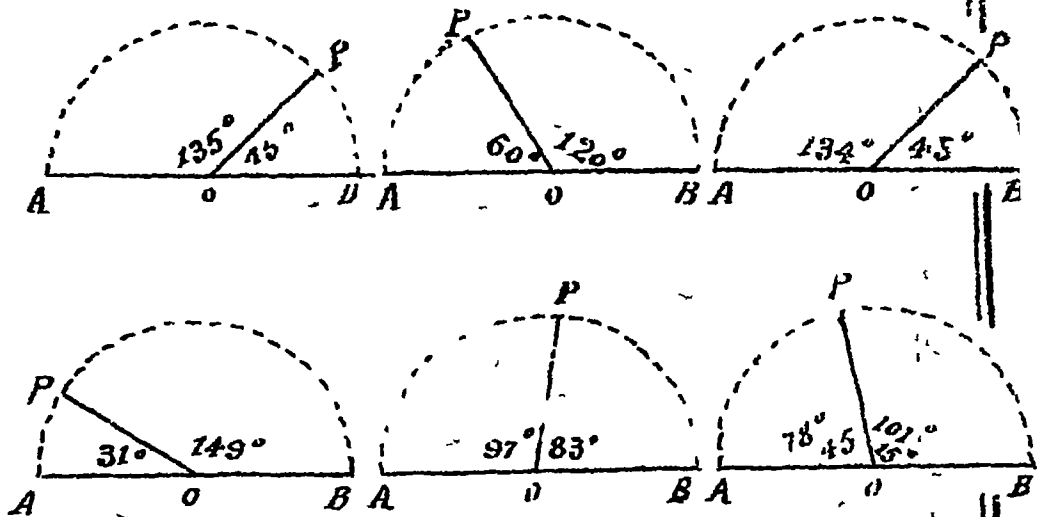
# PART. I.

PAGE 13.

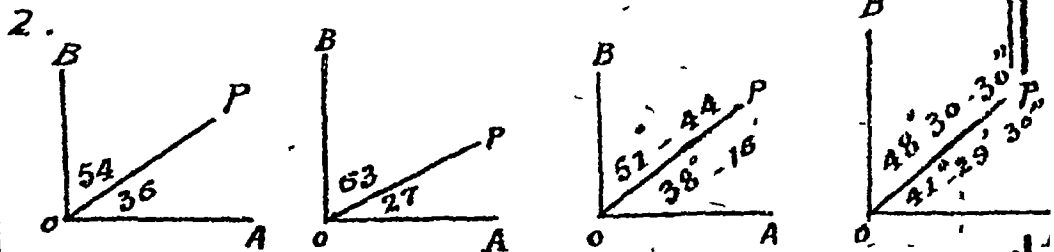
THEOR. 1 & 2.

Exer 1.

Prop. N<sup>o</sup> 1 & 6.

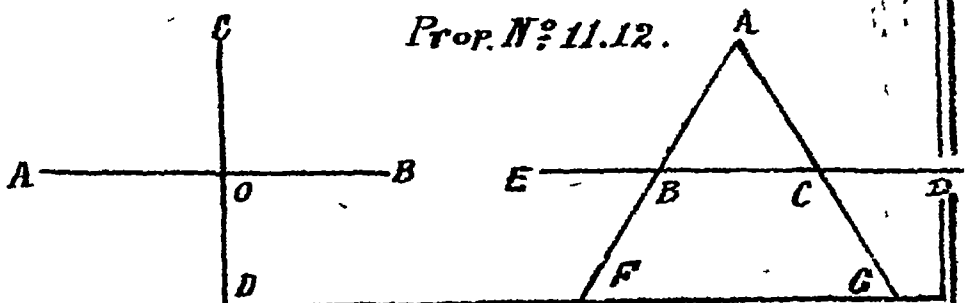


Prop. N<sup>os</sup> 7.8.9.10.



3.

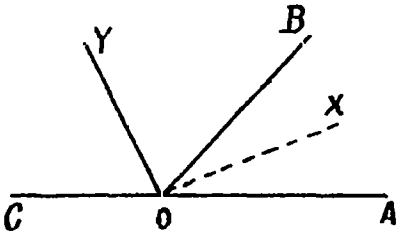
Prop. N<sup>o</sup> 11.12.





Prop. N<sup>o</sup> 13.

6.



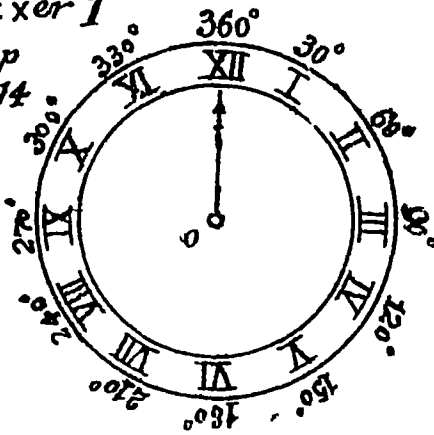
# PART. I

PAGE 15.

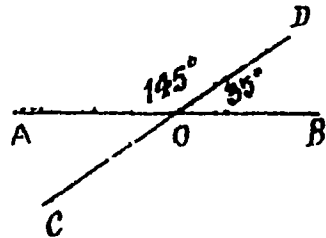
Theor. 3.

Exer 1

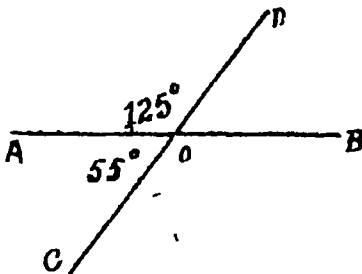
Prop  
N<sup>o</sup> 14  
15.



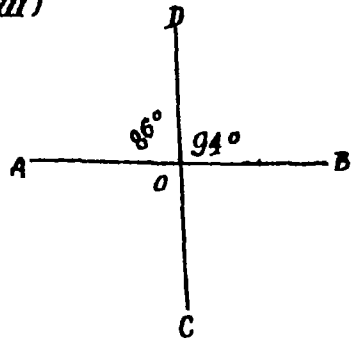
4 (i)



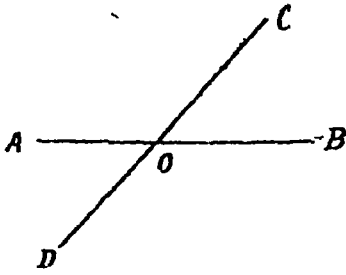
(ii)



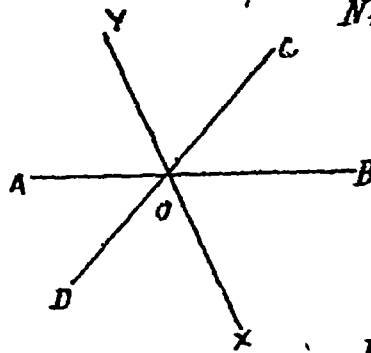
(iii)



5

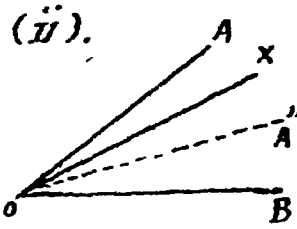
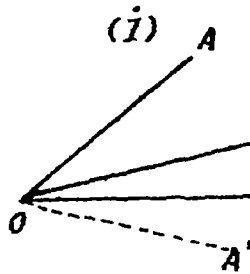
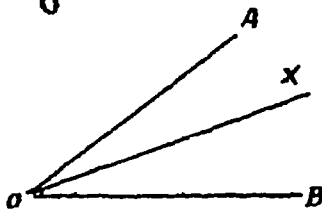


6.



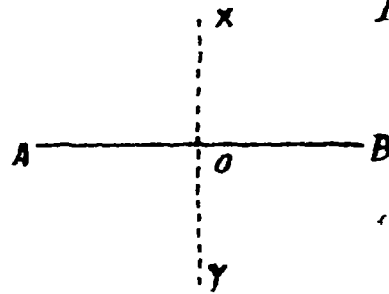
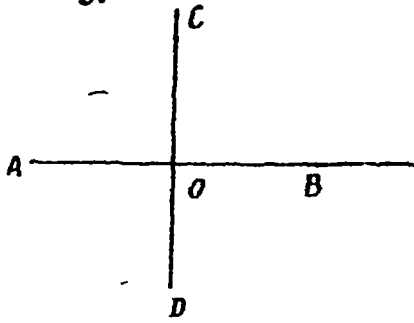
Prop.  
N<sup>o</sup> 16  
17.

8



Prop.  
N<sup>o</sup> 19.

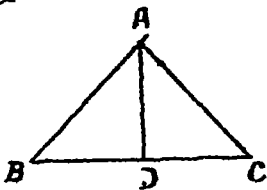
9.



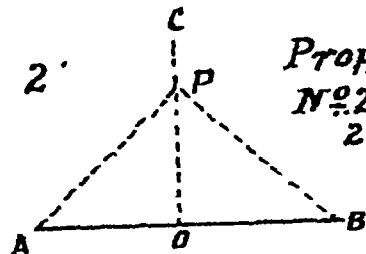
Prop.  
N<sup>o</sup> 20

**PART I.**  
Page 19.  
Theor 4.

Exer. 1



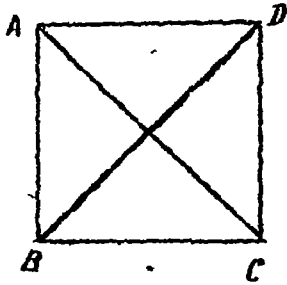
2.



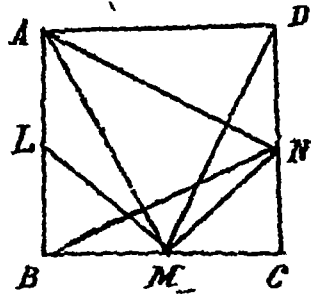
Prop.  
N<sup>o</sup> 22  
23

Prop. No. 24. 25.

3

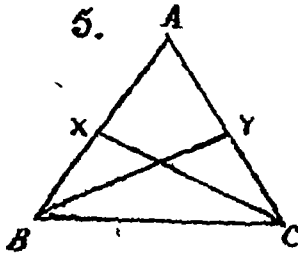


4.



Prop.  
No. 26.

5.



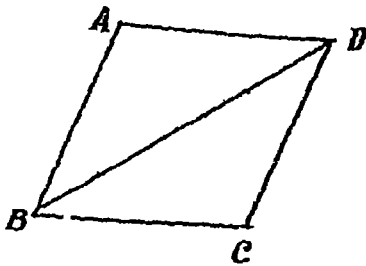
## PART I.

PAGE 21.

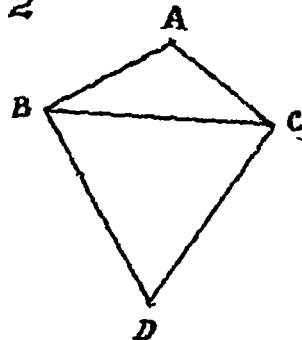
THEOR 5.

Exer. 1.

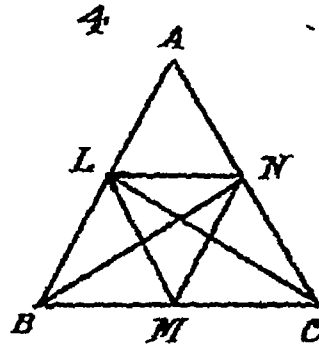
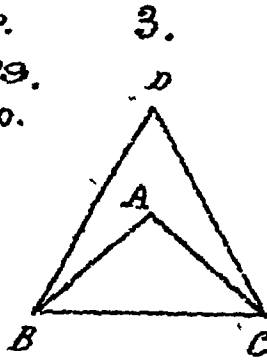
Prop.  
No. 27.  
28.



2



Prop.  
Nº 29.  
30.



# PART. I.

PAGE 26.

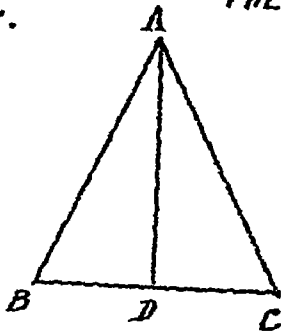
Exer.

THEOR. 4 & 7.

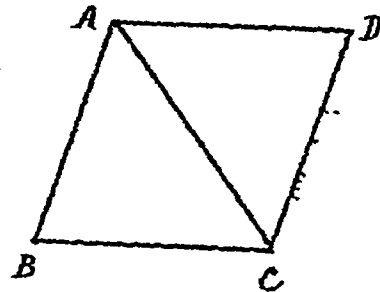
L

PROP.

Nº  
31.  
32.



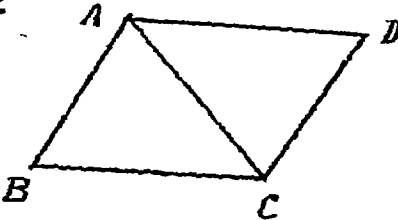
2.



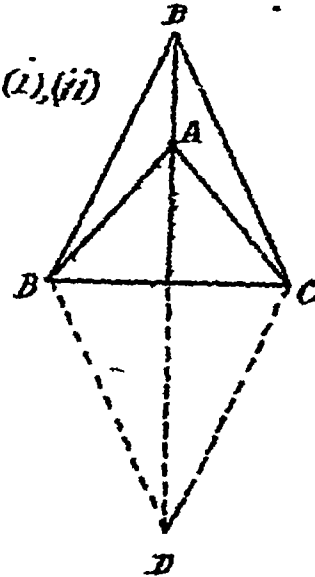
3

PROP.

Nº  
33.  
34.  
35.

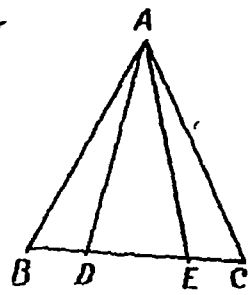


4. (i), (ii)

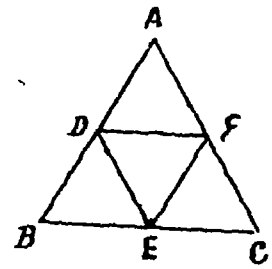


Prop. №  
36-37

7

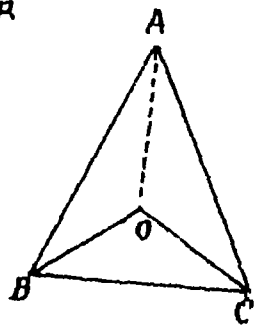


8.

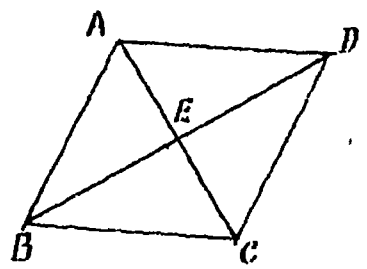


9.

Prop.  
№  
38.  
39.

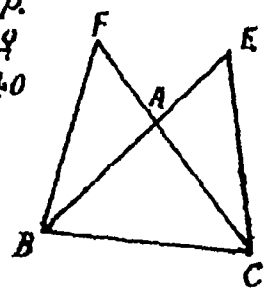


- 10.



II

Prop.  
№  
40



# PART I

PAGE 27.

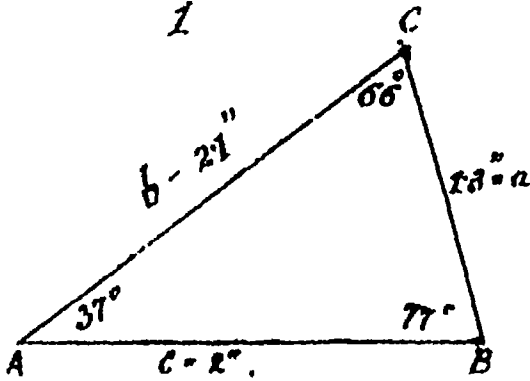
Exer on triangles

Exer.

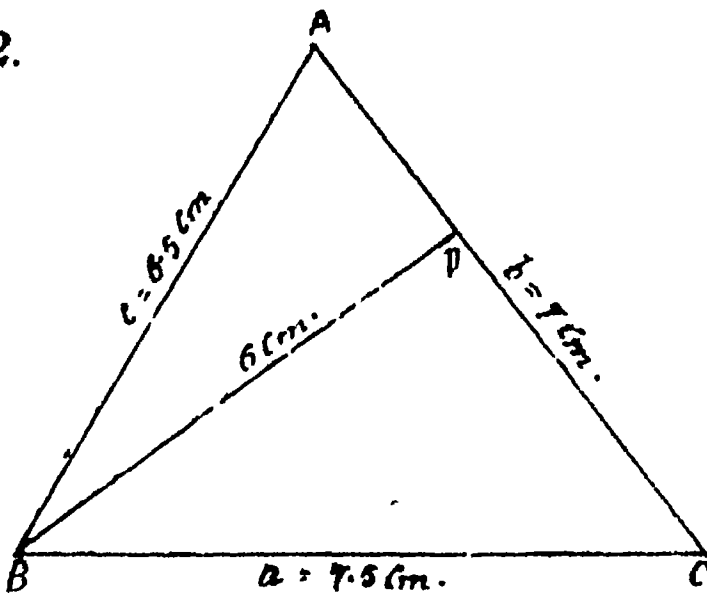
1

Prop. No.

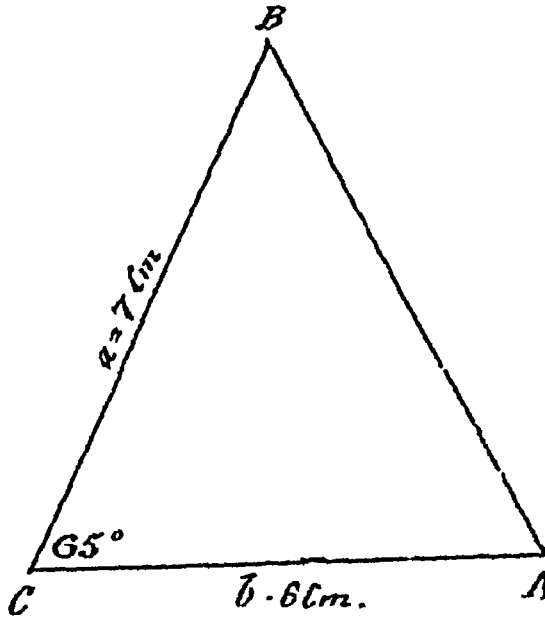
41.



2.

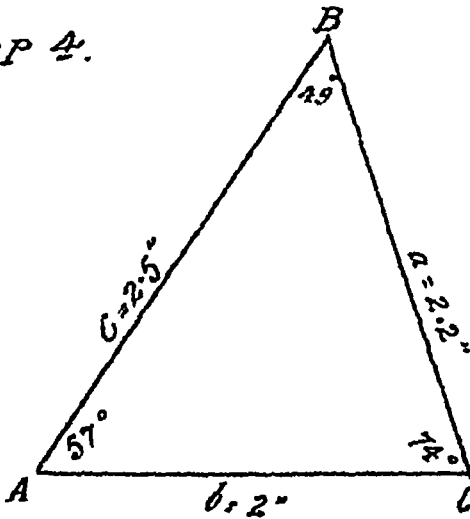


Prop N<sup>o</sup> 42.

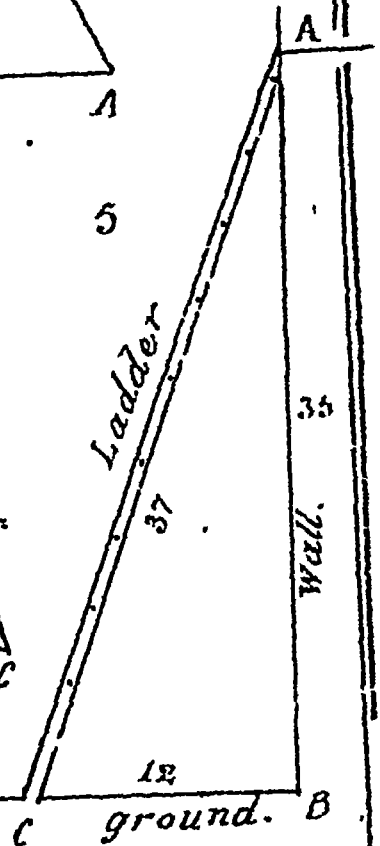


Prop 4.

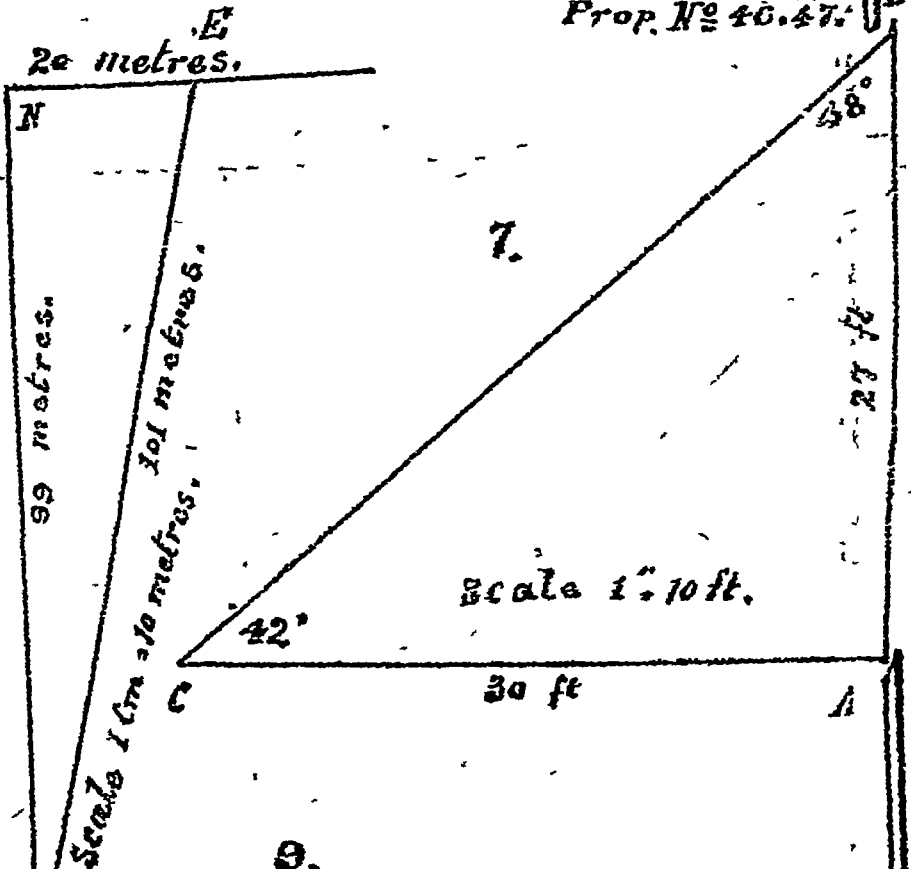
N<sup>o</sup>  
43.  
44.



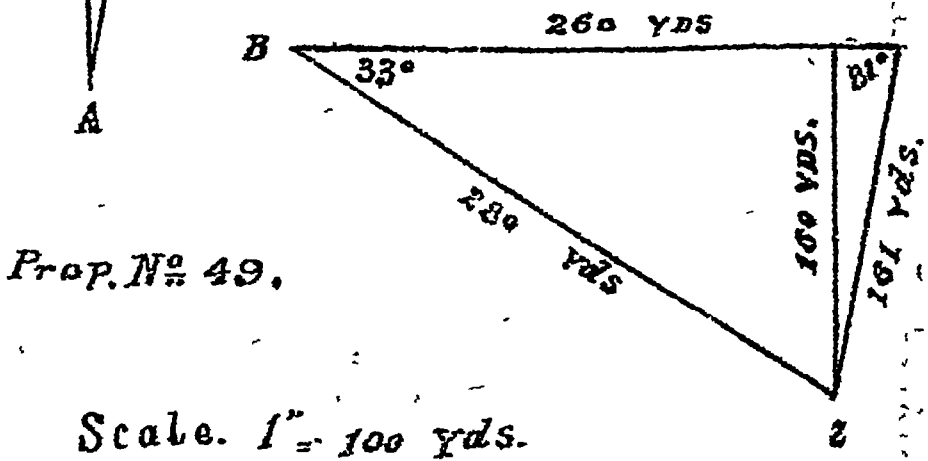
Scale 1" = 10 ft



6.



8.





10

8.

45 yds

90<sup>4</sup>

300428

Scale 1" = 100 yds.

150 yds

**Nº 50.**

10

245 125

320 Yds

La ke

222 Y46

日

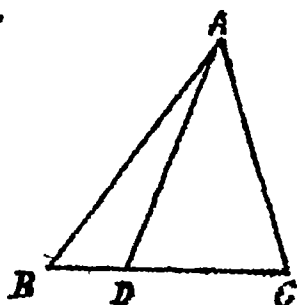
# PART I.

Page 22.

Theor 8.

Exer.

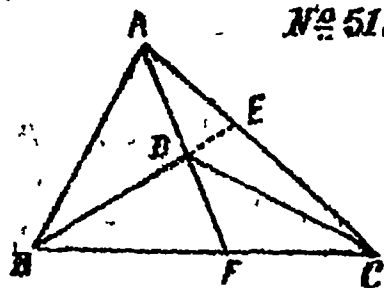
1



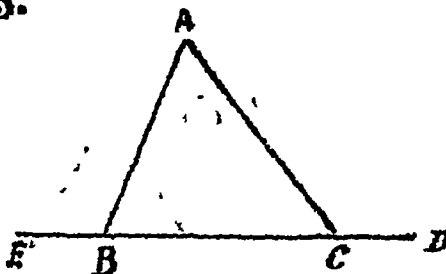
2

Prop.

Nº 51. 52.



3.

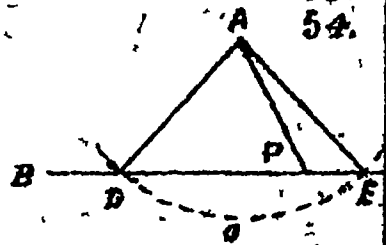


4.

Prop. Nº

53.

54.

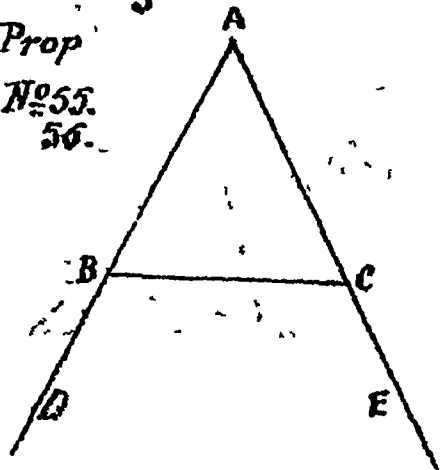


5

Prop

Nº 55.

56.



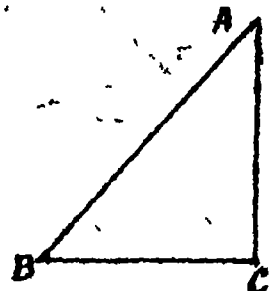
# PART I.

Page 34

Theor. 9-12.

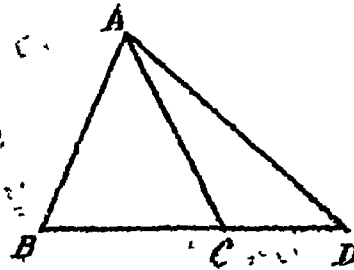
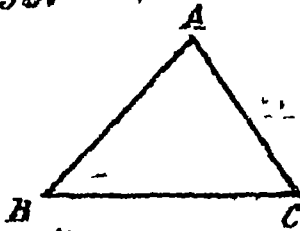
Exer.

1



Prop.

2

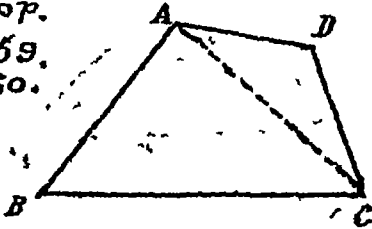
N<sup>o</sup> 57.58.

5

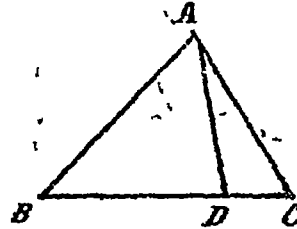
Prop.

N<sup>o</sup> 59.

60.



6



7

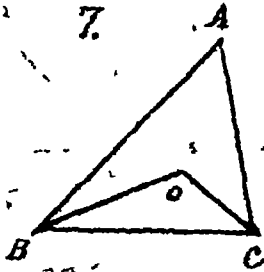
Prop.

N<sup>o</sup> 61.

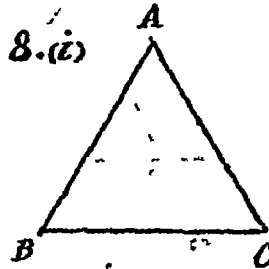
62.

63.

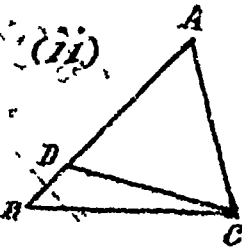
64



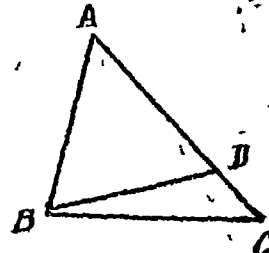
8.(i)



(ii)



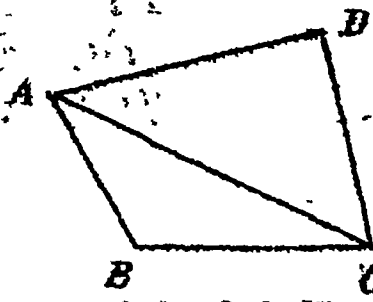
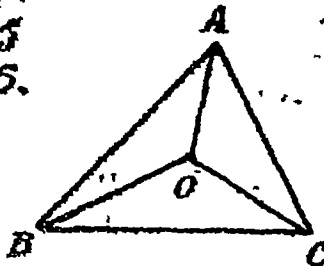
(iii)



9

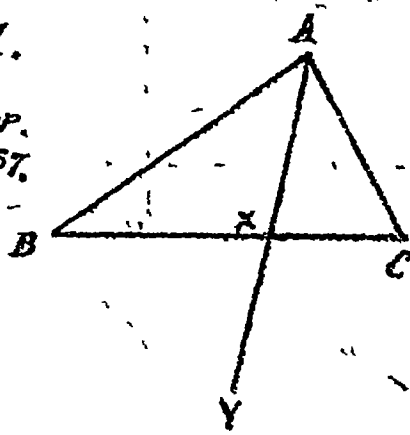
10

Prop.  
N<sup>o</sup> 65  
66.

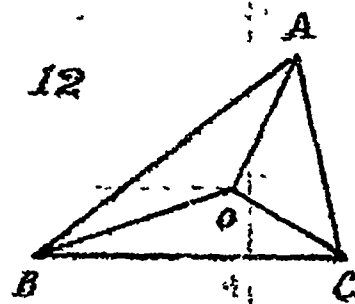


11.

Prop.  
N<sup>o</sup> 67  
68.

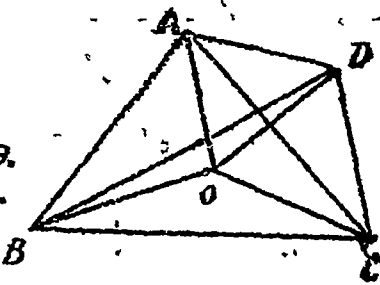


12

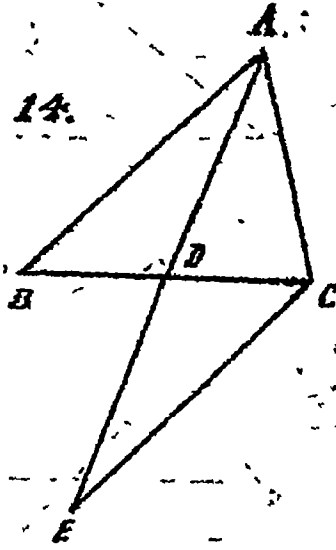


13

Prop.  
N<sup>o</sup> 69  
70.

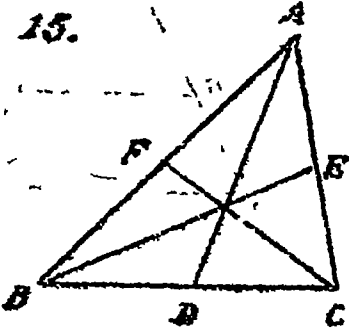


14.



15.

Prop.  
N<sup>o</sup> 71



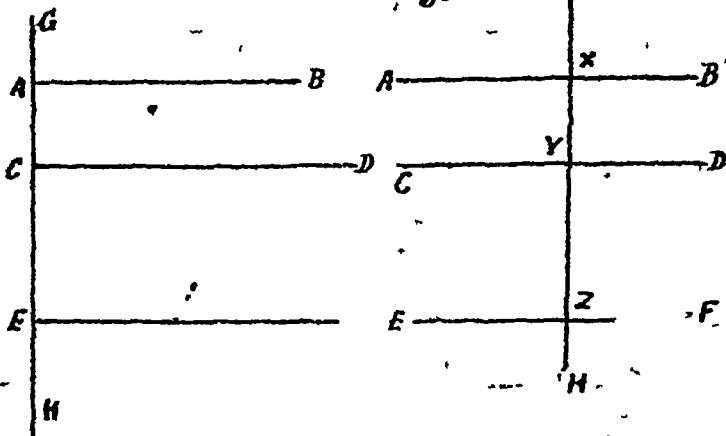
# PART I

Page 41.

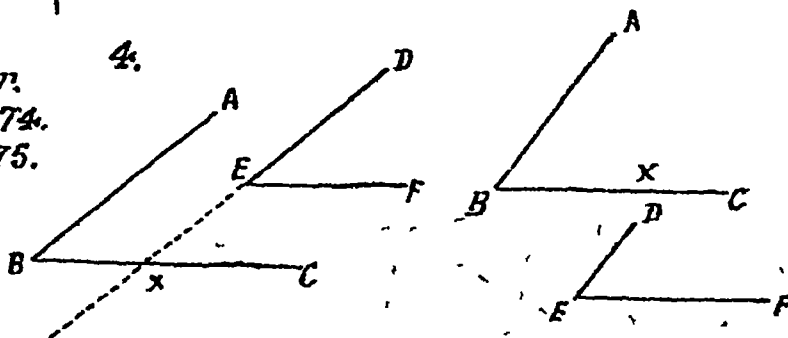
Theor 13-15.

Prop.  
N<sup>o</sup> 72 73.

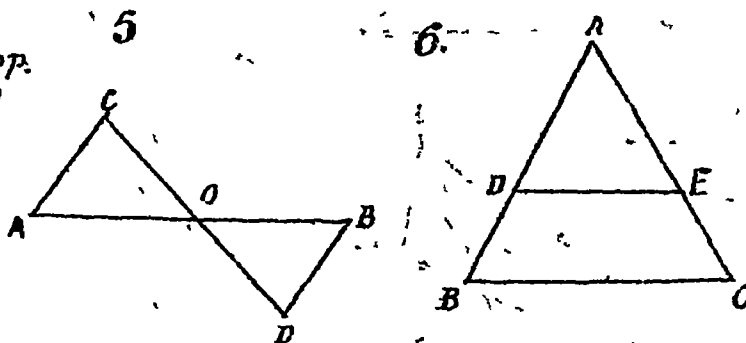
Exer. 2



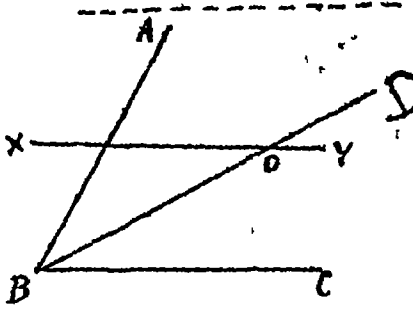
Prop.  
N<sup>o</sup> 74.  
75.



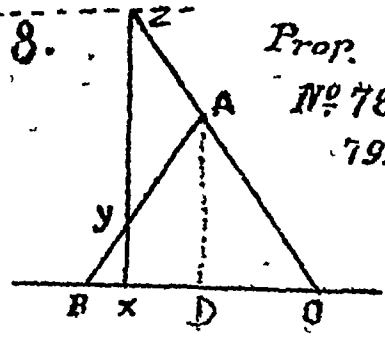
Prop.  
N<sup>o</sup> 76.  
77.



7.

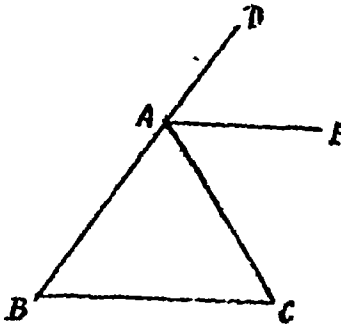


8.

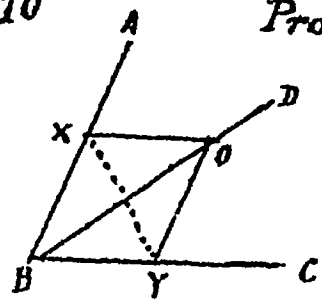


Prop. No. 78.  
79.

9.

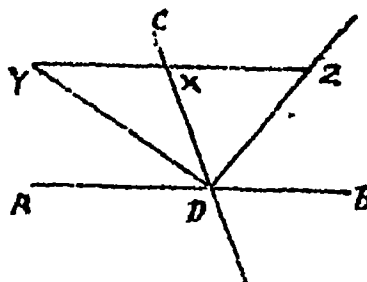


10



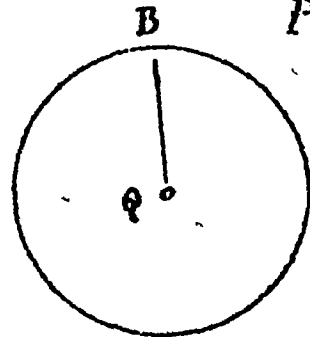
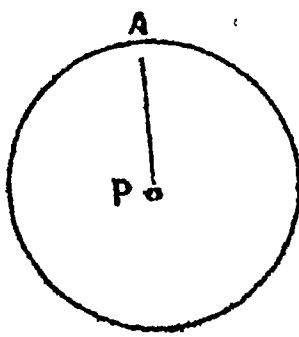
Prop. No. 80  
81.

11



Prop. No. 82.

12



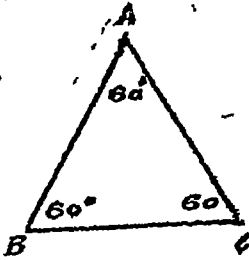
Prop. No. 83.  
84.

**PART I.**

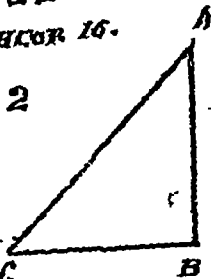
Prop. No

PAGE 48.  
THCOR 16.

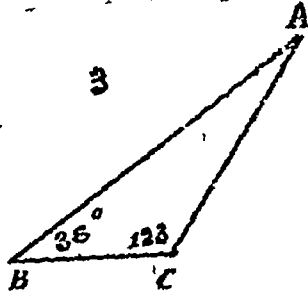
85.



86.



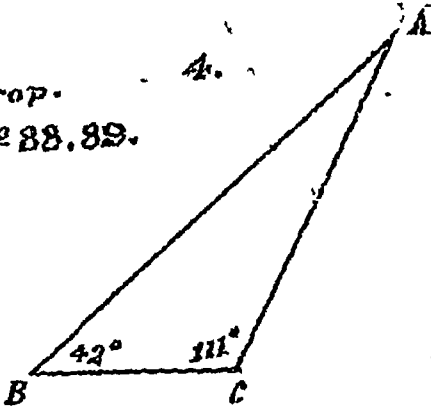
87.



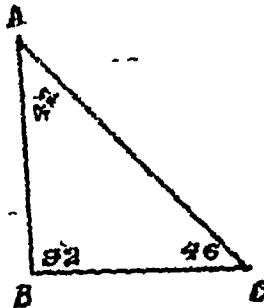
*Prop.*

**Nº 88.89.**

4.



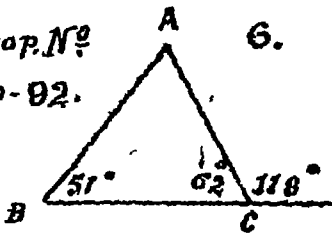
5.



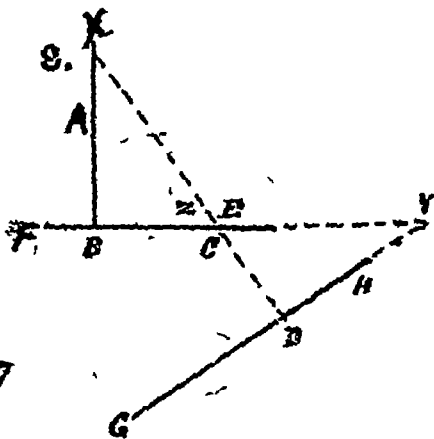
*Prop. No.*

90-02.

6.

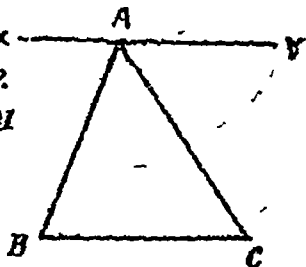


g.



Prop.  
№ 91

7

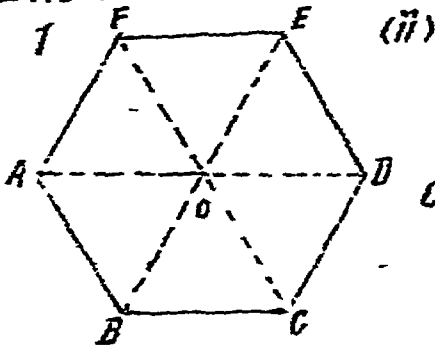


# PART I

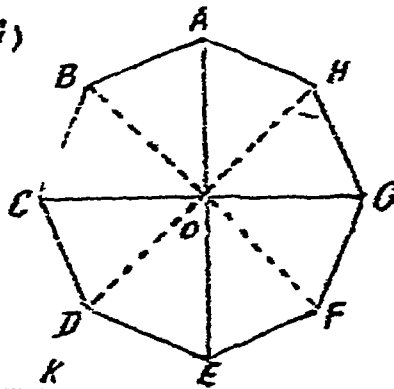
Page 44.

Theor. 18. Cor 1

Exer.



(ii)



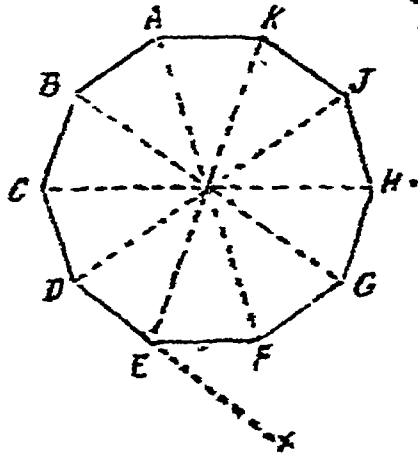
Prop.

Nº.

93.

94.

(iii)



Prop.

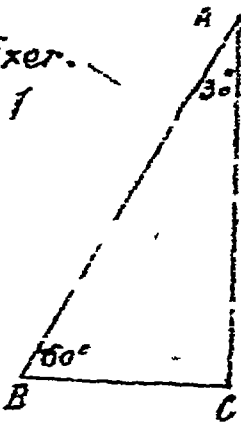
Nº 95

# PART I

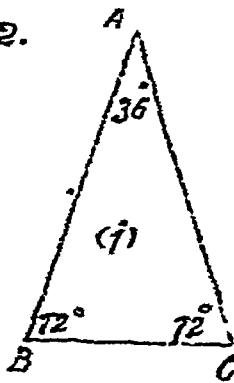
Page 45

Theor 16.

Exer.



2.



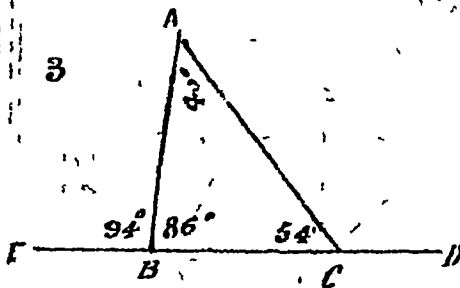
Prop.

Nº 96.

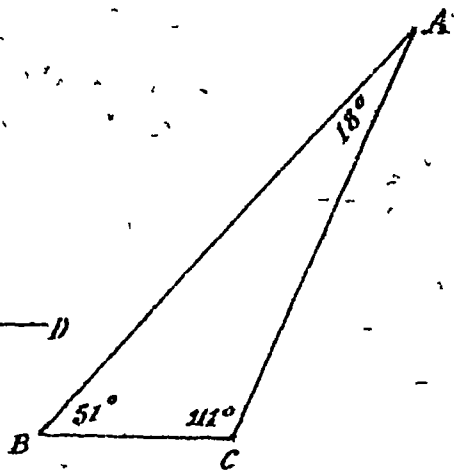
97.



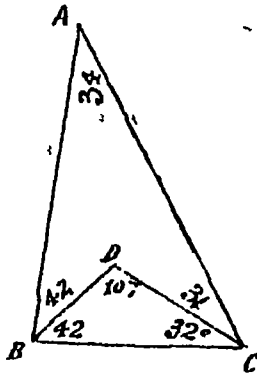
Prop. N<sup>o</sup> 98 99.



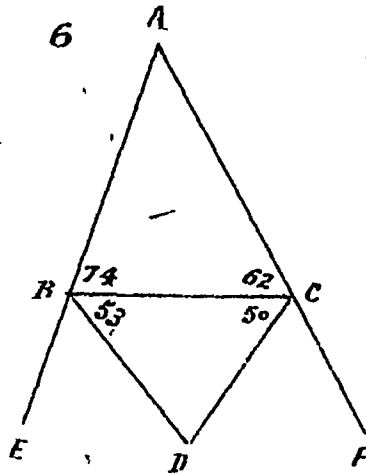
Prop. N<sup>o</sup> 100. 101.



5

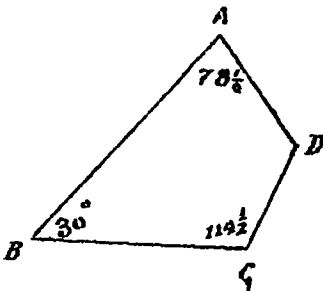


6

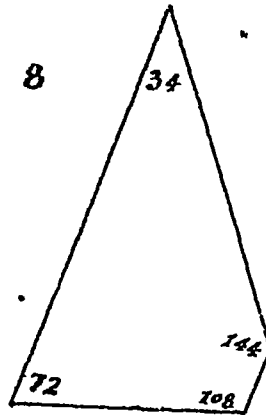


Prop.  
N<sup>o</sup> 102 103

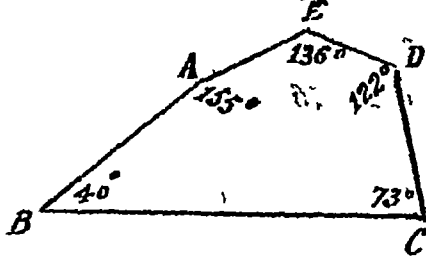
7.



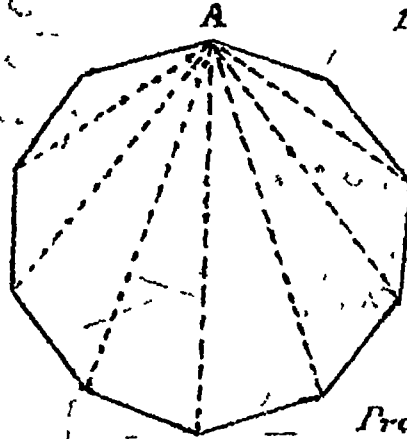
8



9



10



Prop: N<sup>o</sup>

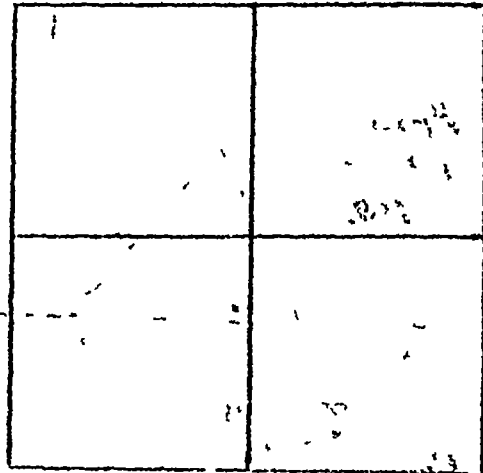
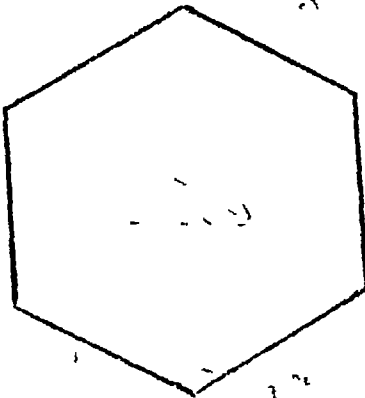
104

105

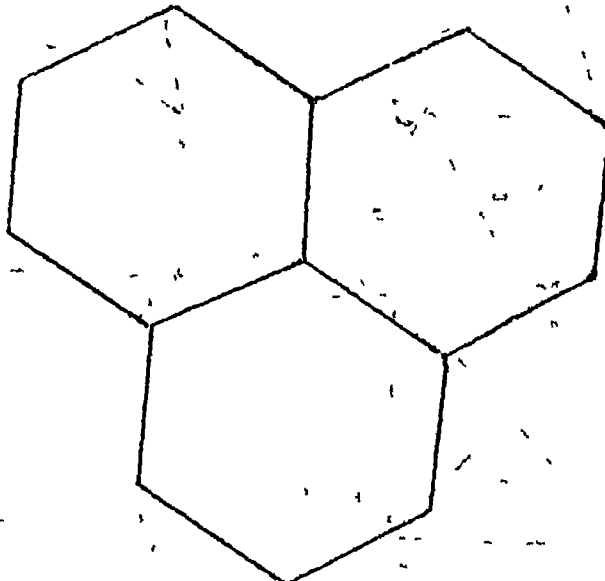
12.

(i)

(ii)



(iii)



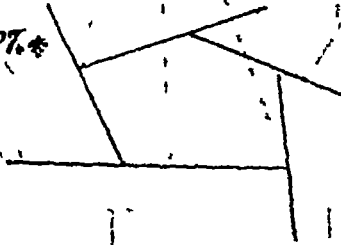
Prop: N<sup>o</sup>

106

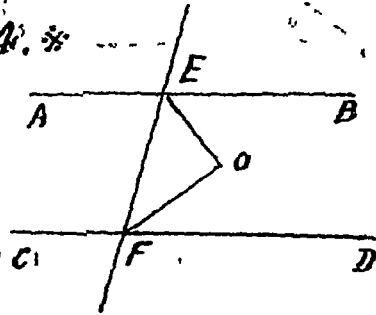
## PART I

Page 47.  
Cor 2 Theor 16.

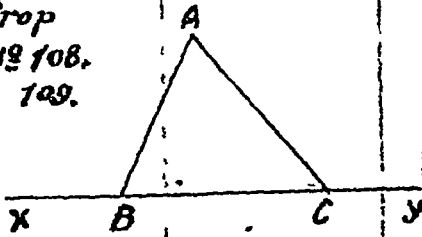
Exer. 1.

Prop  
N<sup>o</sup> 107.\*

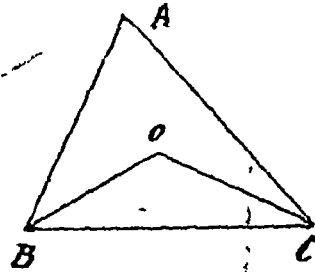
4.\*



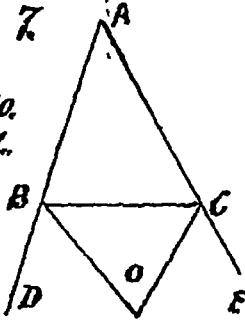
5.

Prop  
N<sup>o</sup> 108.  
109.

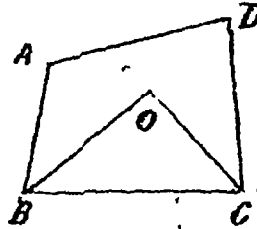
6.



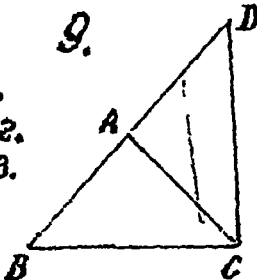
7.

Prop.  
N<sup>o</sup> 110.  
111.

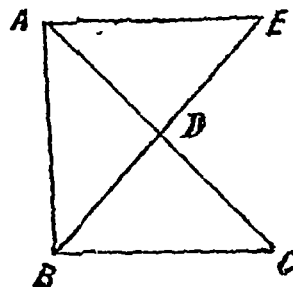
8.



9.

Prop.  
N<sup>o</sup> 112.  
113.

10.



# PART I

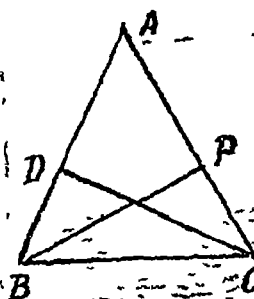
PAGE 49

Theor. 17.

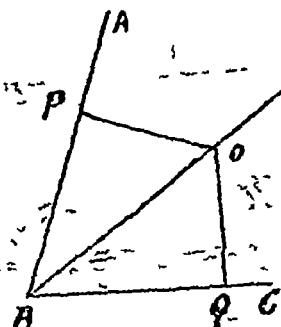
Exer.

Prop  
N<sup>o</sup> 114  
115.

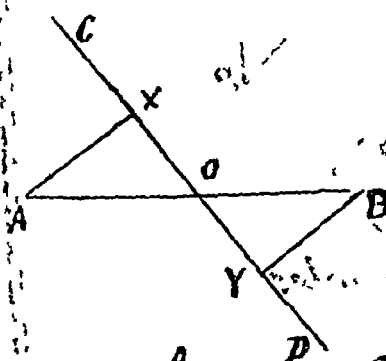
1.



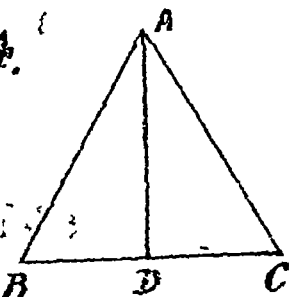
2.



3.

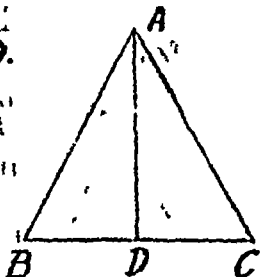


4.

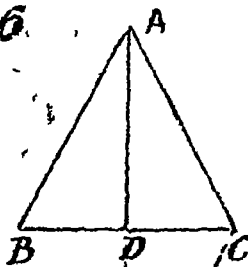


Prop.  
N<sup>o</sup>  
116.  
117.

5.

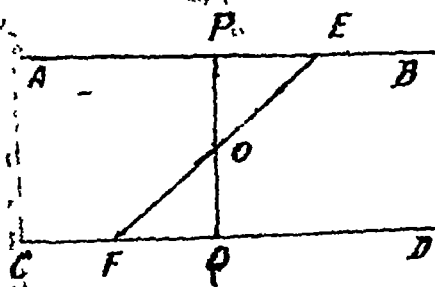


6.

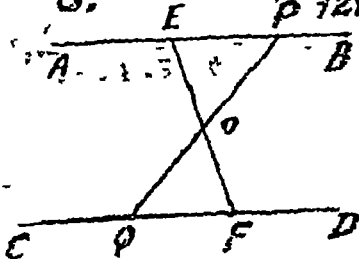


Prop.  
N<sup>o</sup>  
118.  
119.

7.

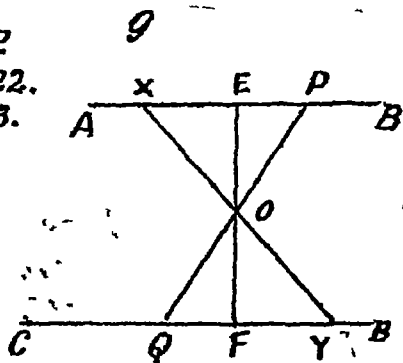


8.

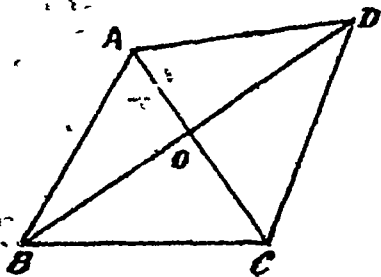


Prop.  
N<sup>o</sup> 120.  
p 121.

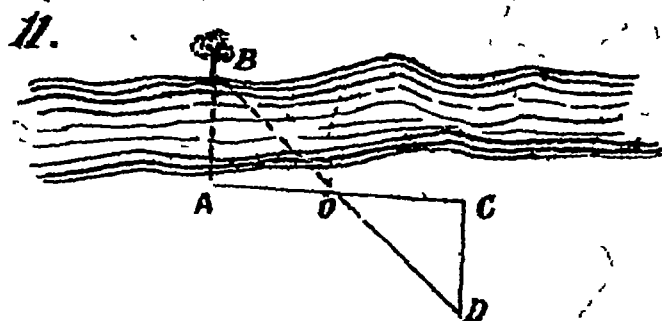
Prop.  
No 122.  
123.



10



Prop.  
No 124.



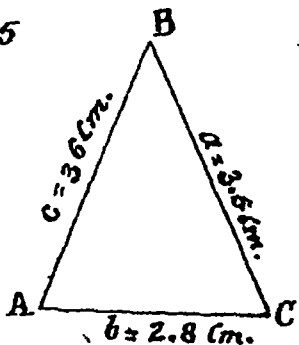
# PART I.

Page. 54  
On Triangles

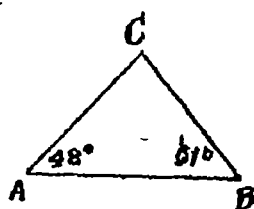
Exer.

3

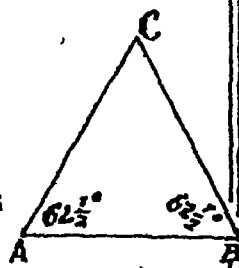
Prop.  
No 125  
126  
127.



4 (i)

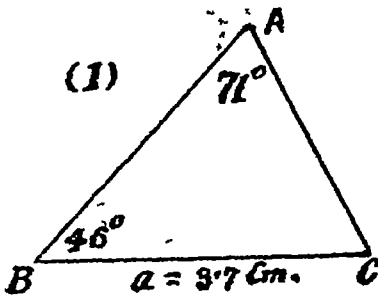


(ii)



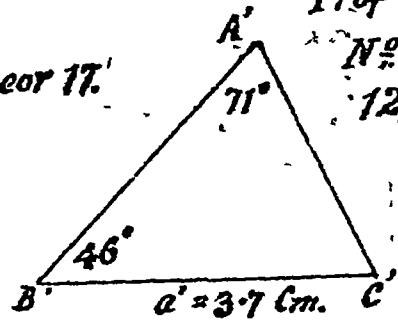
5

(1)

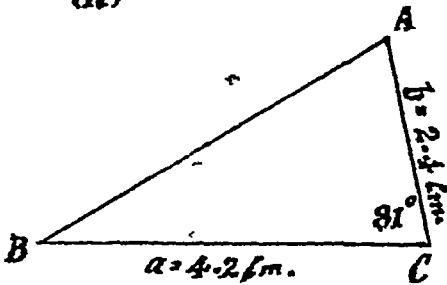


Theor 17.

Prop  
N<sup>o</sup>  
128.

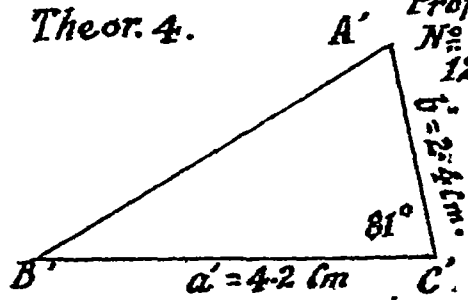


(ii)

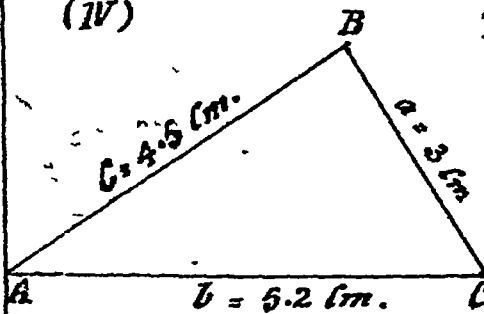


Theor. 4.

Prop.  
N<sup>o</sup>  
129.

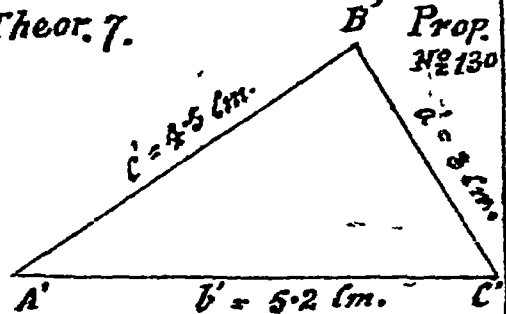


(iv)

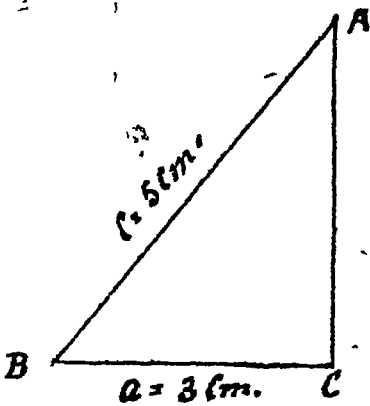


Theor. 7.

Prop.  
N<sup>o</sup> 130

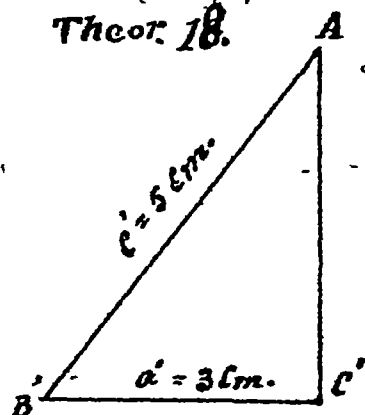


(vi)



Theor. 18.

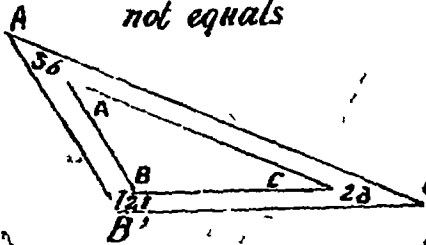
Prop.  
N<sup>o</sup> 131



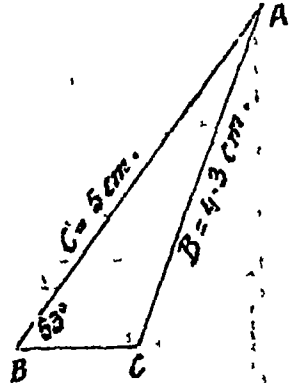
Prop. (iii)

N<sup>o</sup> 132.

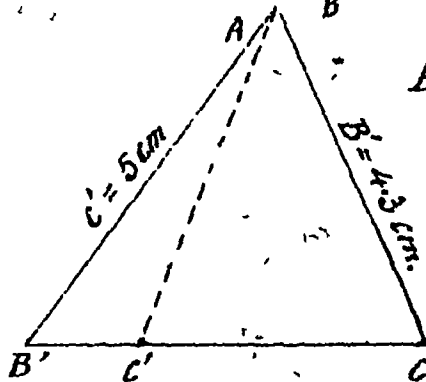
Triangles not equals



✓



Ambiguous case.

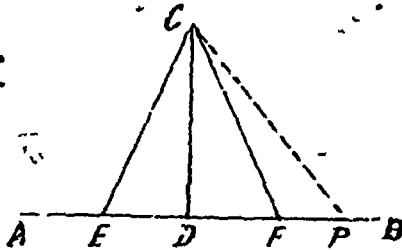


Prop.

N<sup>o</sup> 134.

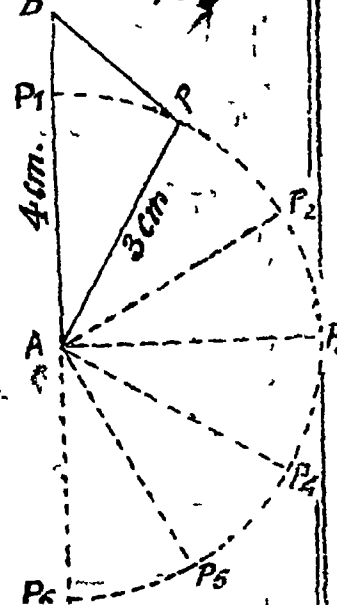
136.

8.



II. B

N<sup>o</sup> 136



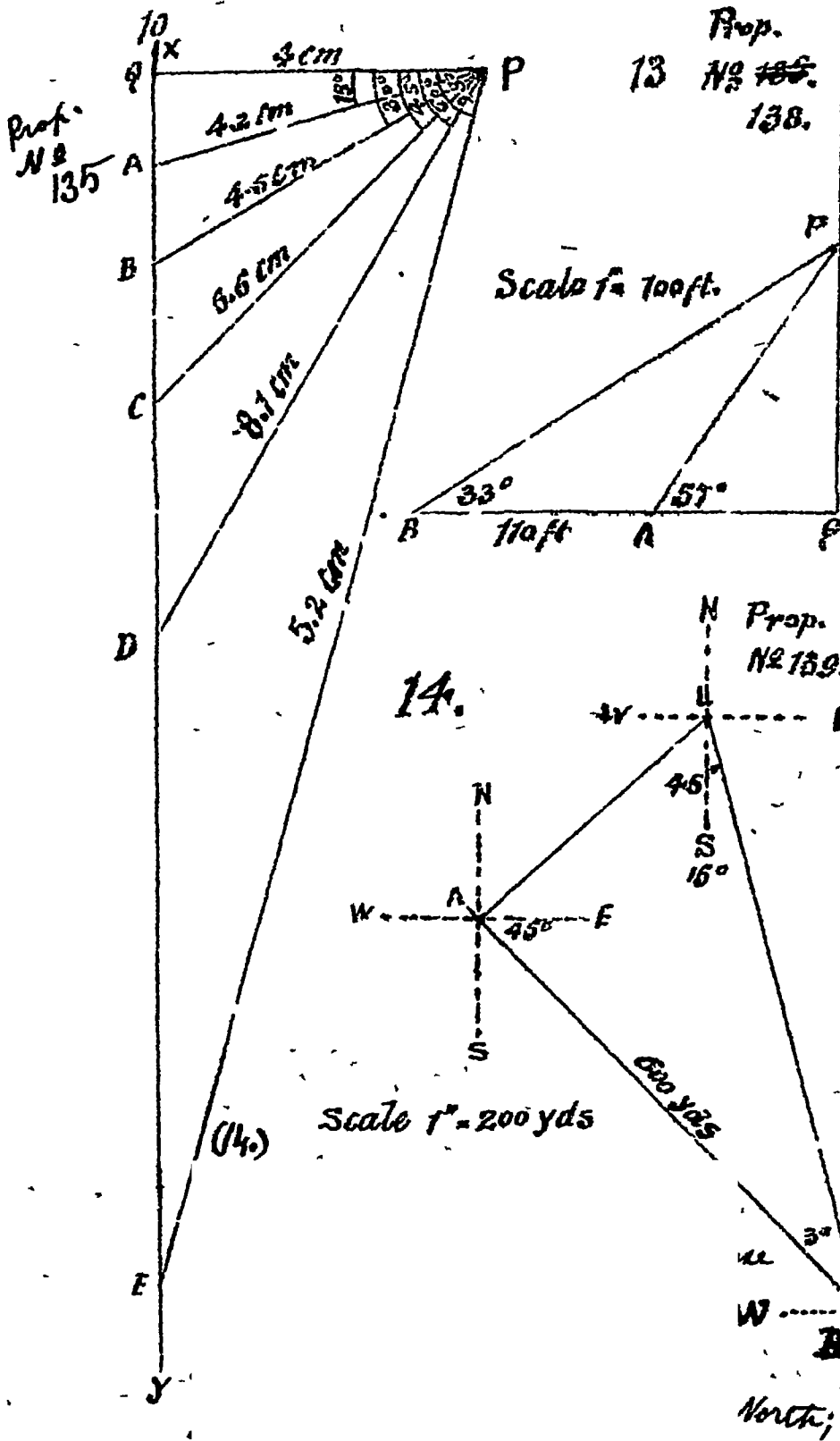
Prop.

N<sup>o</sup> 137.

12

Scale  
1 in = 10 cm.





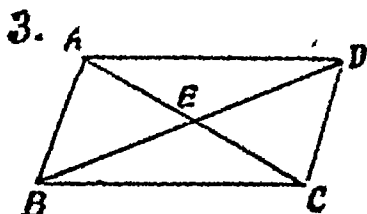
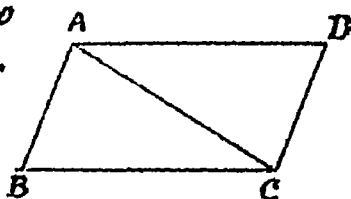
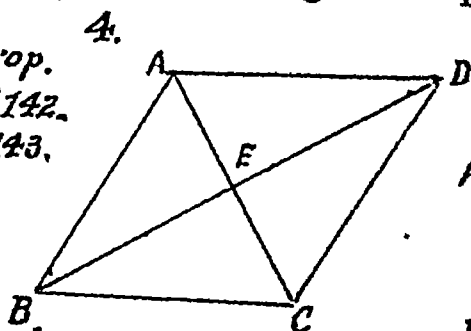


## PART I

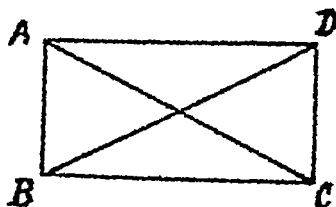
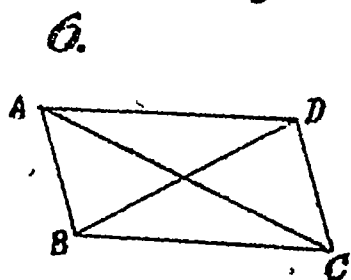
Page 59.

Theor 20.21.

Exer 1.

Prop.  
N<sup>o</sup> 140  
141.Prop.  
N<sup>o</sup> 142.  
143.

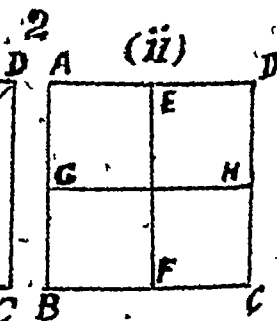
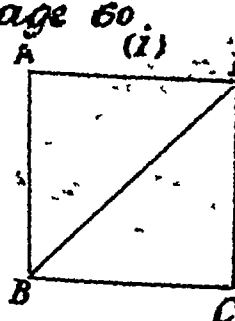
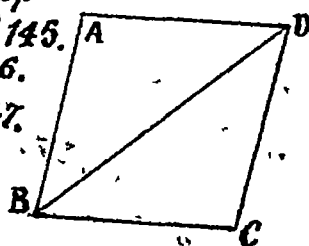
5.

Prop.  
N<sup>o</sup> 144.  
145.

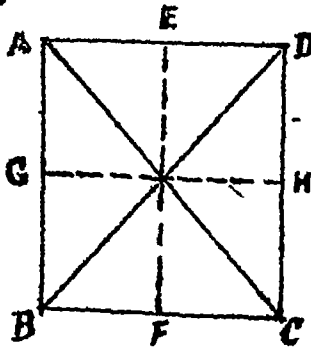
## PART I

Page 60.

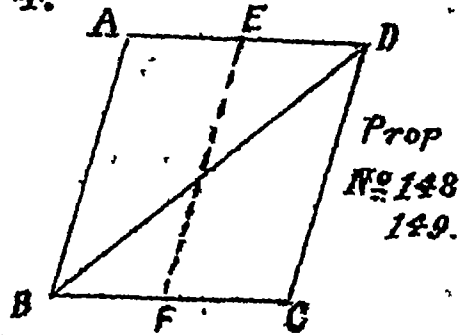
Exer. 1.

Prop.  
N<sup>o</sup> 145.  
146.  
147.

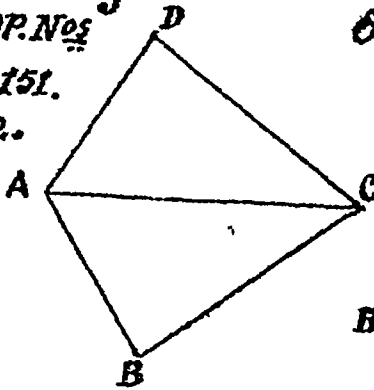
3.



4.

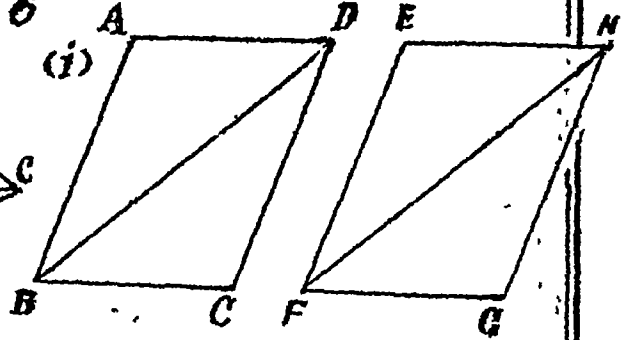


Prop. Nos 5  
150. 151.  
152.

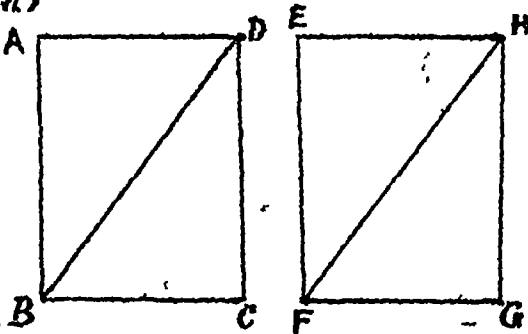


6

(i)

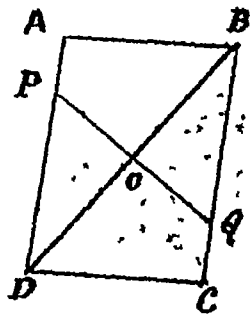


(ii)



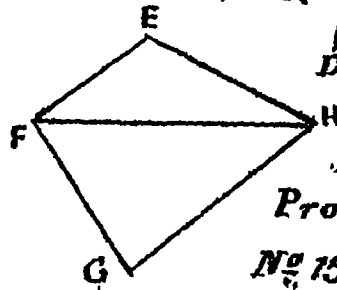
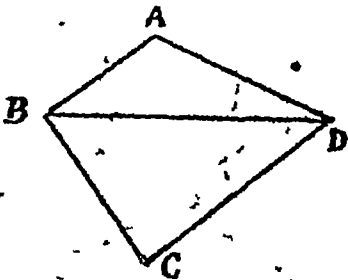
Prop. No.  
153. 154.

8.



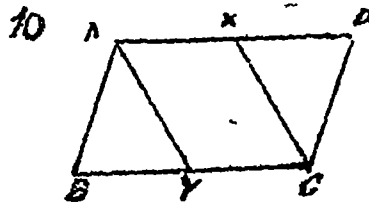
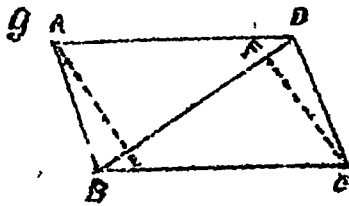
Prop.  
No 159.

7.

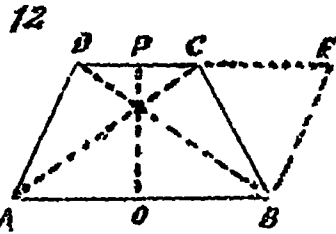
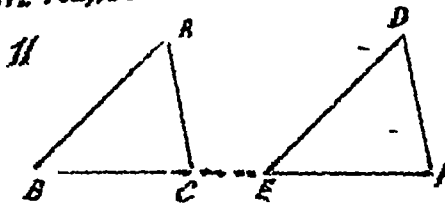


Prop  
No 155. 156.

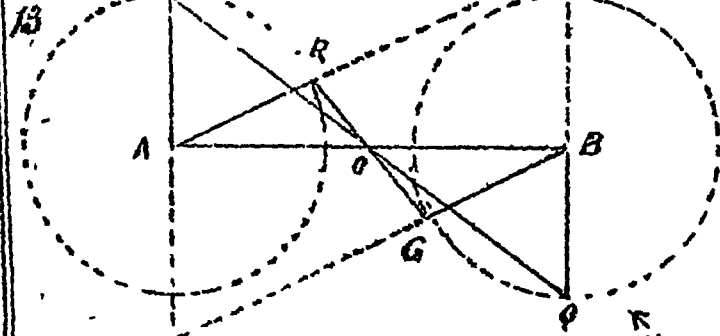
Prop  
N<sup>o</sup> 160, 161



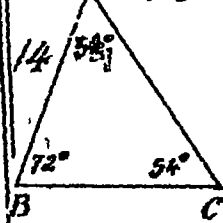
Prop  
N<sup>o</sup> 162, 163



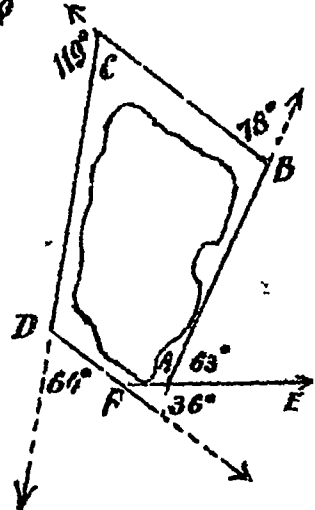
Prop  
N<sup>o</sup> 164



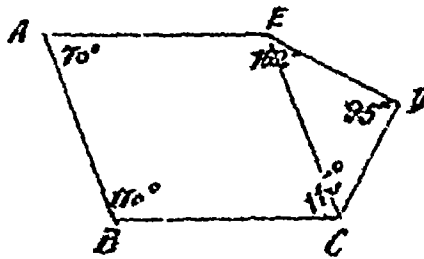
Prop  
N<sup>o</sup> 166  
166 A  $\alpha = 126^\circ$



15.

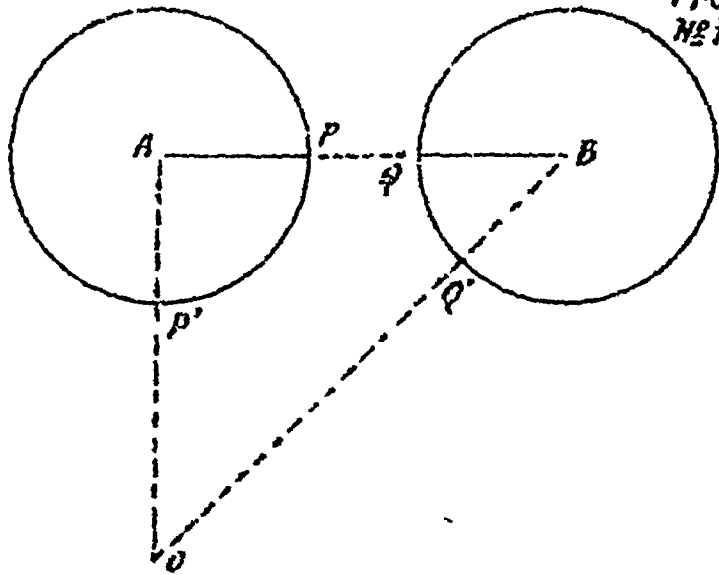


17.



Prop.  
N<sup>o</sup> 167

18.



Prop.  
N<sup>o</sup> 168.

# PART I

page 64.

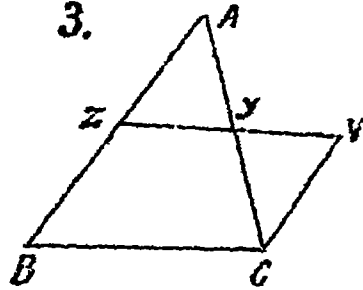
Theor 22.

Exor

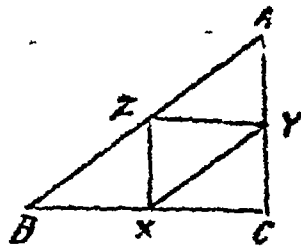
1 & 2. one solved in the Book.

Prop  
N<sup>o</sup> 169.  
170.

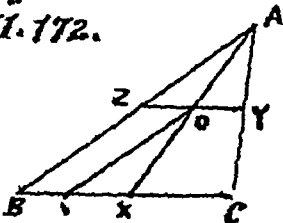
3.



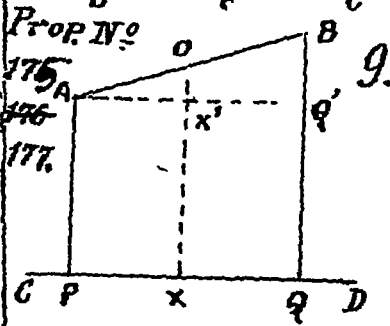
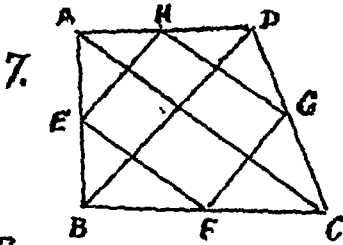
4.



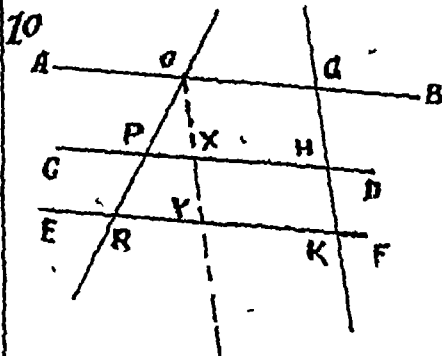
Prop. 5.  
N<sup>o</sup>  
171. 172.



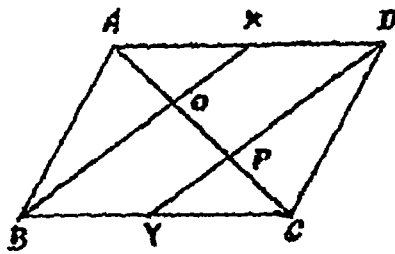
Prop. N<sup>o</sup> 173-174.



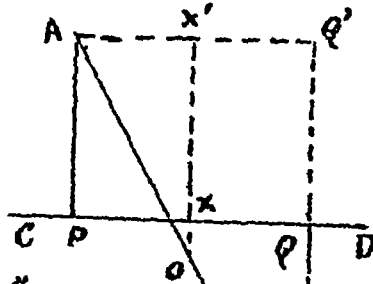
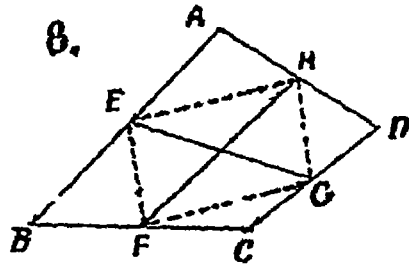
Prop. N<sup>o</sup> 178. 179 Scale 1" = 5 cm.



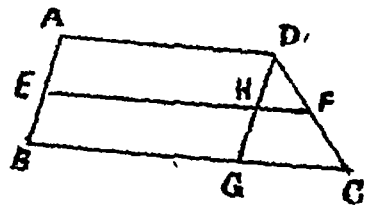
6



8.

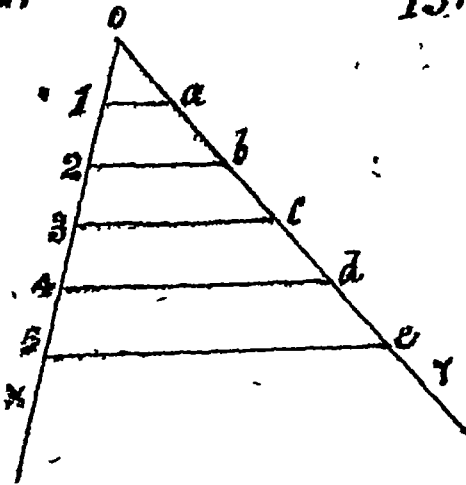


11.

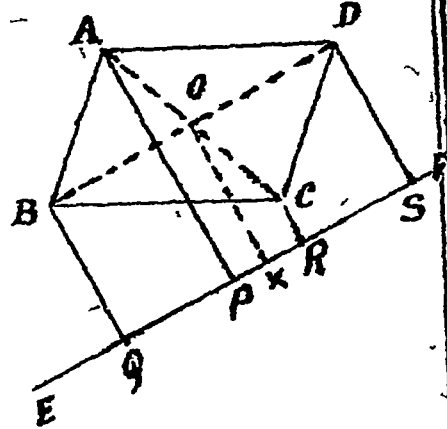


Prop. N<sup>o</sup> 180.  
181

12.



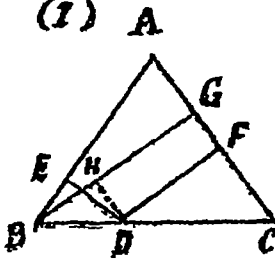
13.



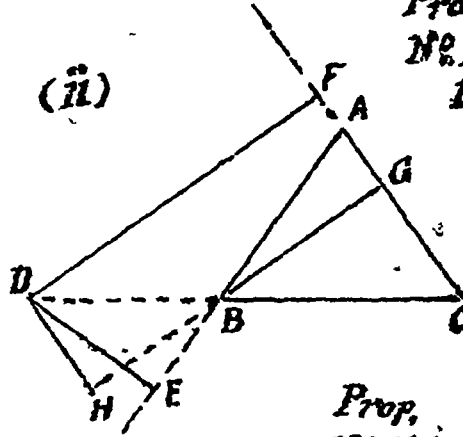
Prop.  
N<sup>o</sup> 182.  
183.

14.

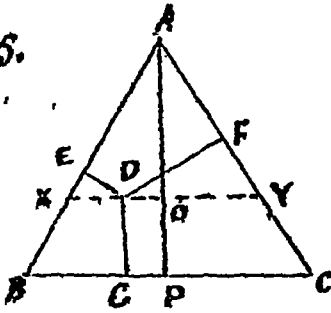
(i)



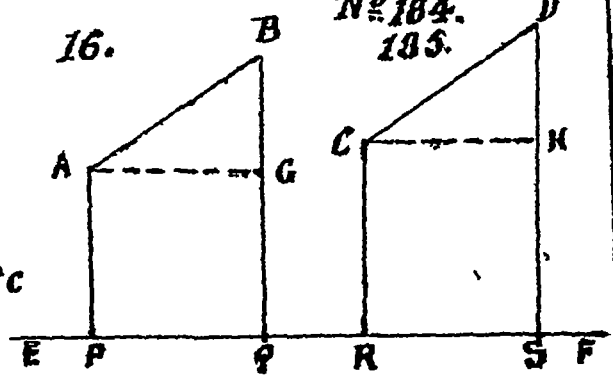
(ii)



15.



16.



Prop.  
N<sup>o</sup> 184.  
185.

## PART I

Page 68.

On linear measurement

Exer.

$$\begin{array}{r}
 1 \quad \underline{1.25''} \\
 \quad \underline{2.72''} \\
 \hline
 \quad \quad 3.97''
 \end{array}$$

$$\begin{array}{r}
 2 \quad \underline{2.68''} \\
 \quad \underline{6.8 \text{ cm.}} \quad \text{or} \quad \frac{2.68}{0.3937} = 6.76 \text{ cm.}
 \end{array}$$

$$\begin{array}{r}
 3. \quad \underline{5.7 \text{ cm.}} \quad 5.7 \times 0.3937 \\
 \quad \quad 2.25'' \text{ nearly} \quad = 2.44''
 \end{array}$$

$$4 \quad \begin{array}{c} A \quad \underline{\hspace{2cm}} \quad B \end{array}$$

The line represents  $3.15''$ By measure A.R. is found  $7.93 \text{ cm.}$ 

$$\therefore 1 \text{ cm} = 0.39'' \text{ in.}$$

$$\begin{array}{r}
 5 \quad \begin{array}{c} A \quad \underline{2.9 \text{ cm}} \quad B \\ C \quad \underline{6.2 \text{ cm.}} \quad D \end{array}
 \end{array}$$

(i) By measure  $AB = 1.15'' \text{ in.}$ (ii) " "  $CD = 2.47'' \text{ in.}$ & from (i)  $1'' = 2.52 \text{ cm.}$ & from (ii)  $1'' = 2.57 \text{ cm.}$ 

$$\begin{array}{r}
 2 \overline{) 5.09} \\
 \therefore \text{average} = 2.54 \text{ cm.}
 \end{array}$$

6.

$$3.36'' = 336 \text{ miles}$$


---

$$4.08'' = 408 \text{ miles}$$


---

7.

$$\text{————— } 0.85'' = 850 \text{ Km.}$$


---

$$2.98'' = 2980 \text{ metres.}$$


---

$$\text{————— } 1.01'' = 1010 \text{ metres.}$$

8.

$$4.17'' = 417 \text{ Links} = 10.6 \text{ cm.}$$

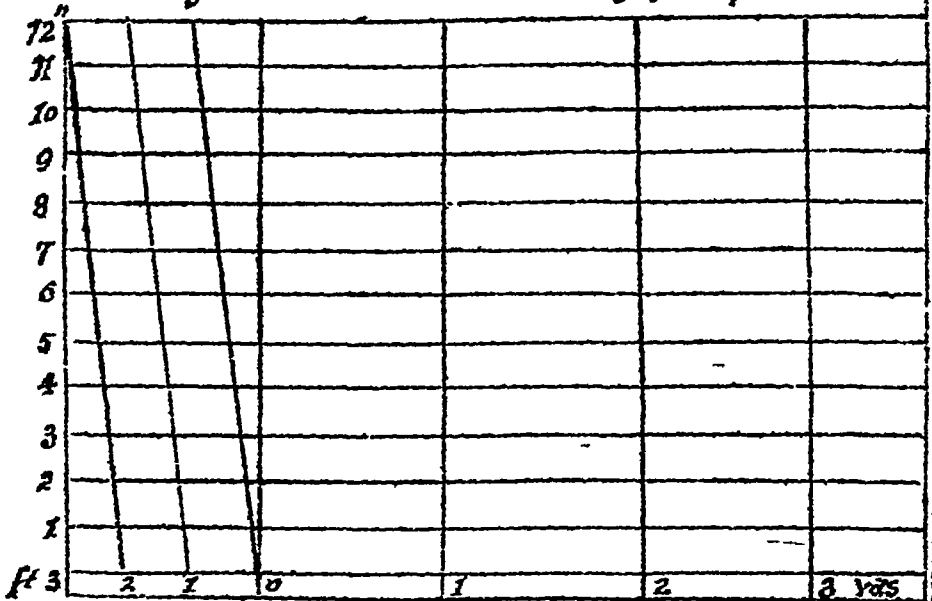

---

9.

$$42.5 \text{ Km} = 8.5 \text{ cm.} = 3.35''$$


---

13. Diagonal Scale, showing yds. fts &amp; ins





PART. I.

Page 79.

Prob 1.7.

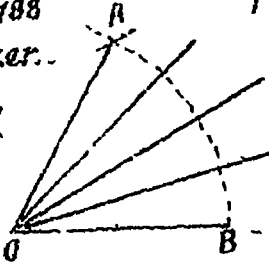
Prop

Nº 187

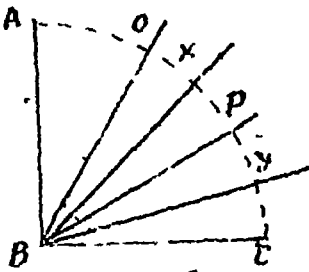
188

Exer.

1



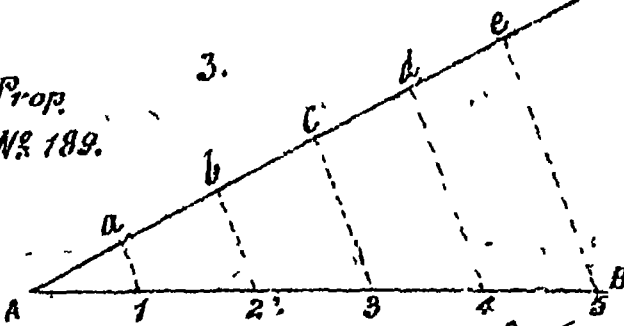
2



Prop.

Nº 189.

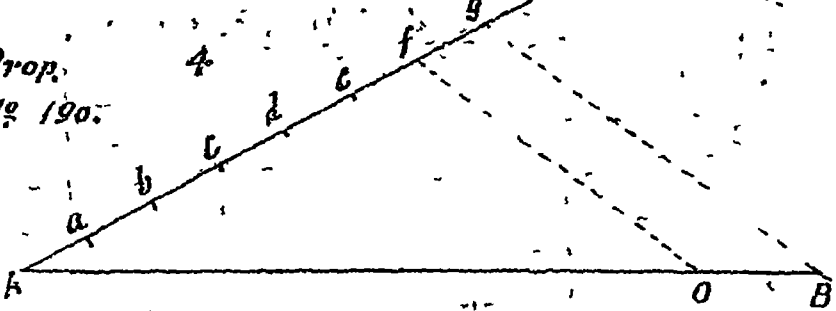
3.



Prop.

Nº 190.

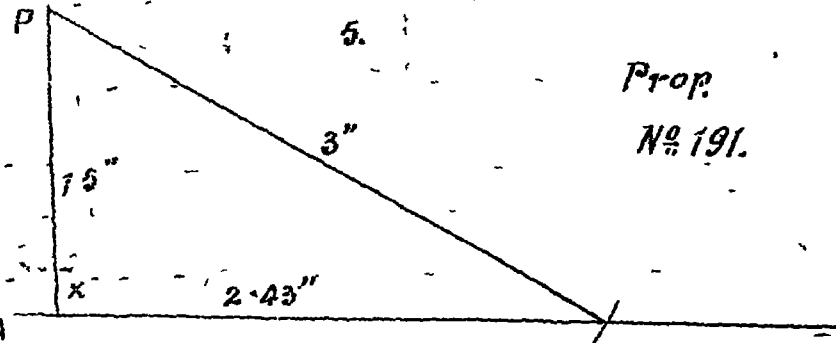
4.

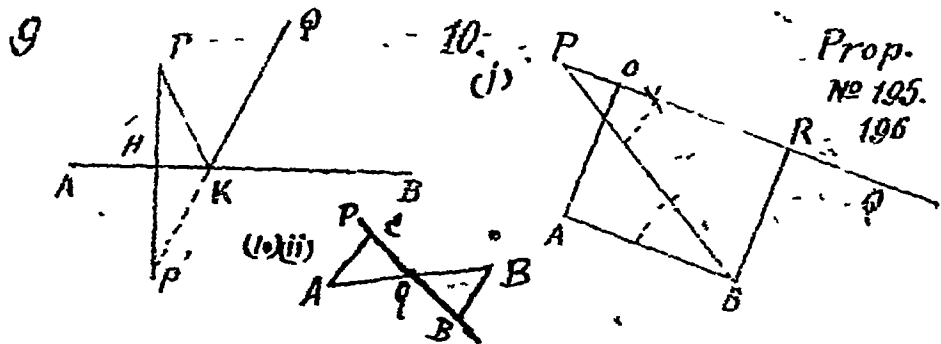
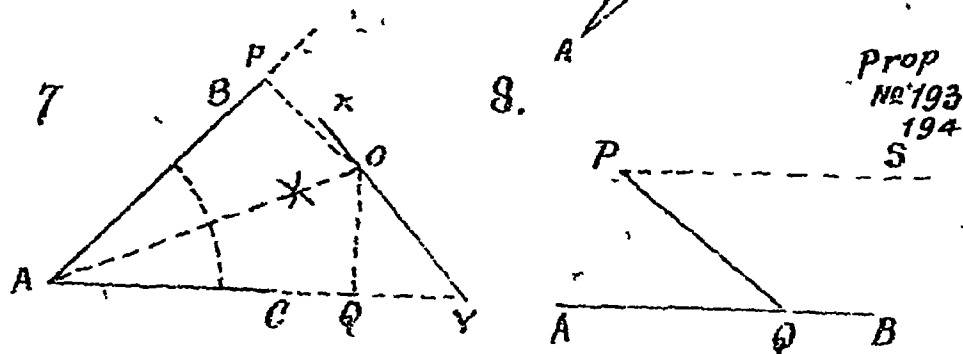


5.

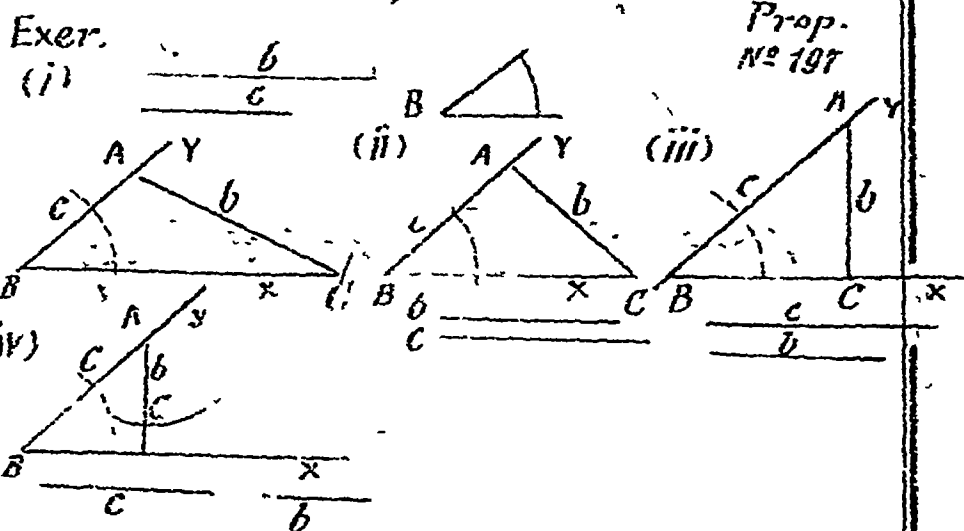
Prop.

Nº 191.





PART I.  
Page 82



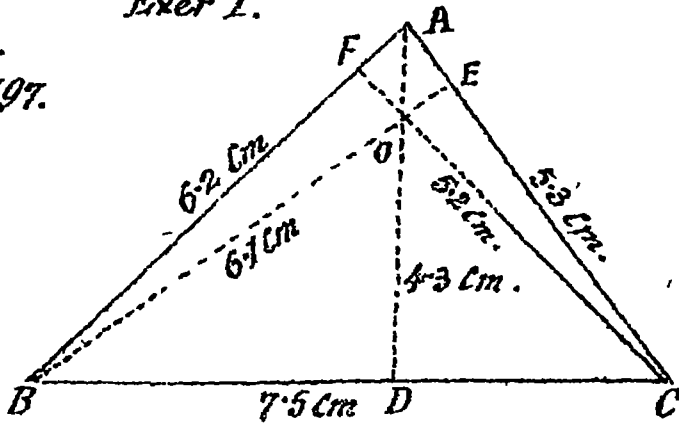
## PART I

Page 84

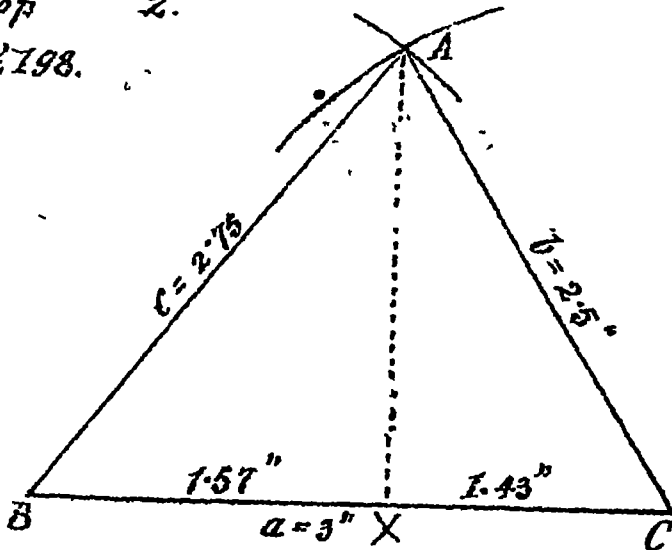
Prob. 8-10.

## Exer 1.

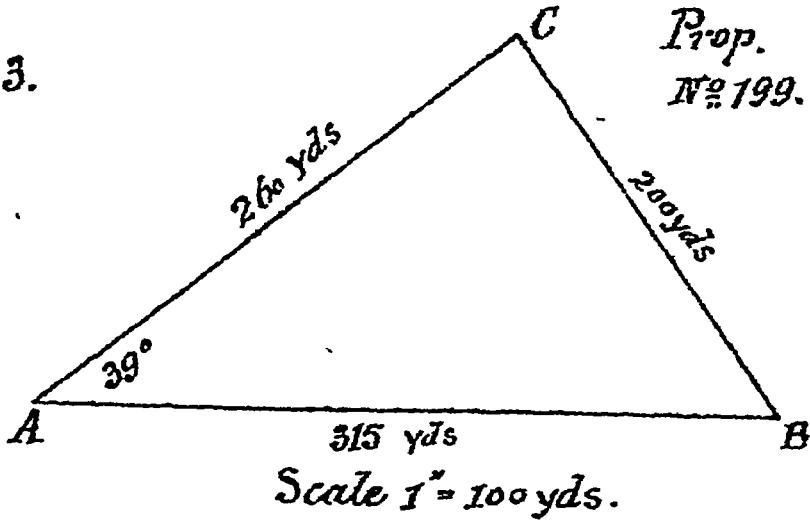
Prop.

N<sup>o</sup> 197.

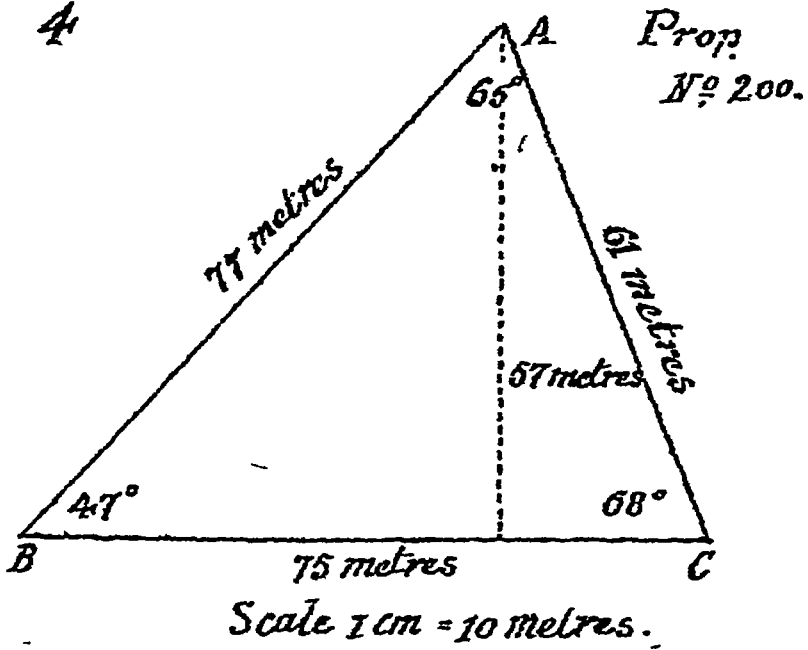
Prop 2.

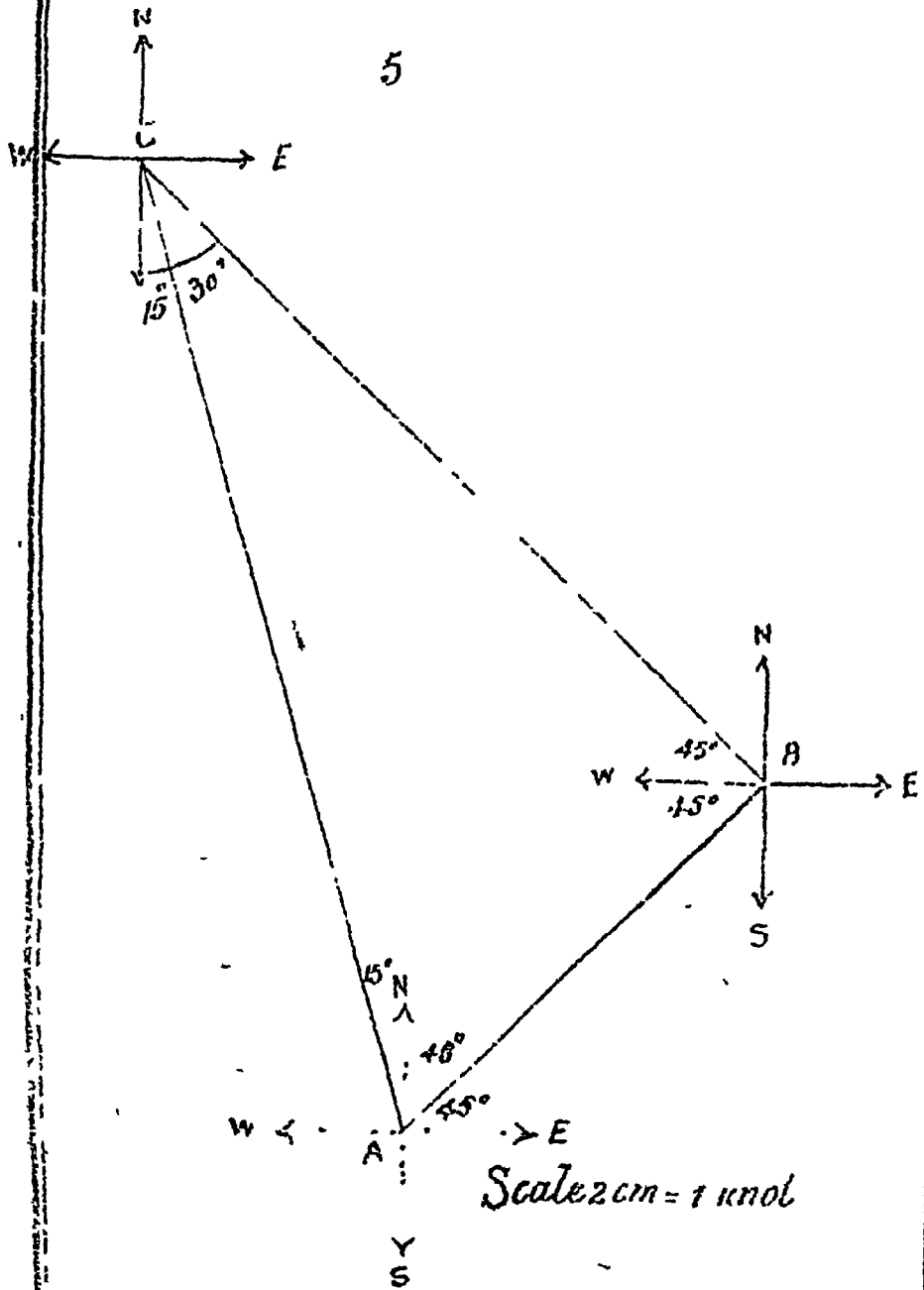
N<sup>o</sup> 198.

3.



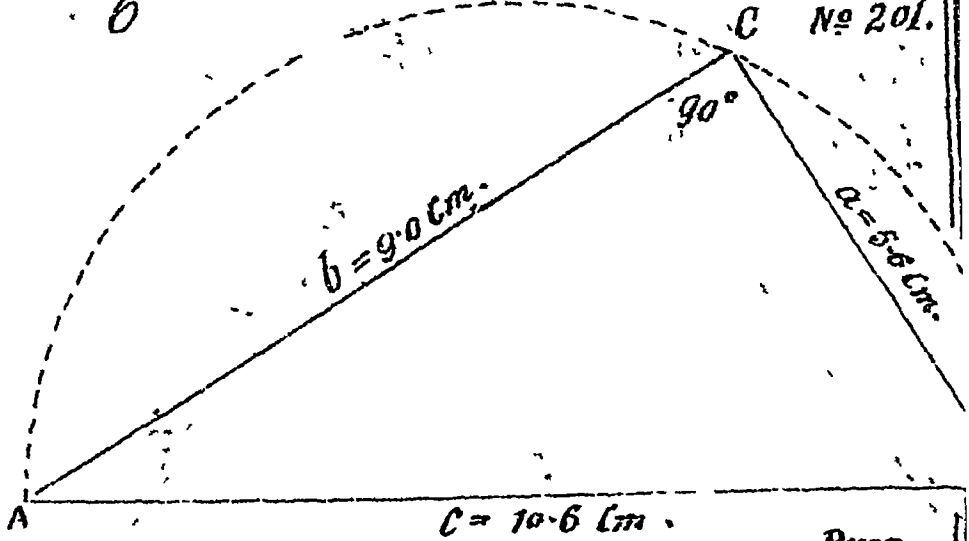
4.





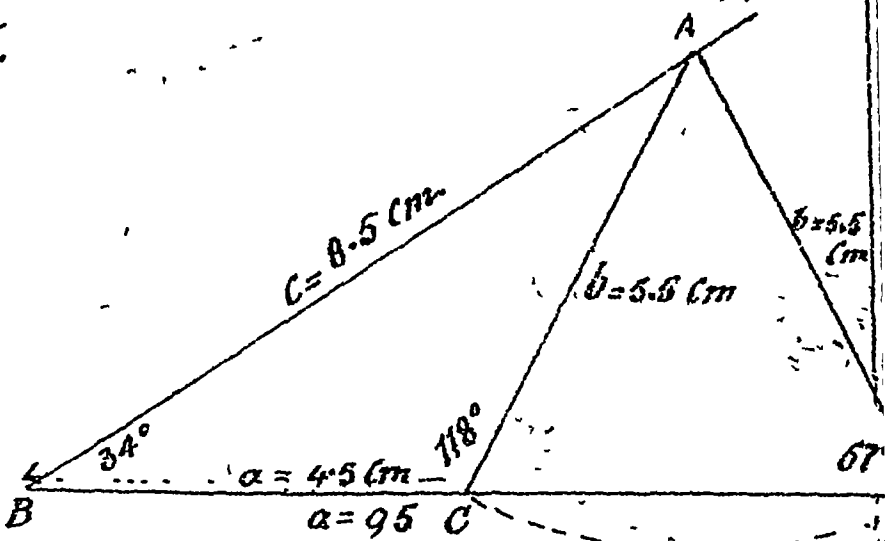
6

Prop.  
№ 201.



7.

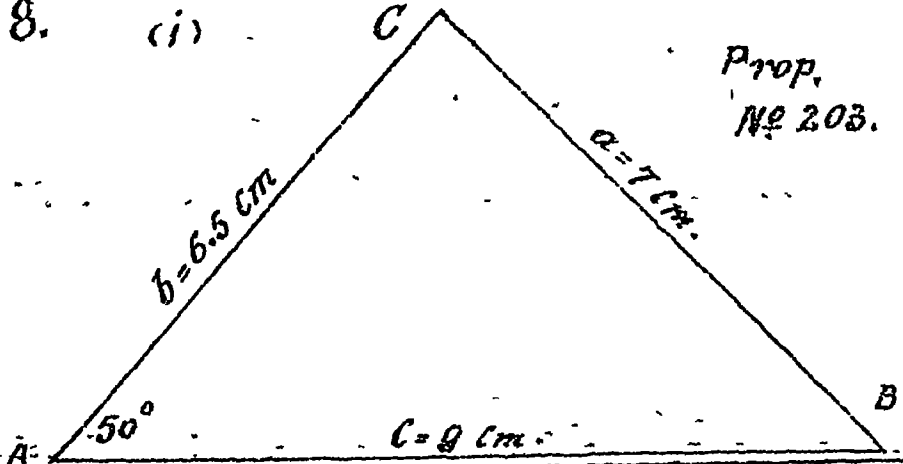
Prop.  
№ 202.



8.

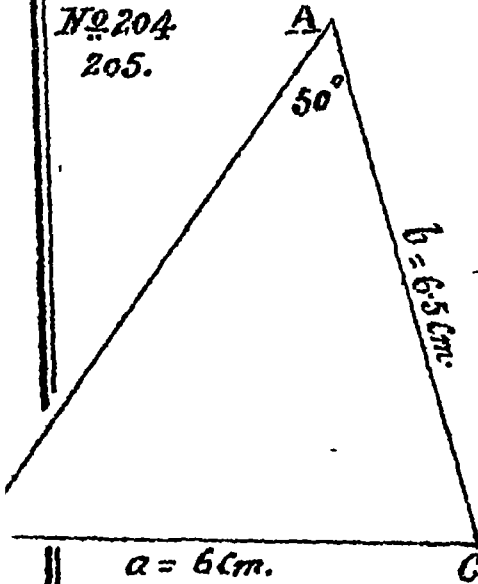
(i)

Prop.  
№ 203.

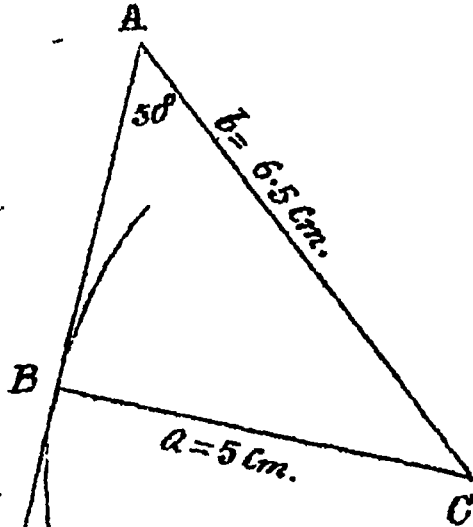


Prop.  
N<sup>o</sup> 204  
205.

(ii)

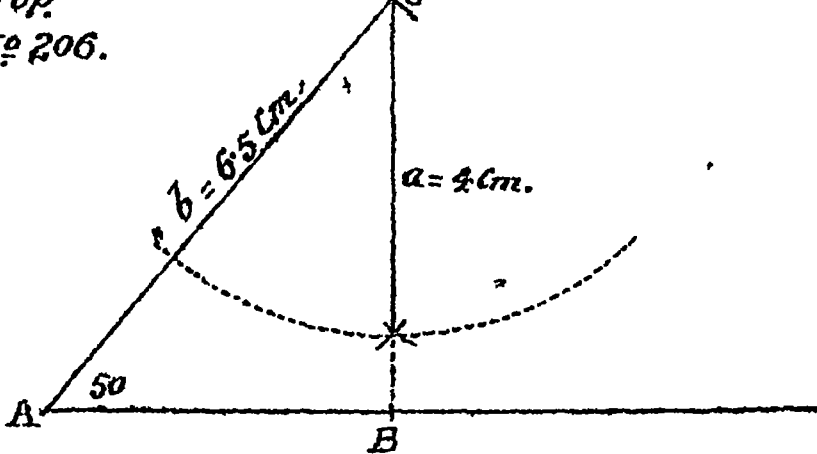


(iii)

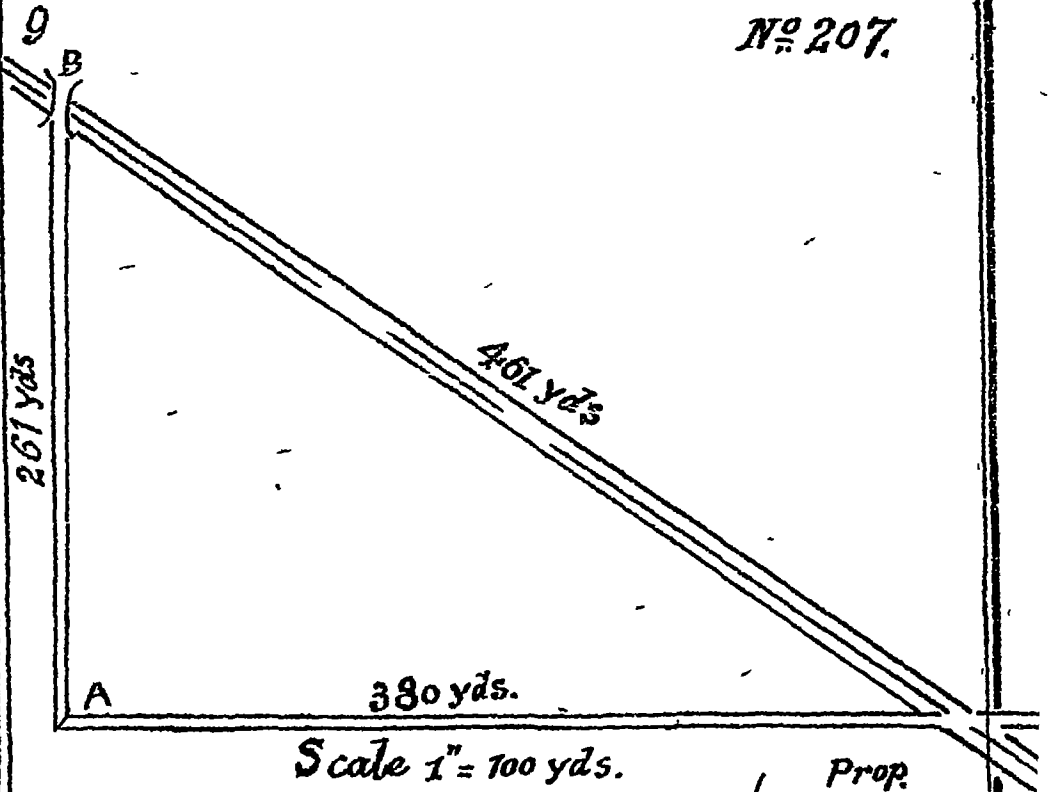


Prop.  
N<sup>o</sup> 206.

(iv)

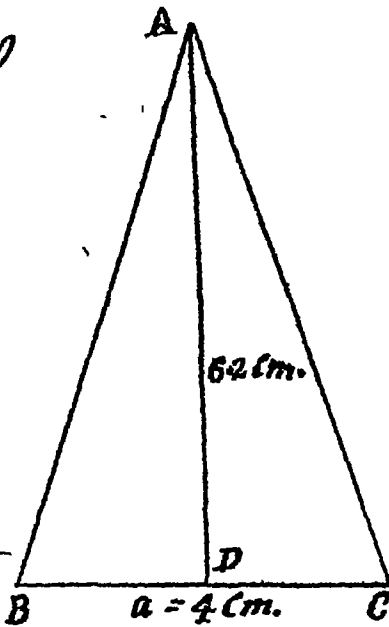


Prop.  
No 207.

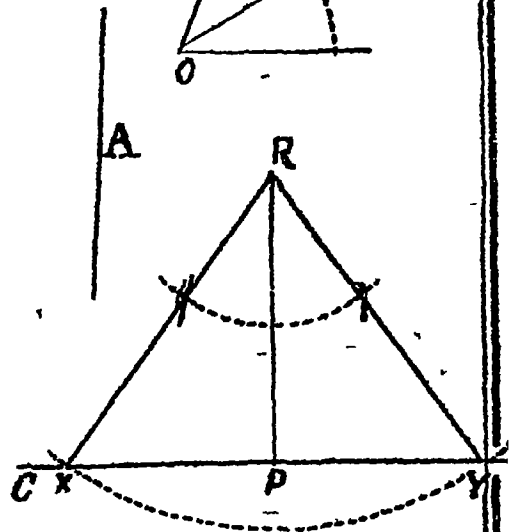


Scale 1" = 100 yds.

10



11. (i)

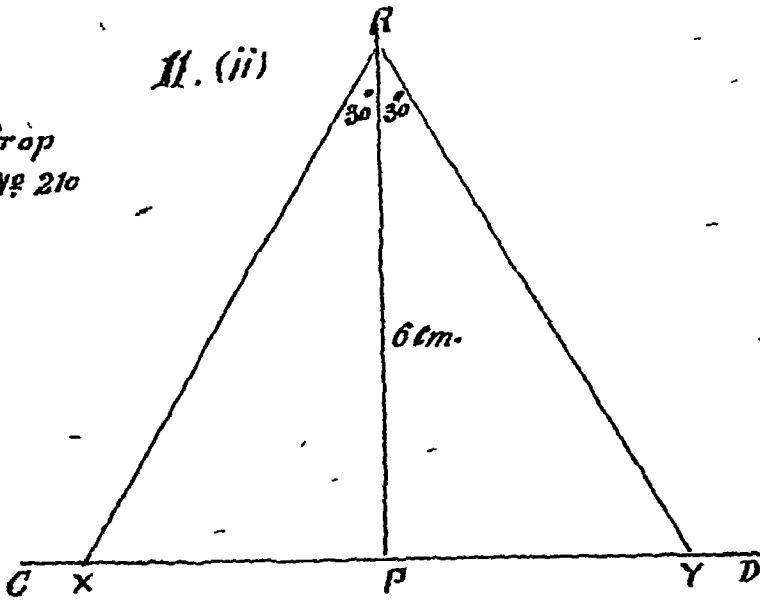


Prop.  
No 208. 209.



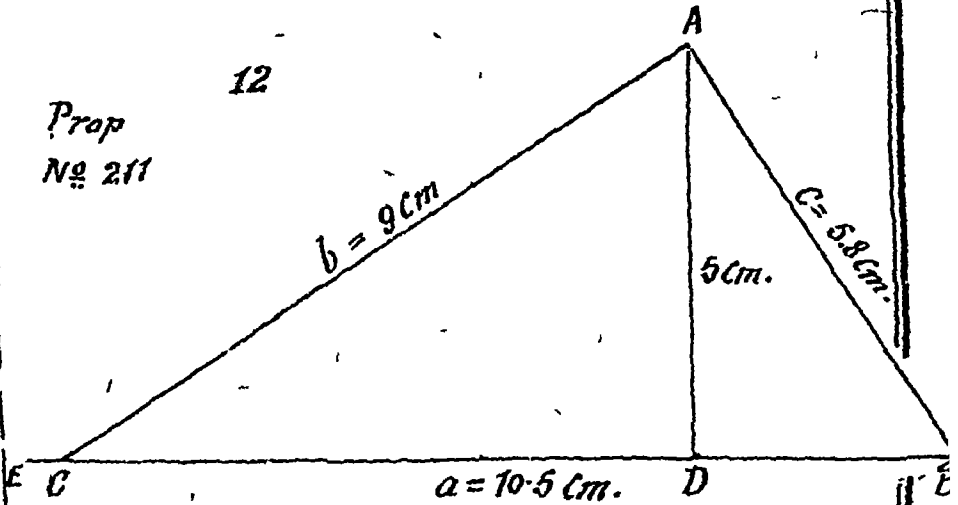
II. (ii)

Prop  
No 210



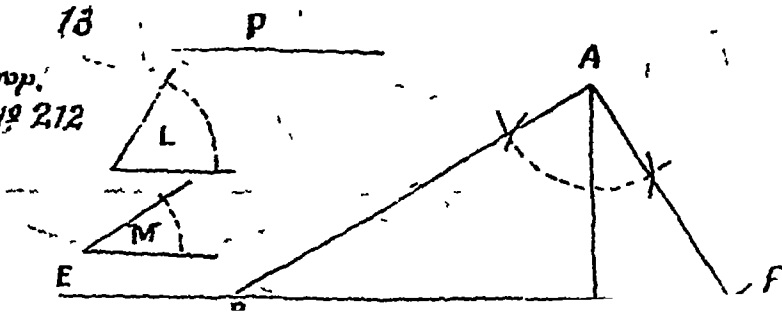
12

Prop  
No 211



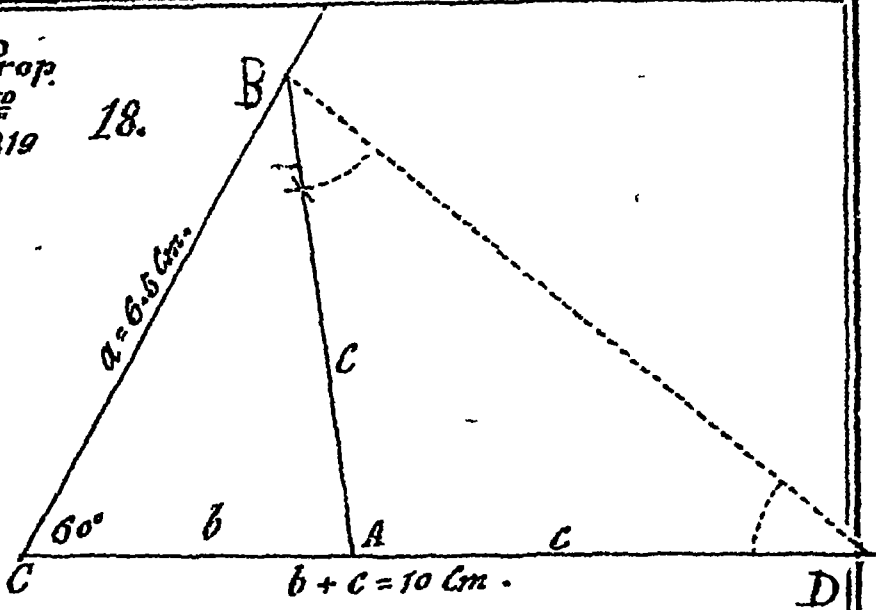
13

Prop.  
No 212

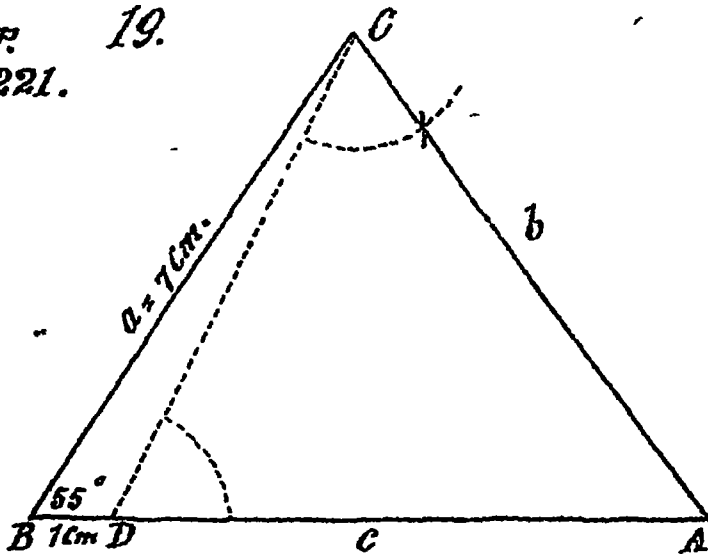




Prop.  
№ 219 18.



Prop. 19.  
№ 221.



## PART I.

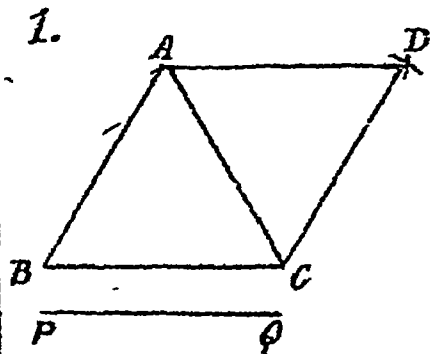
Page 89.

## Construction of Quadrilaterals. Prop.

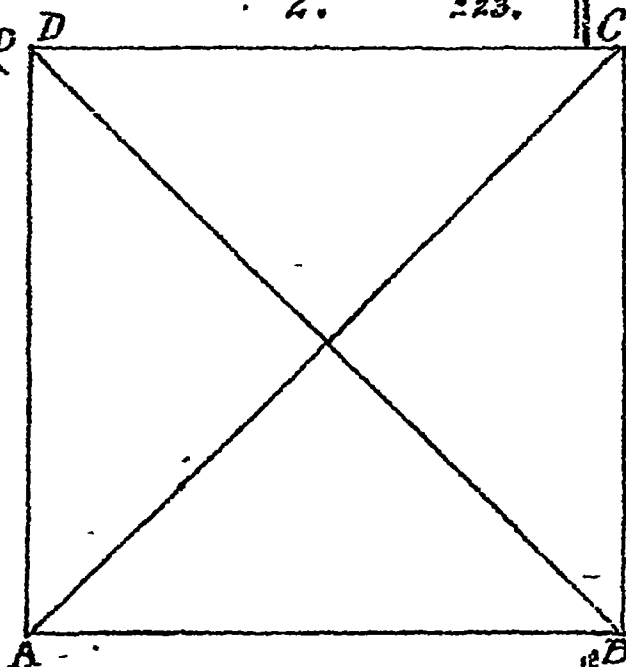
Exer.

N<sup>o</sup> 222  
223.

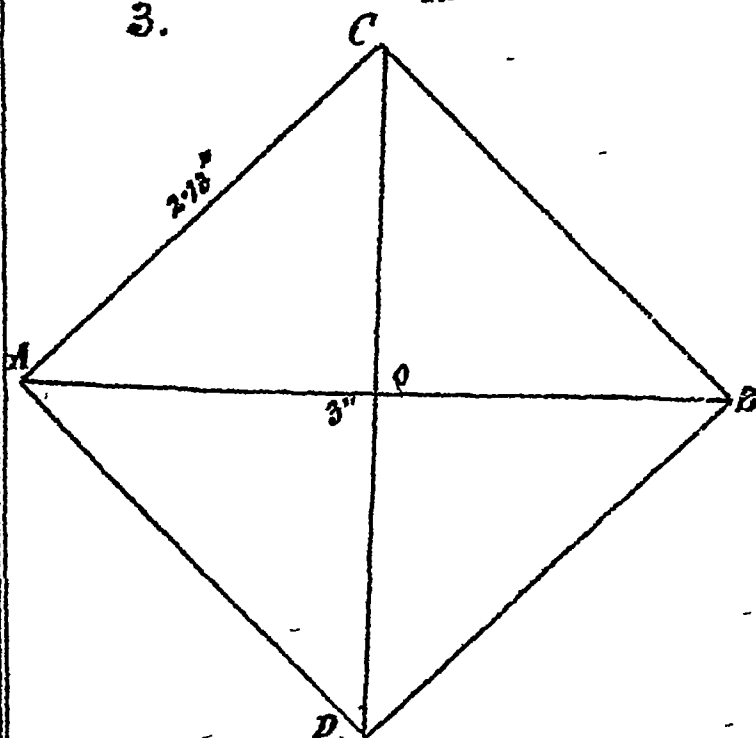
1.



2.



3.

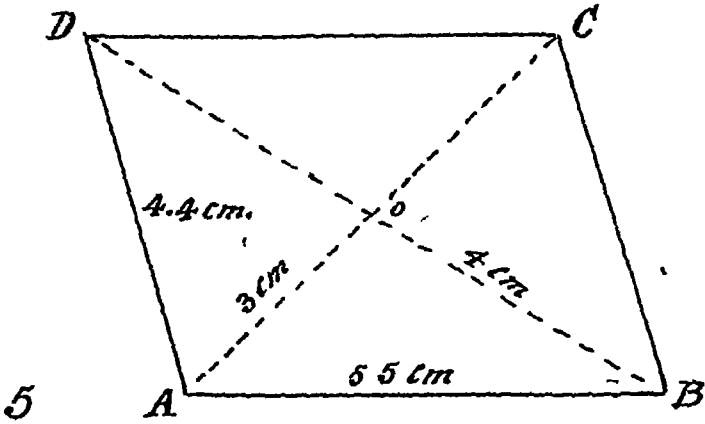
Prop.  
N<sup>o</sup> 224.

4.

8 cm.

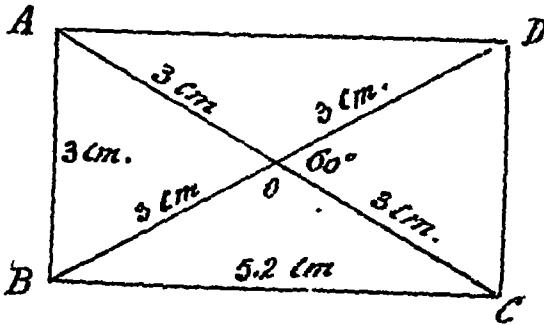
Prop.  
№  
225

6 cm



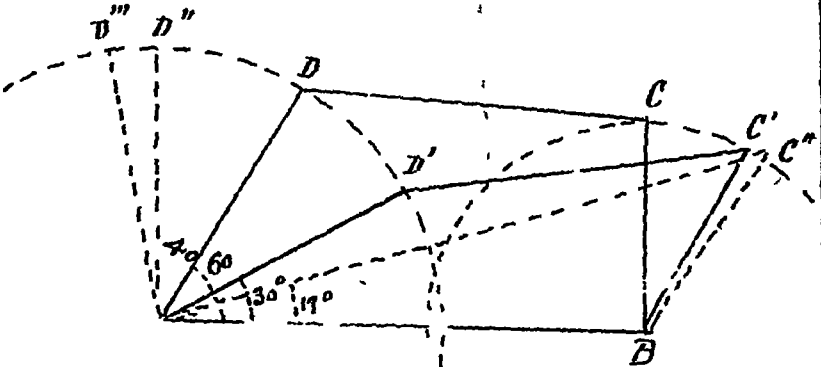
5

Prop.  
№  
226

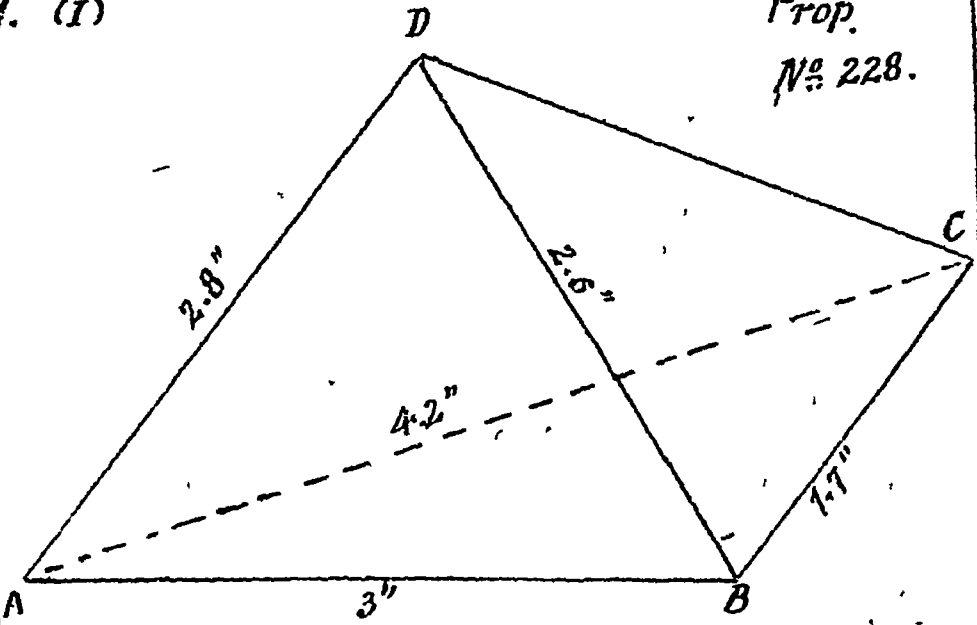


6

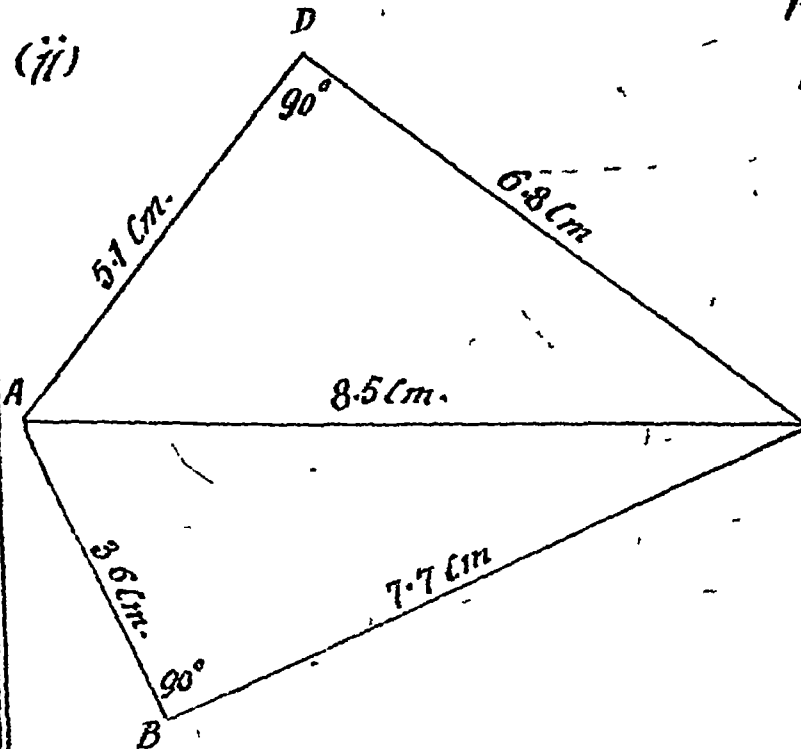
Prop.  
№  
227



7. (i)

Prop.  
No. 228.

(ii)

Prop.  
No. 229.

# PART I.

Page 94  
On Loci

Exer.

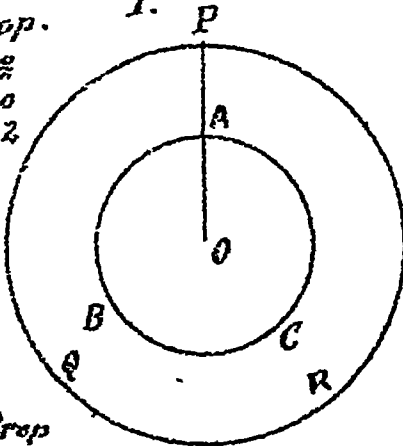
1.

Prop.

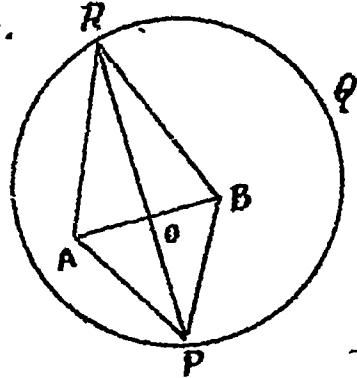
Nº

230

232



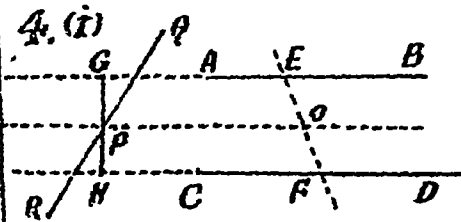
3.



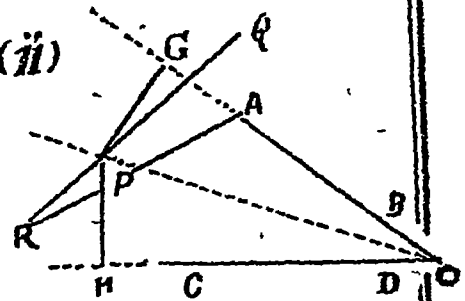
Prop.

Nº 233 234.

4. (i)



(ii)

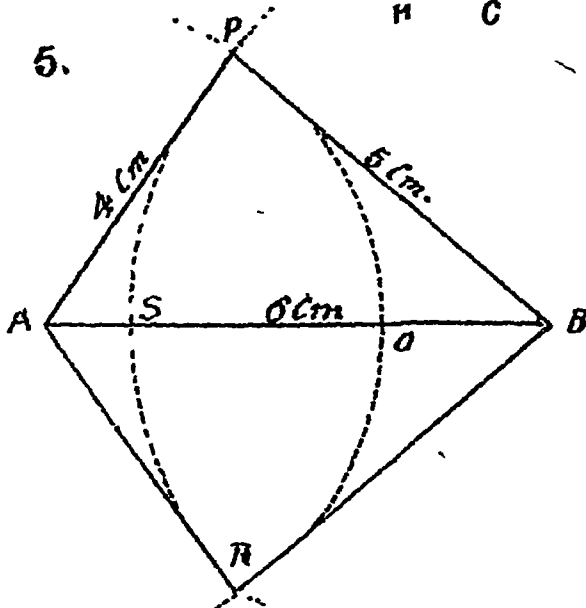


Prop.

Nº

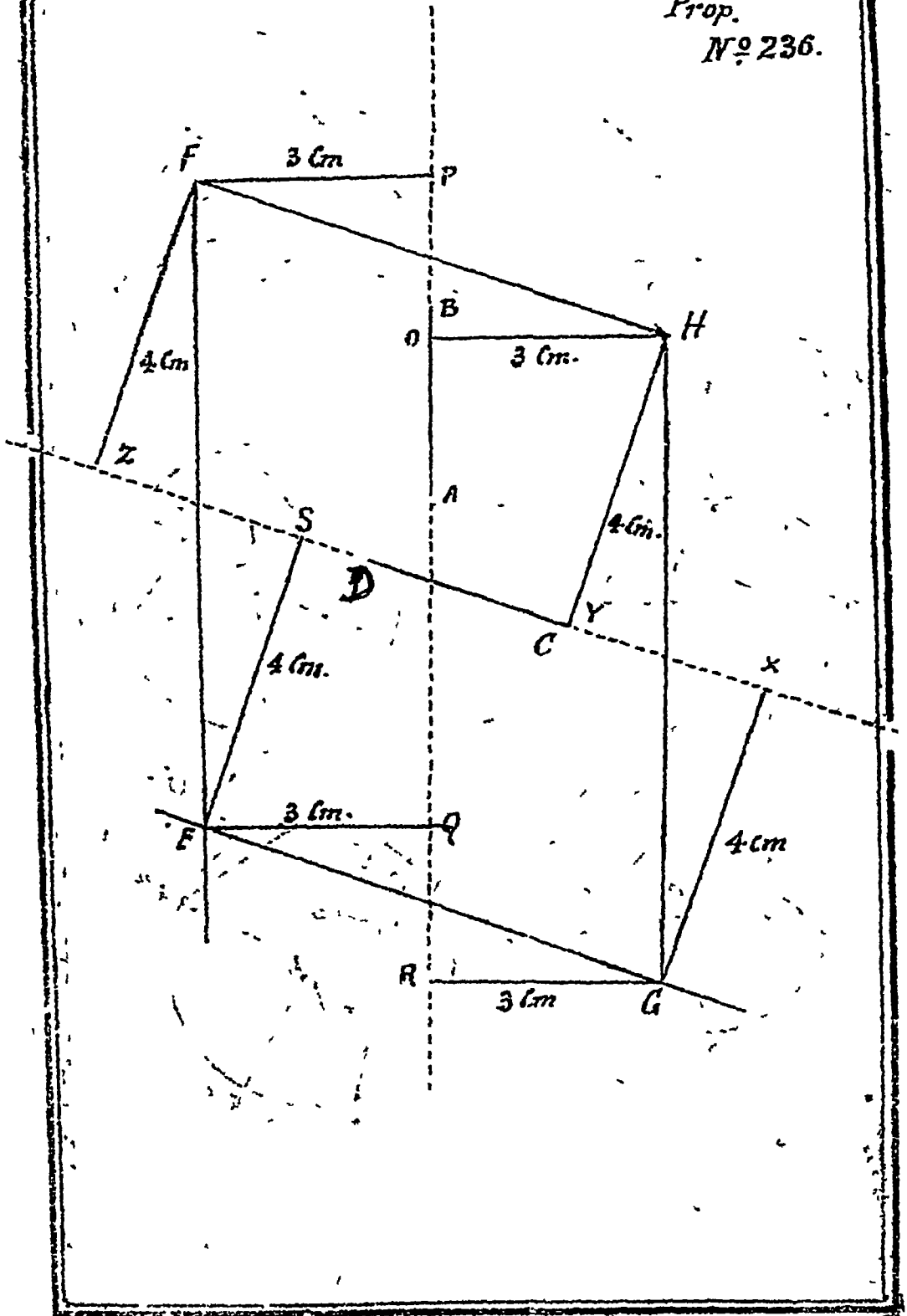
235

5.



6.

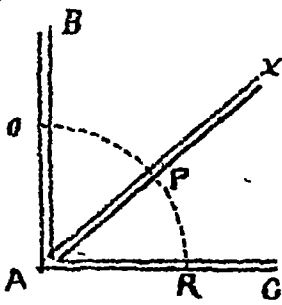
Prop.  
N<sup>o</sup> 236.



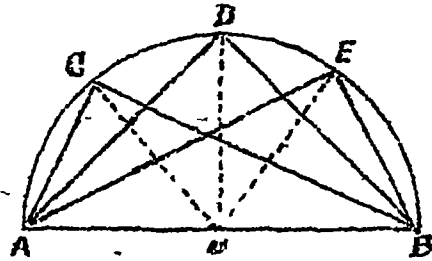


Prop  
N<sup>o</sup> 237 238

7



8.



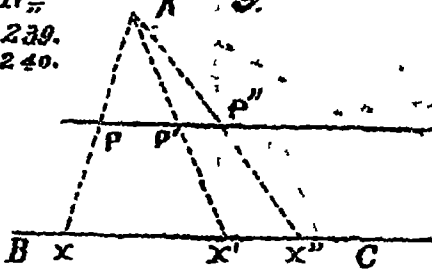
Prop.

N<sup>o</sup>

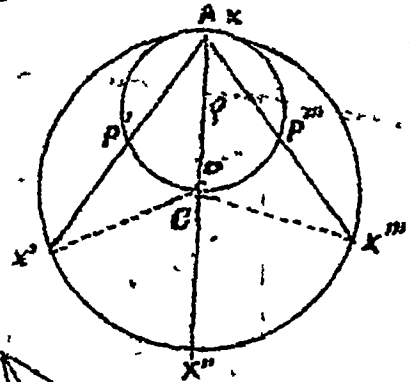
239.

240.

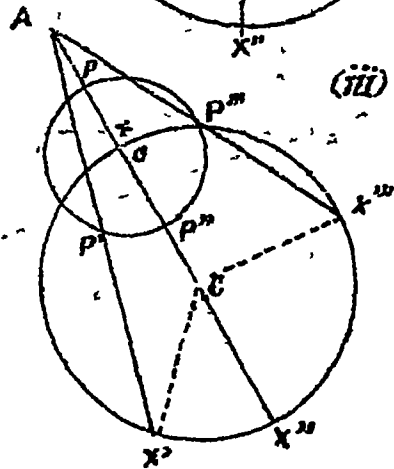
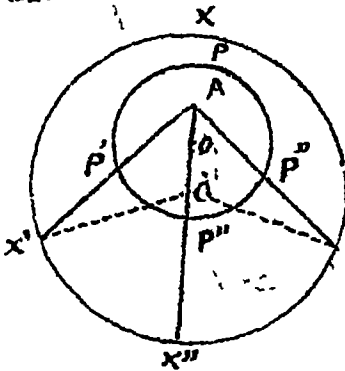
9



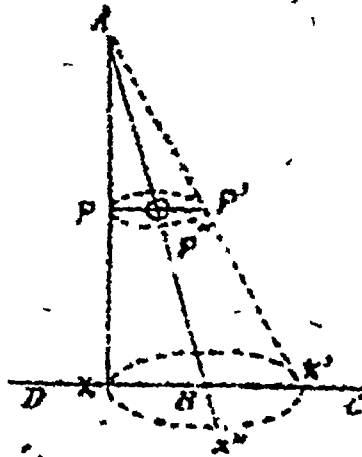
10 (i)



(ii)



II.

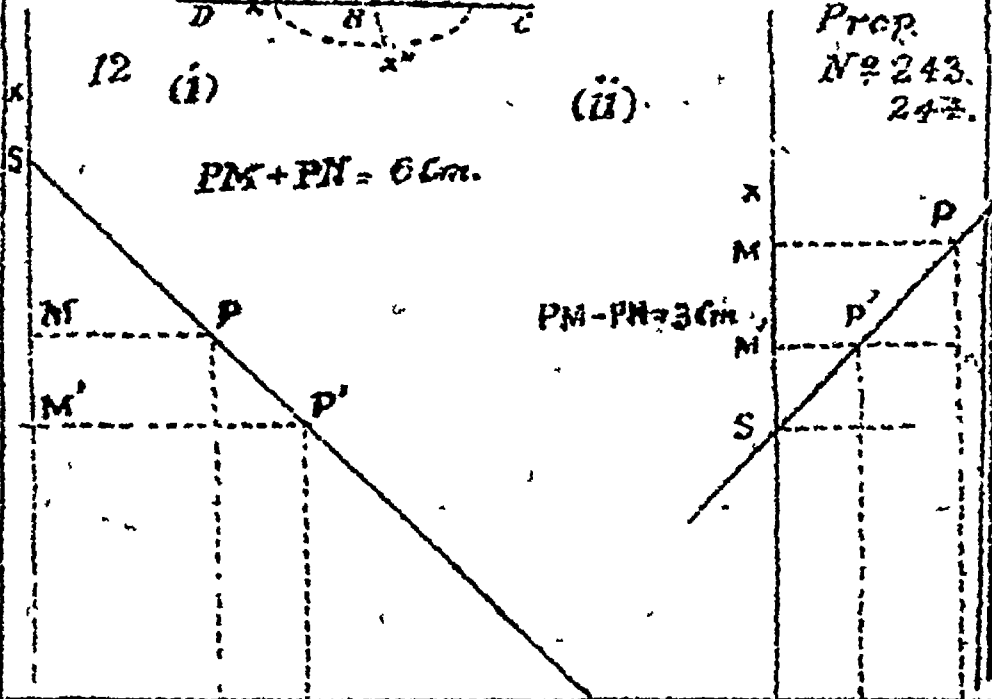


12 (i)

(ii)

$$PM + PN = 6 \text{ Cm.}$$

Prop.  
Nº 243.  
247.

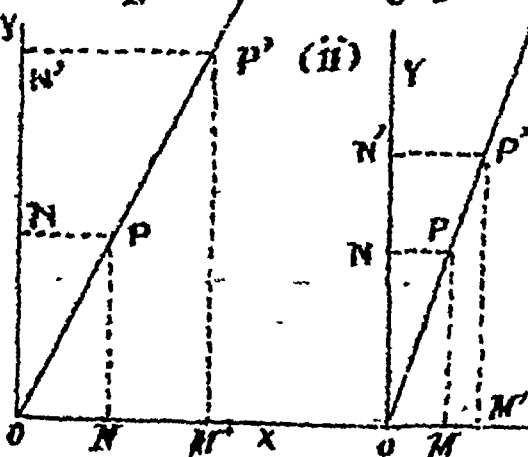


$$PM - PN = 3 \text{ Cm.}$$

13 (i)

(ii)

Prop.  
Nº 245.  
246.



Prop.

*No*

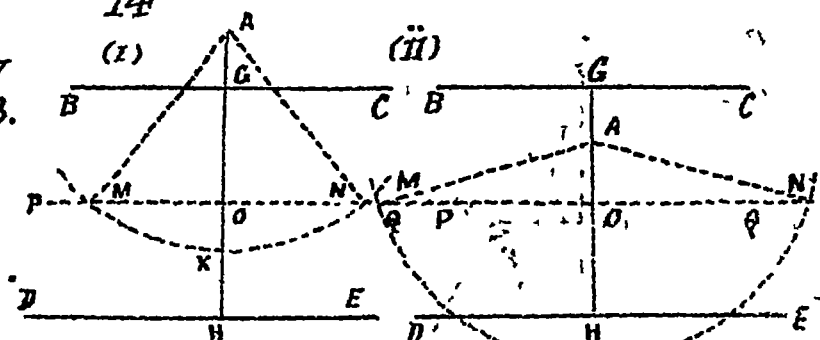
247

248.

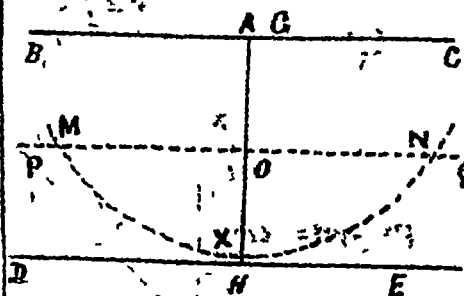
14

(I)

(ii)



(iii)



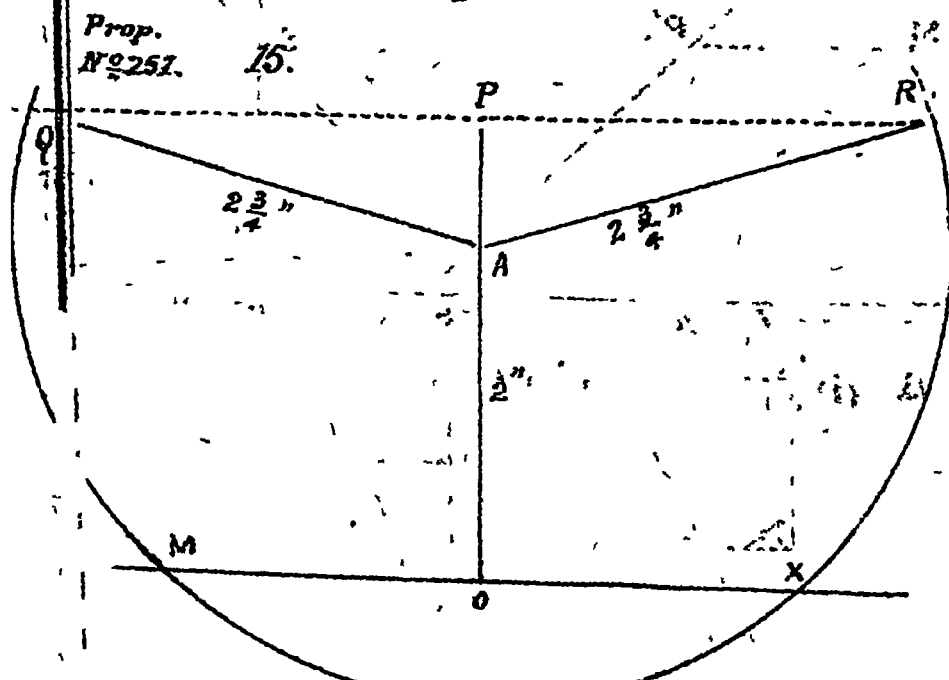
Prop. № 2

249.

**Prop.**

**Nº 251.**

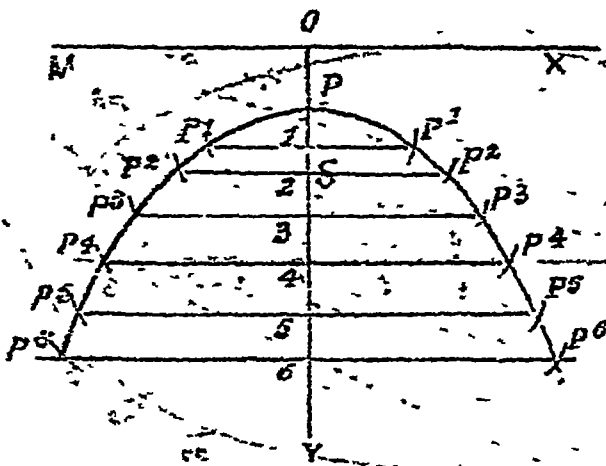
15.



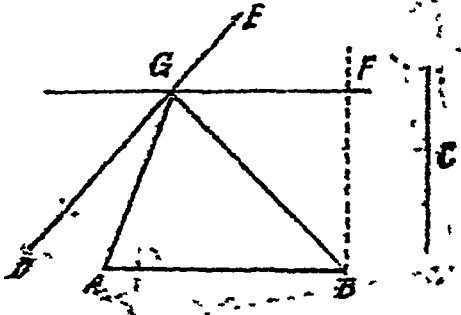
16.

Prop.

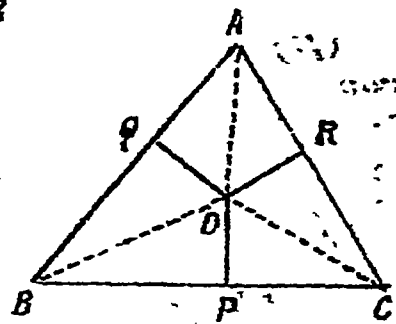
N<sup>o</sup> 252.



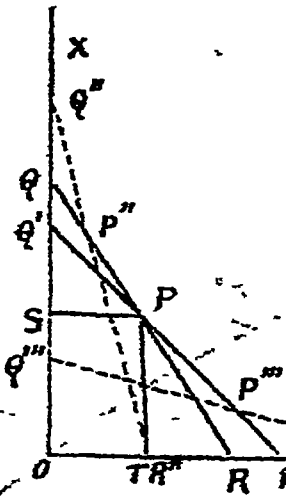
17.



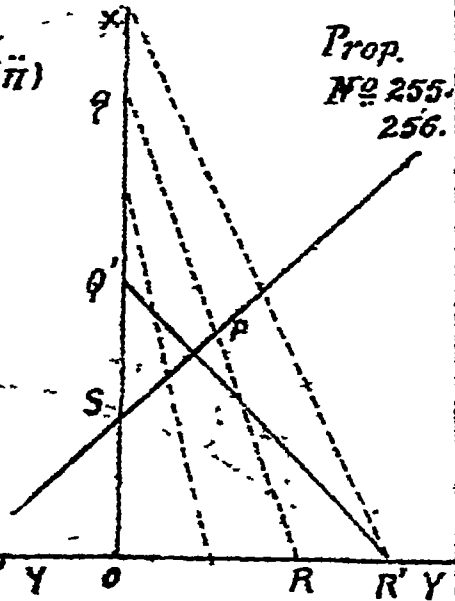
18.



19 (i)



(ii)



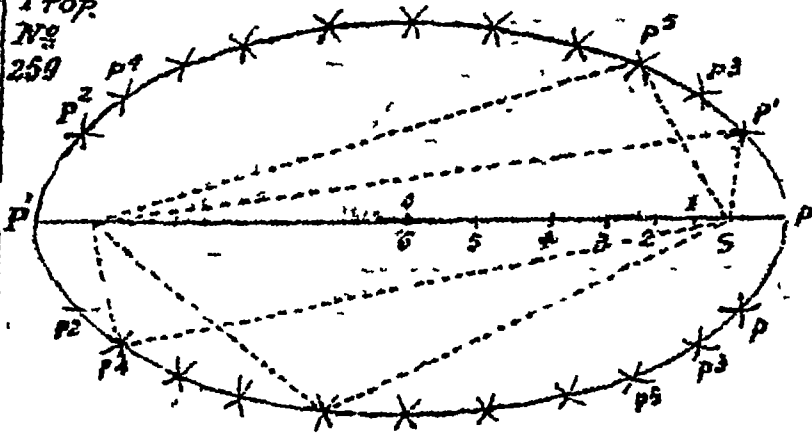
Prop.

N<sup>o</sup> 255.

256.

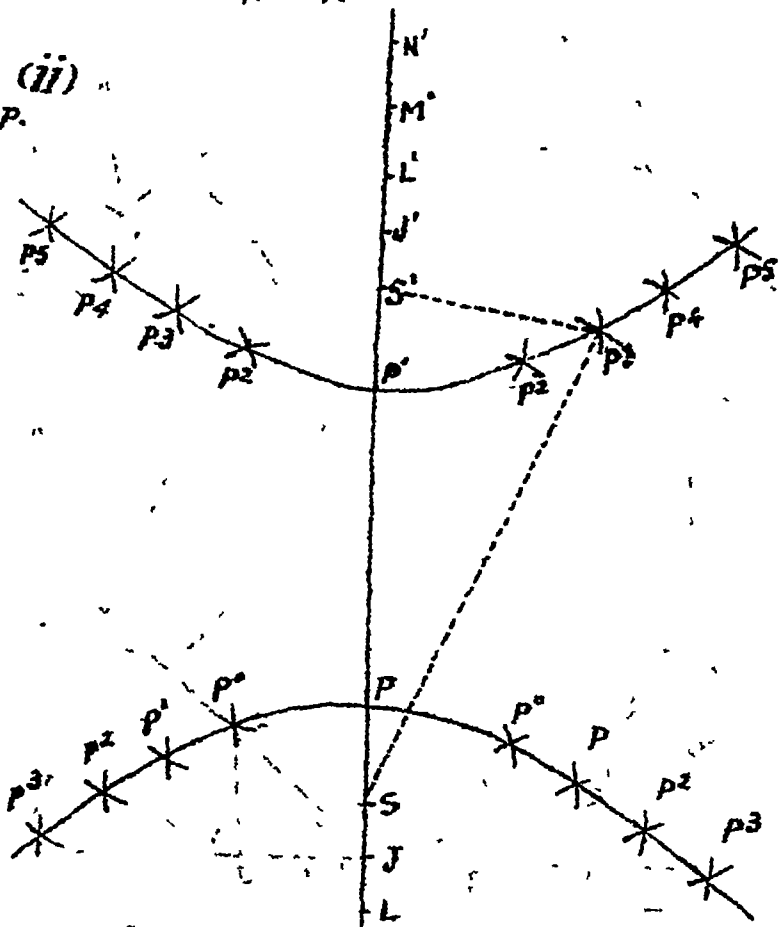
20. (i)

Prop.  
N<sup>o</sup>  
259



(ii)

Prop.  
N<sup>o</sup>  
260



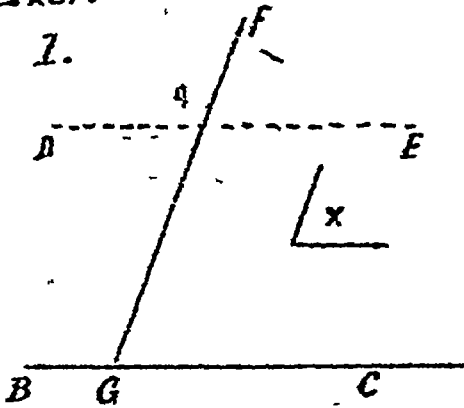
PART I.

Page 98.

Miscellaneous.

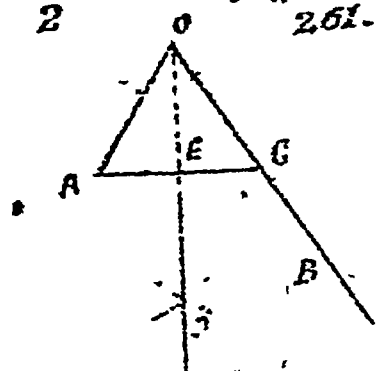
Exer.

1.

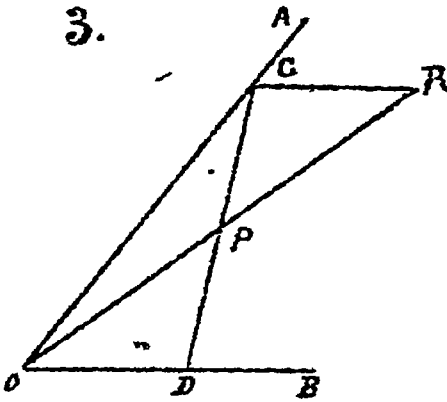


2

Prop.  
N<sup>o</sup> 260.  
261.

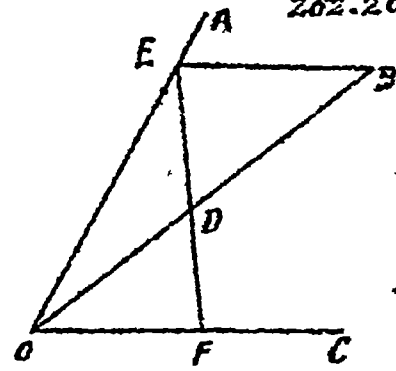


3.



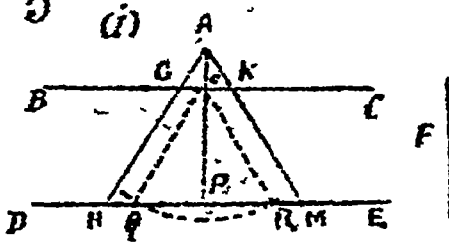
4.

Prop. N<sup>o</sup>  
262. 263.



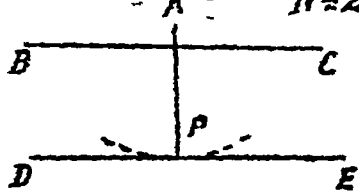
5

(i)

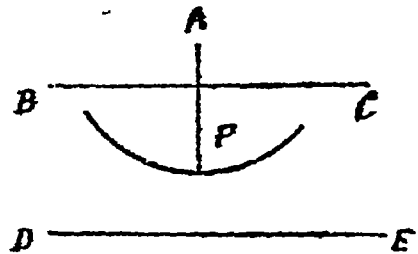


(ii)

Prop.  
N<sup>o</sup> 264.

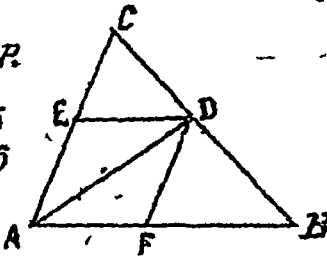


(iii)

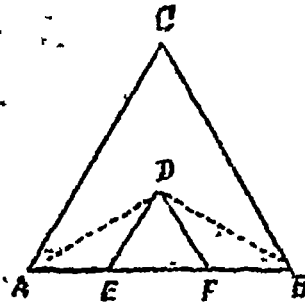


6

Prop.  
Nº  
265  
266

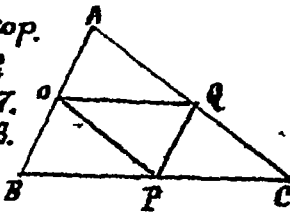


7

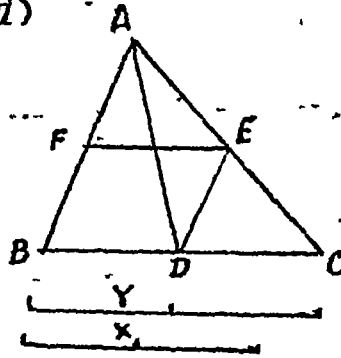


8. (i)

Prop.  
Nº  
267.  
268.

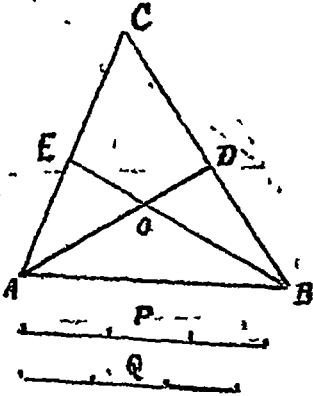


(ii)

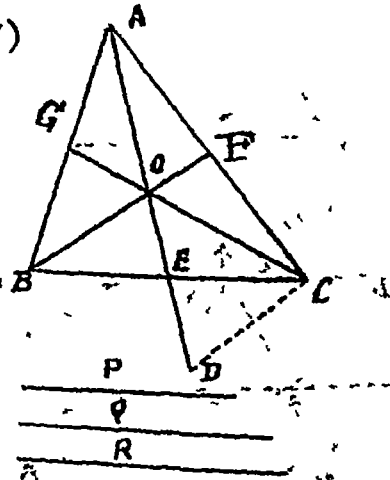


(iii)

Prop.  
Nº  
270  
271.



(iv)



## PART II

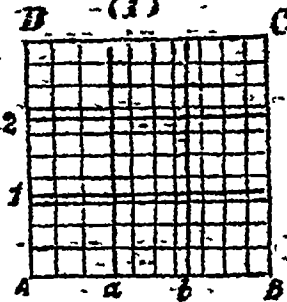
Page 101.

On tables of length and area.

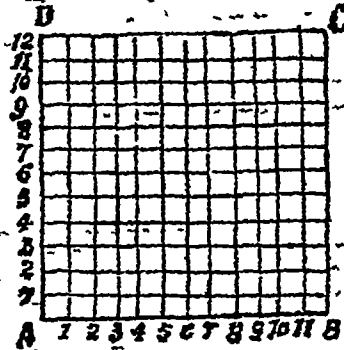
Exer.

1. D

(i)



(ii)



Prop.

No 272

273.

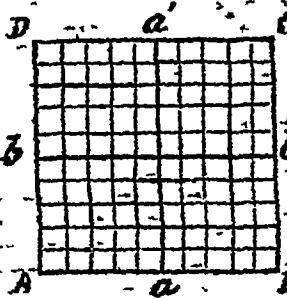
(iii)



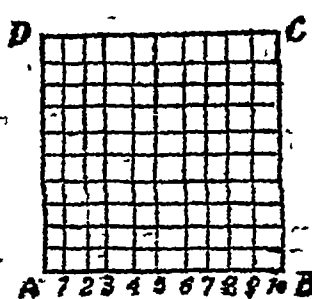
Prop.

No 274.

2.



3.



Prop.

No 275

276.

Exer 1.

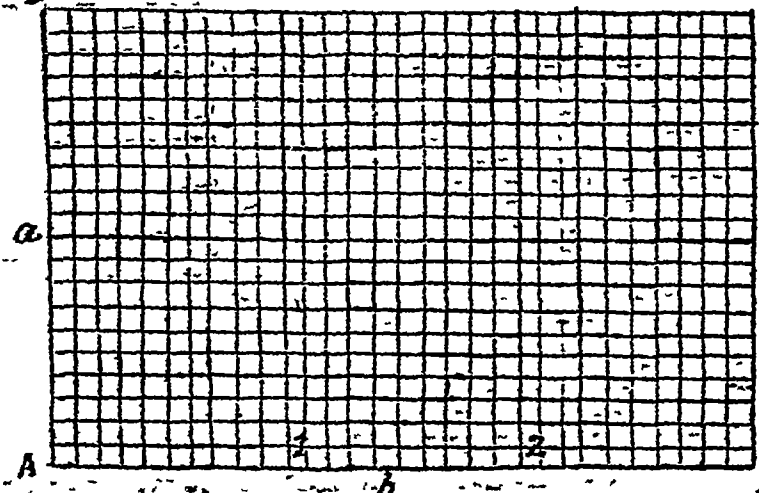
D

## PART II

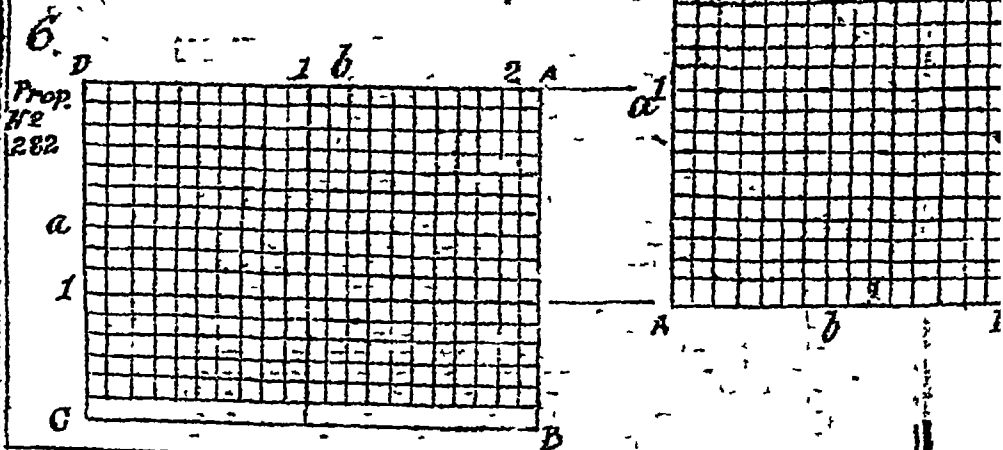
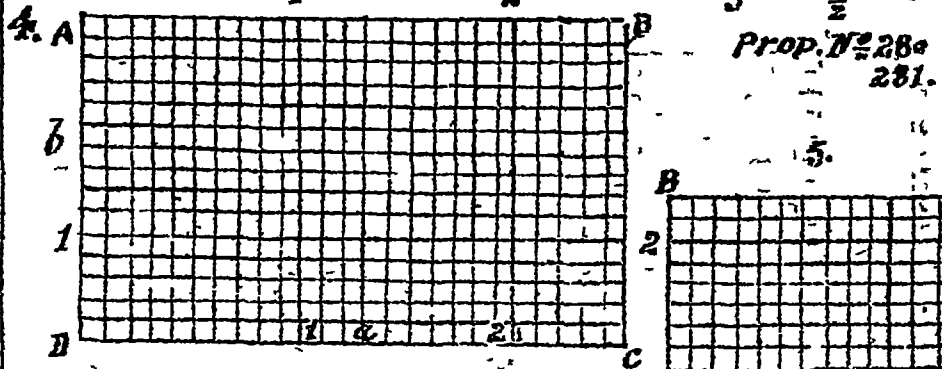
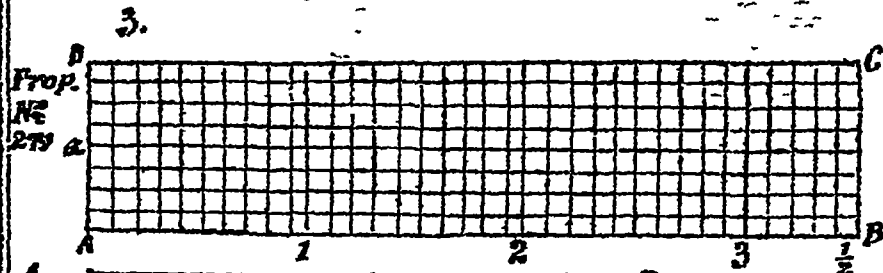
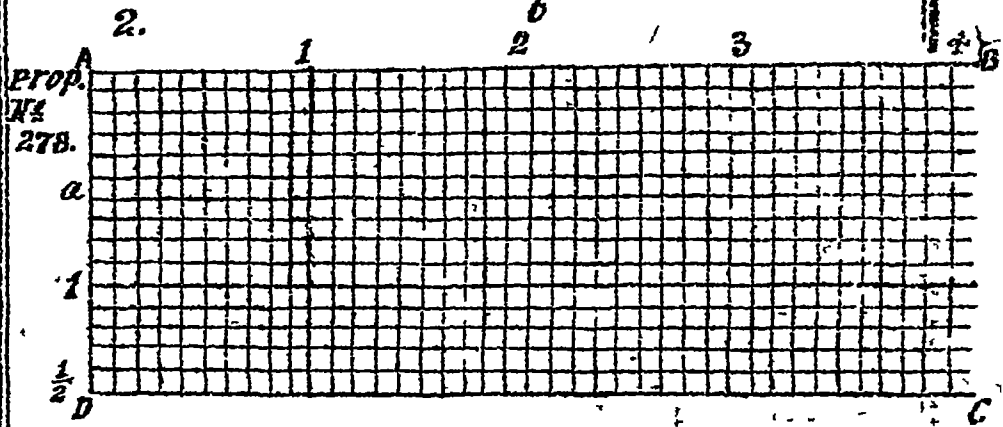
Page 102.

Prop.

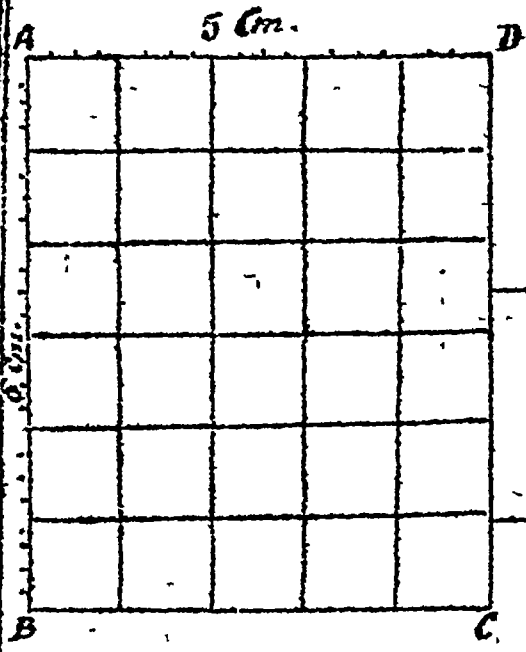
No 277.





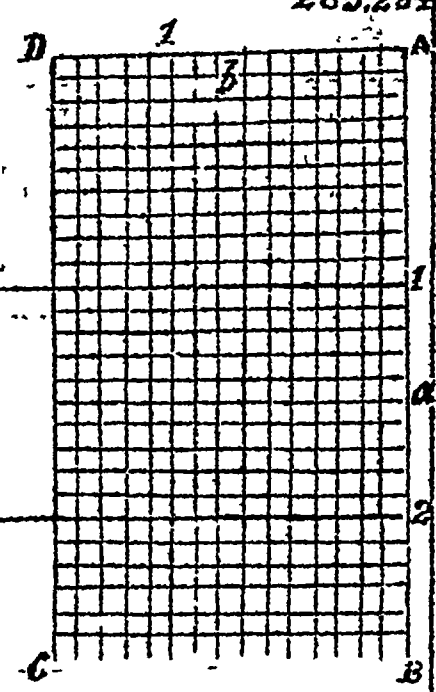


11.

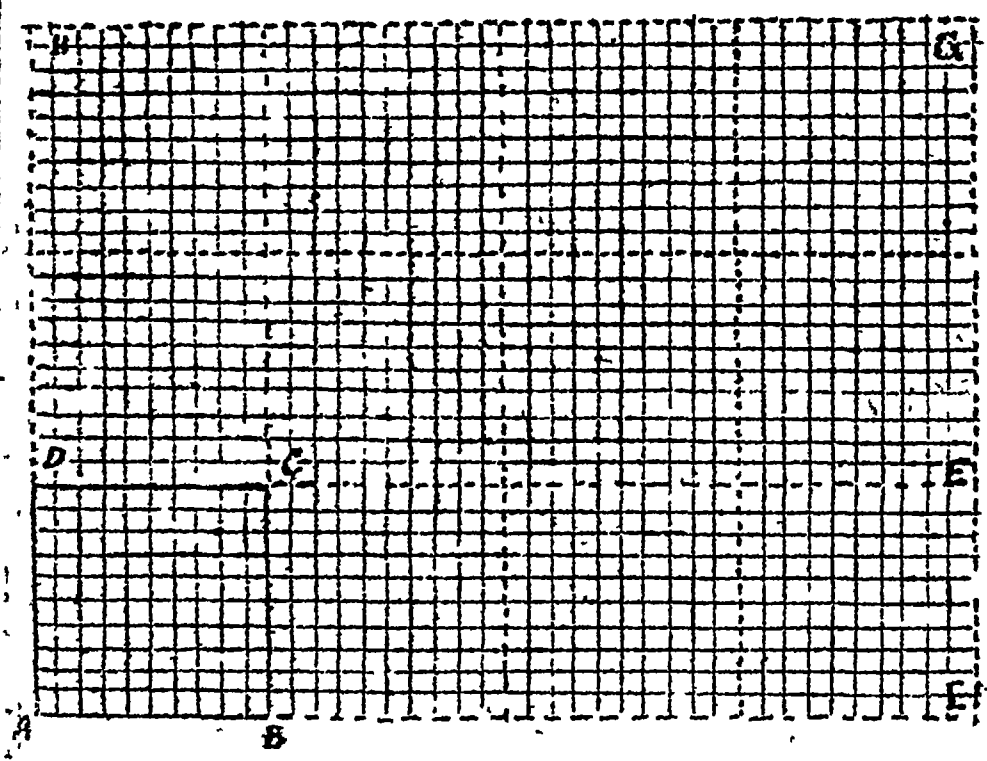


12

Prop. N  
283,284



13.



Prop. No 286.

14.

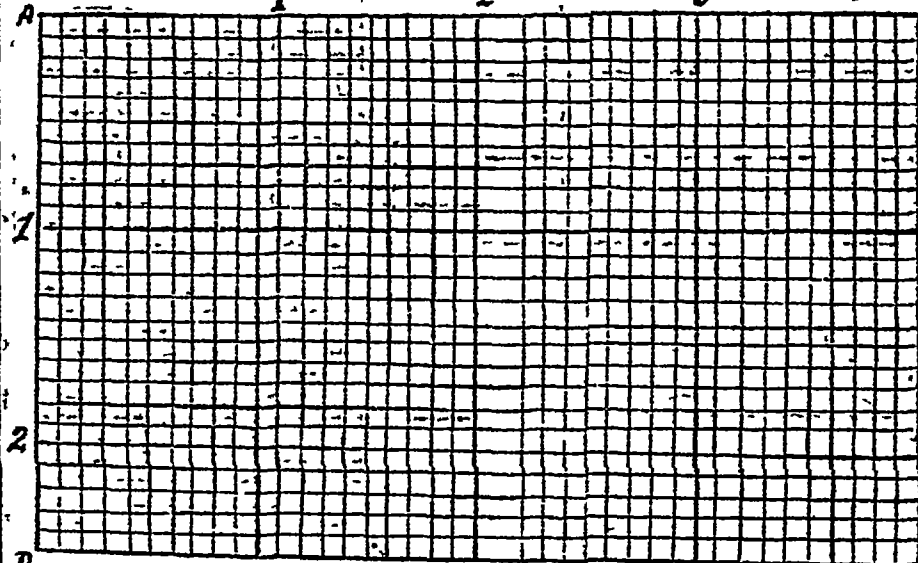
1

2

3

B

A



C

# PART II

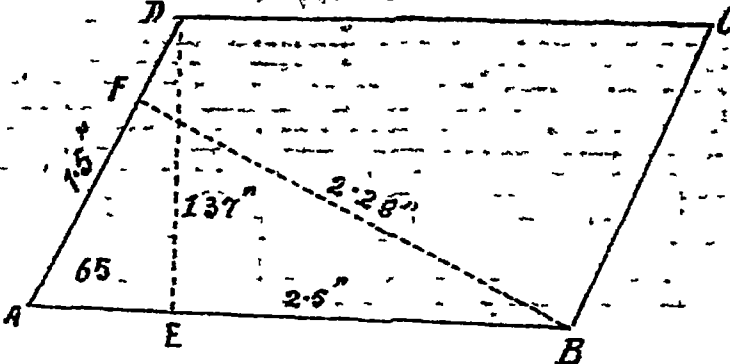
Page 105.

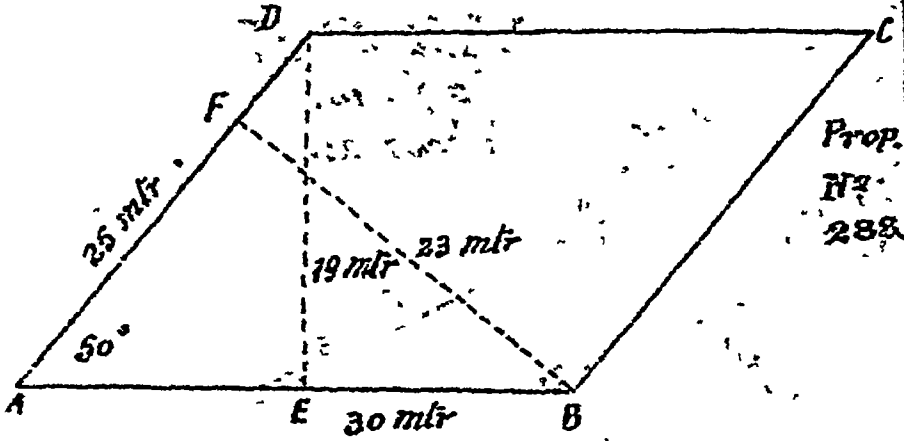
Theor 24.

Exer.

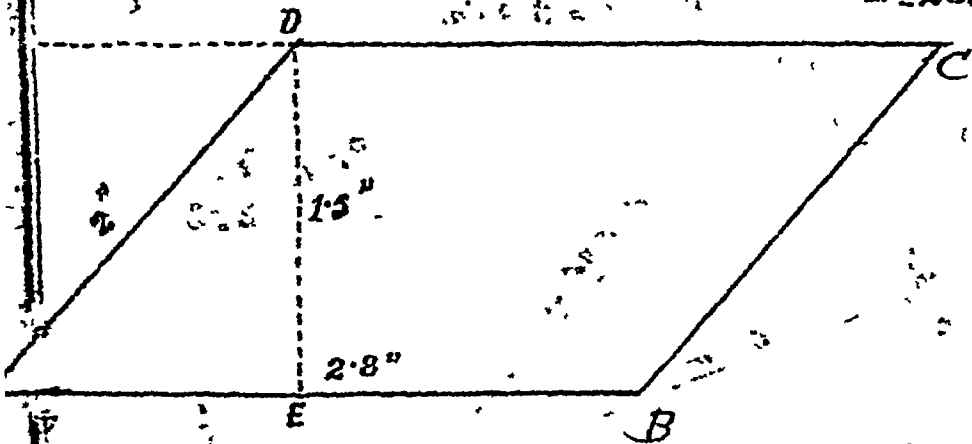
Prop. 2

No 287.

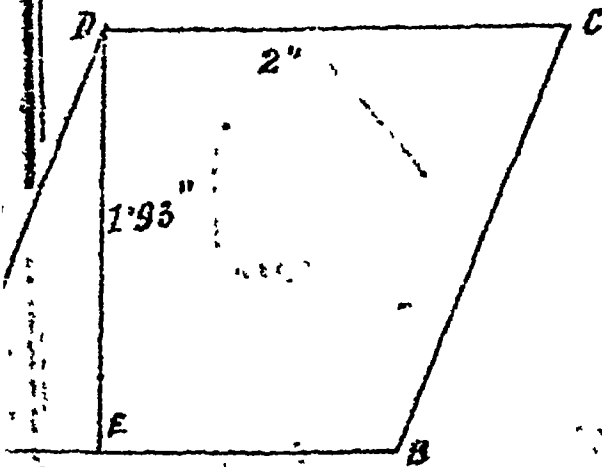




Prop.  
N<sup>o</sup>  
288



Prop.  
N<sup>o</sup> 289.

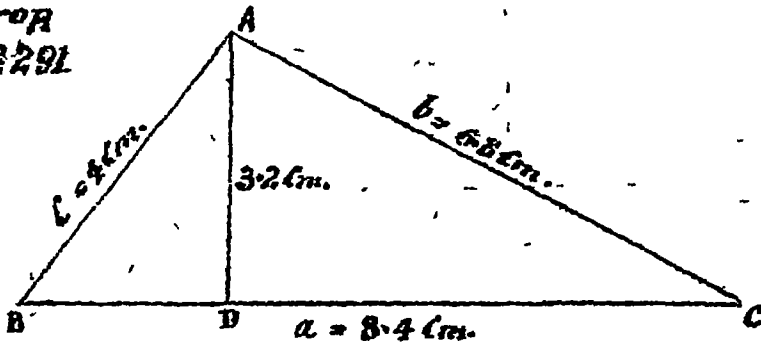


Prop.  
N<sup>o</sup> 290.

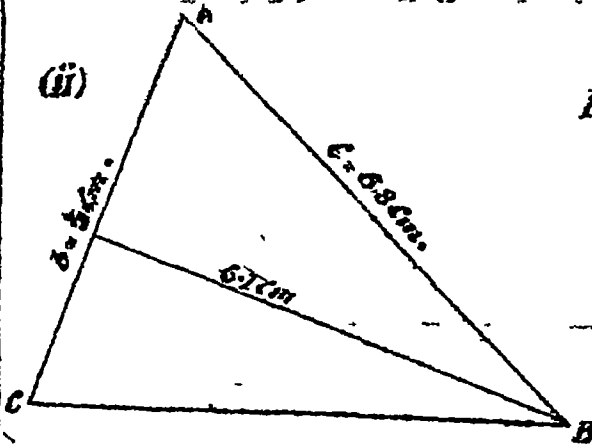
## PART II

Page 107.

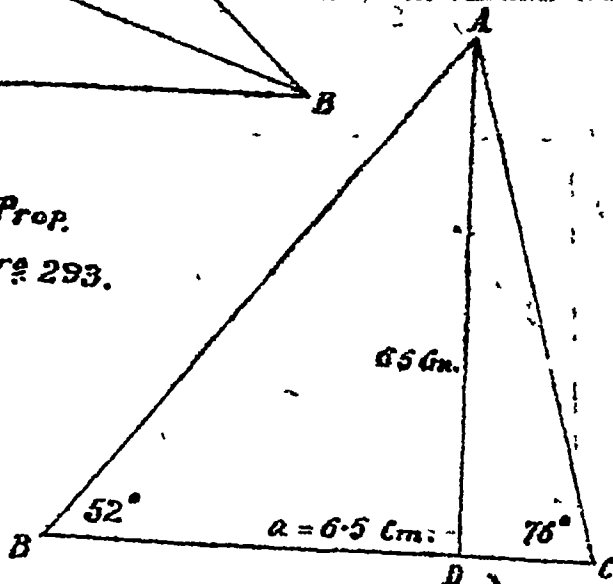
Theor 25.

Exer  
2 (i)Prop  
N<sup>o</sup> 291

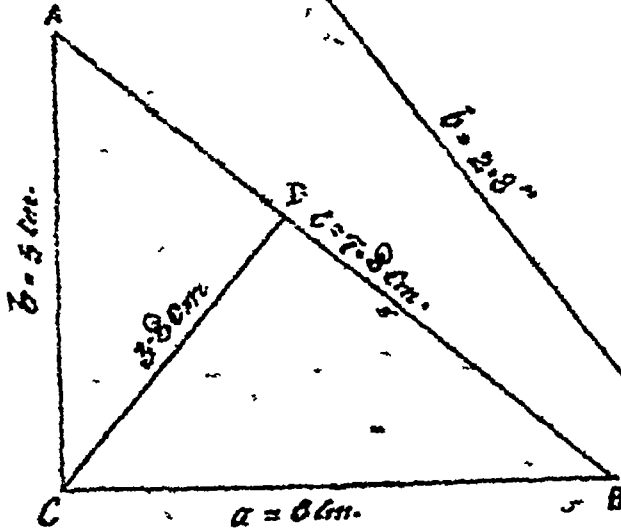
(ii)

Prop. N<sup>o</sup>  
292.

(iii)

Prop.  
N<sup>o</sup> 293.

3.



6.

Prop. № 294.  
296.

$a = 3''$

D

B

$2.23''$

$b = 2.8''$

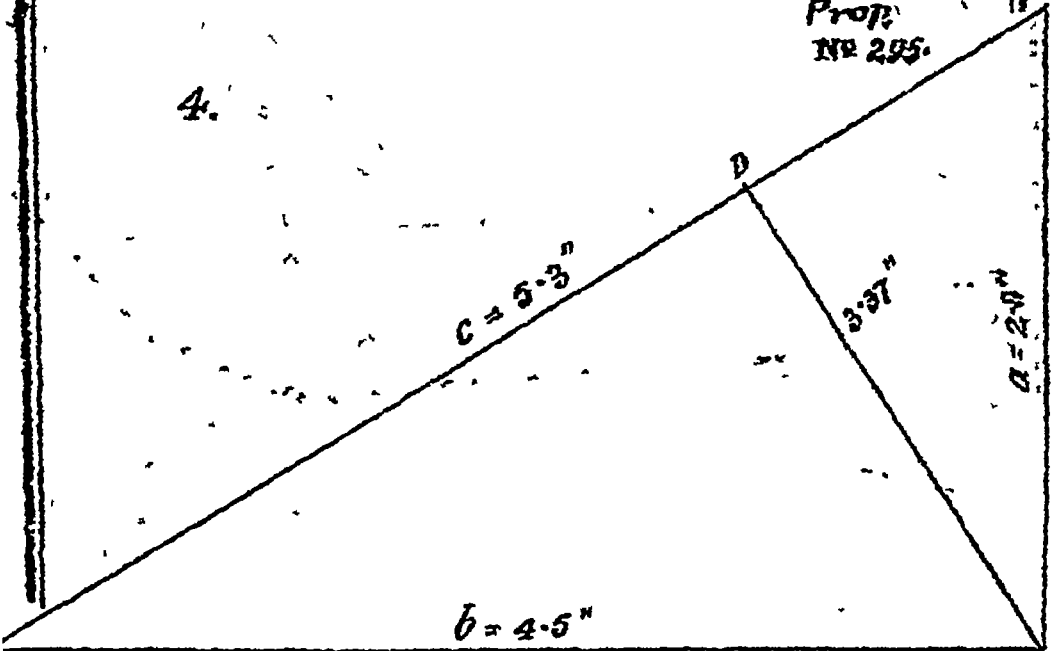
$c = 2.6''$

$c = 7.8 \text{ cm.}$

$a = 6 \text{ cm.}$

Prop.  
№ 295.

4.



# PART II

Page 109.

## Area of a Triangle.

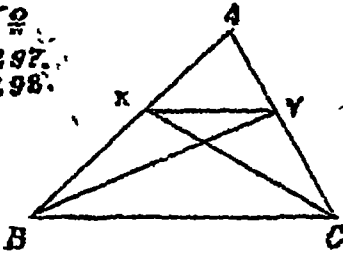
Exer 1

Prop.

N<sup>o</sup>

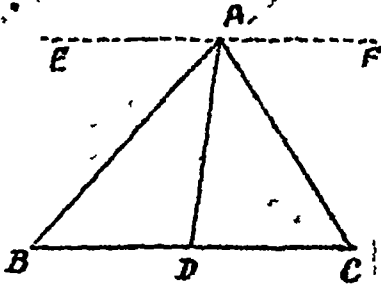
297.

298.



3

2.



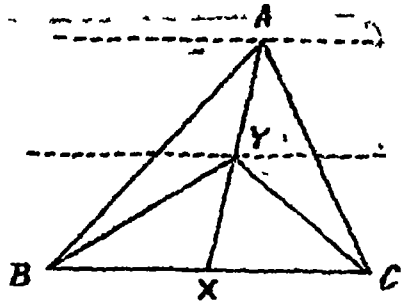
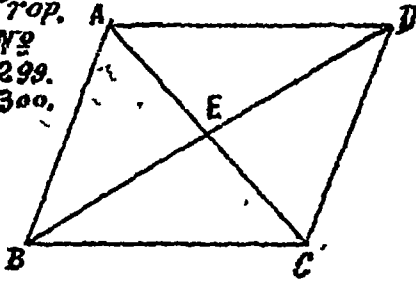
4

Prop.

N<sup>o</sup>

299.

300.

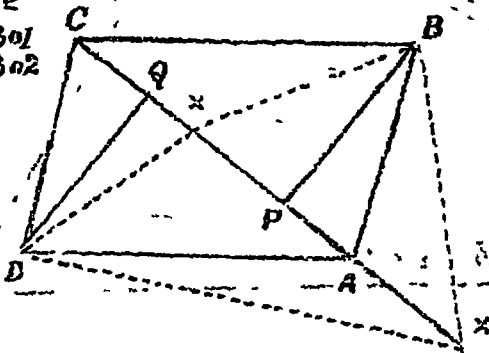


Prop.

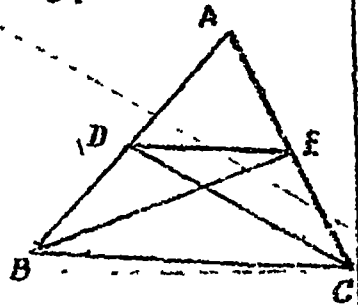
N<sup>o</sup>

301

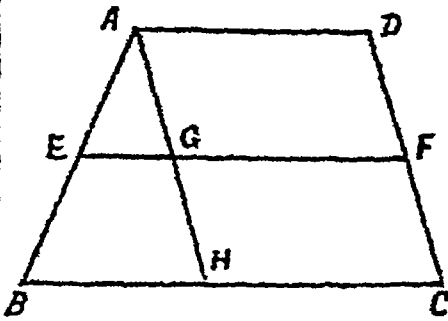
302



6.

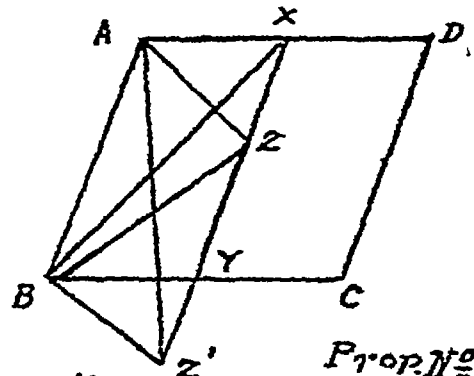


7.

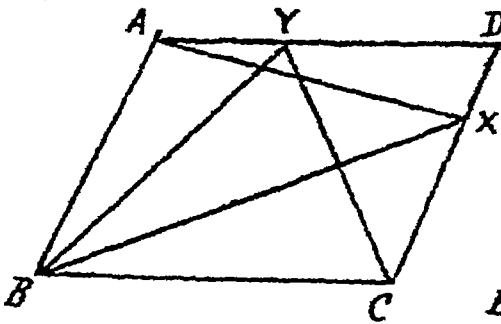


8.

Prop. No.  
303  
304

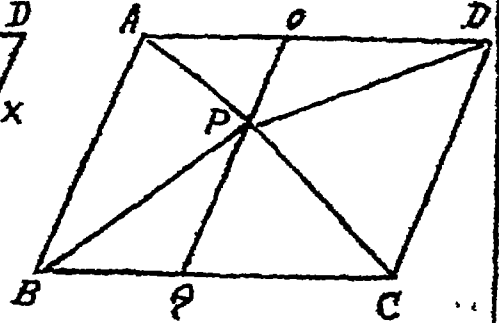


9.



10.

Prop. No.  
305.306.



## PART II

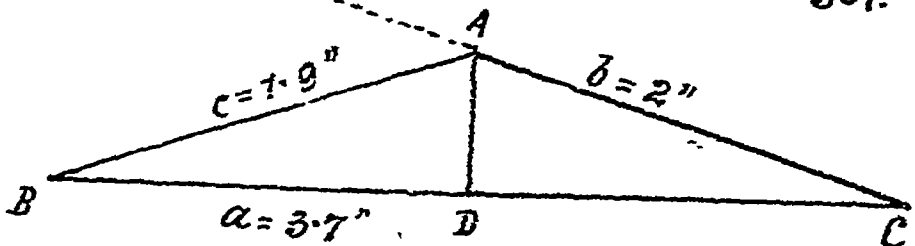
Page 110.

on area of triangles.

Exer

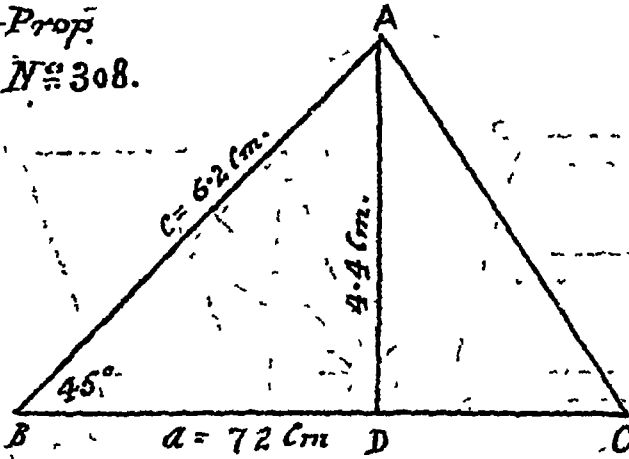
1.

Prop. No.  
307.

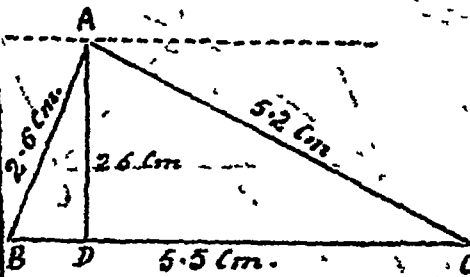




Prop.  
N<sup>o</sup> 308.

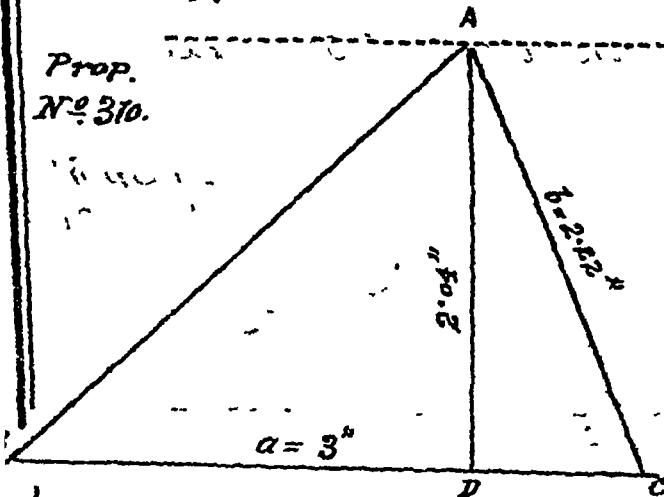


Prop. 3  
N<sup>o</sup> 309.



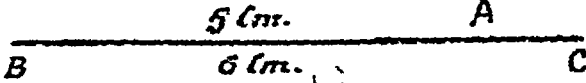
4.

Prop.  
N<sup>o</sup> 310.

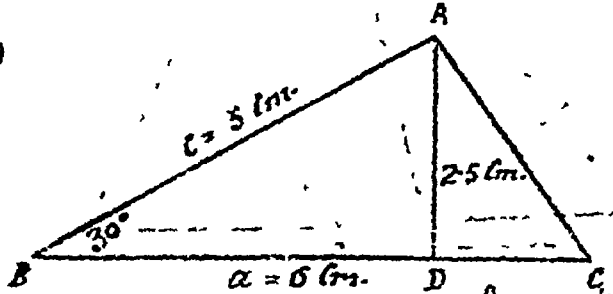


Prop.  
Nº 311.

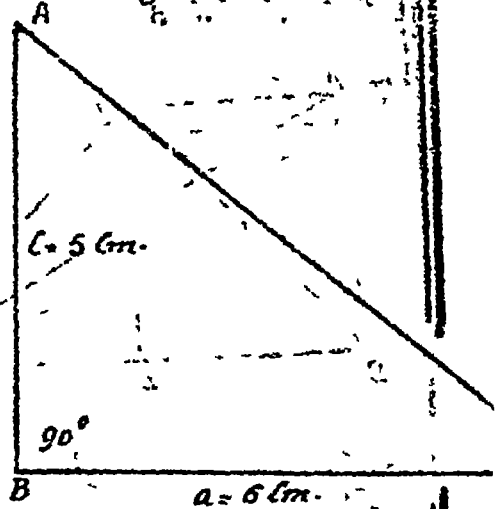
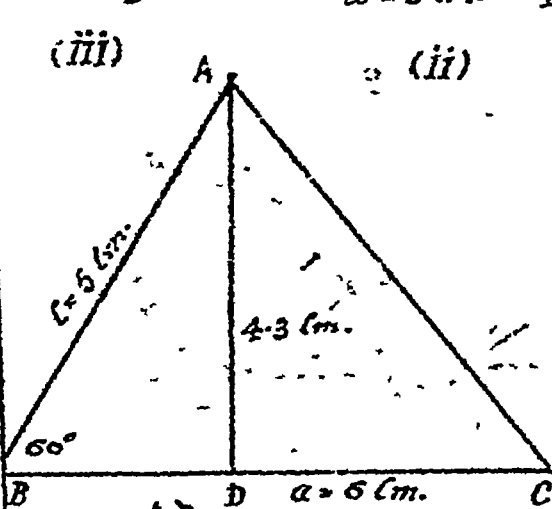
5  
(i)



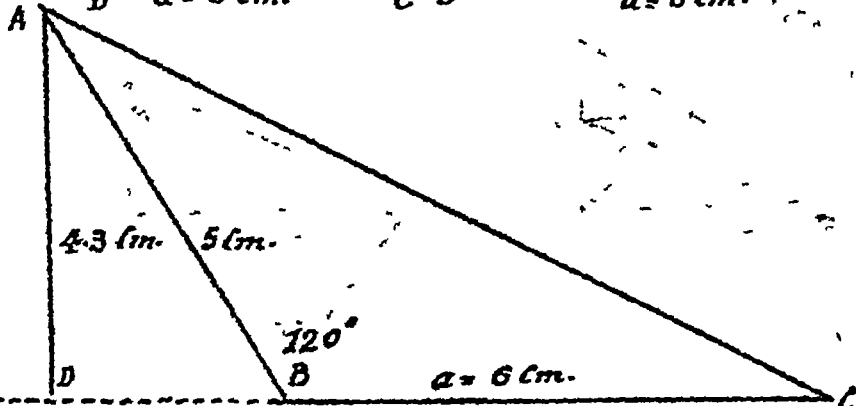
(ii)



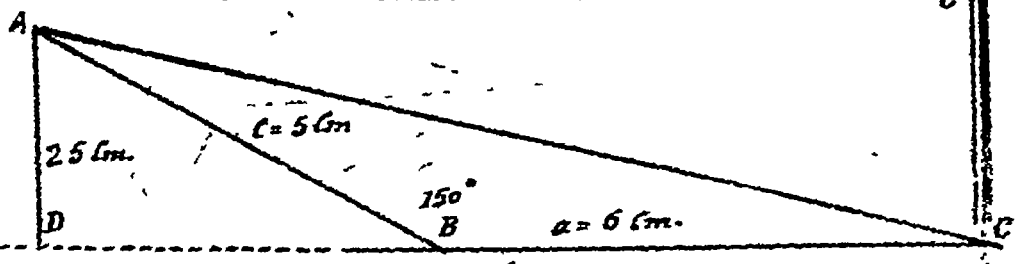
(iii)



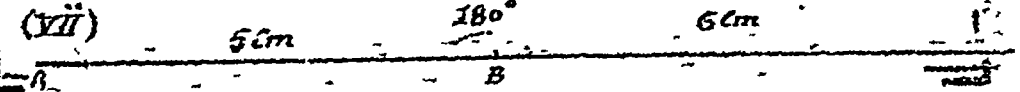
(V)



(VI)



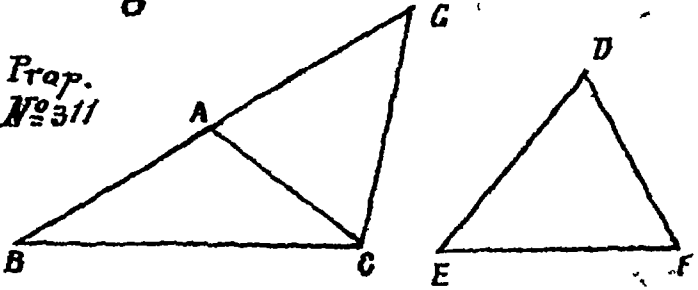
(VII)



THEORETICALLY.

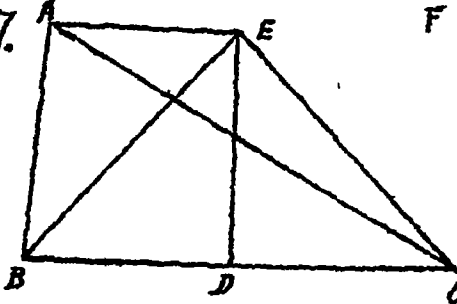
6

Prop.  
N<sup>o</sup> 311



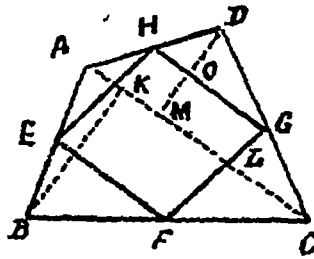
Prop. N<sup>o</sup> 312. 313.

7.



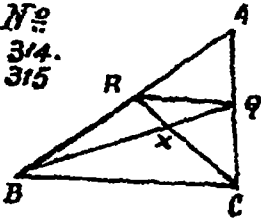
F

8.

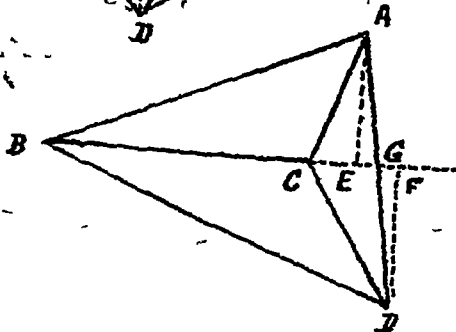
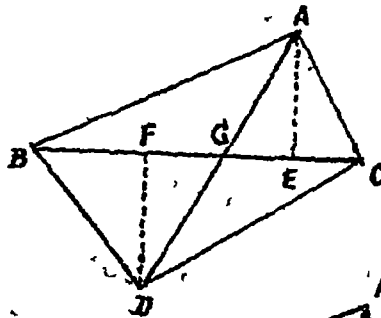


Prop.  
N<sup>o</sup>  
314.  
315

9.



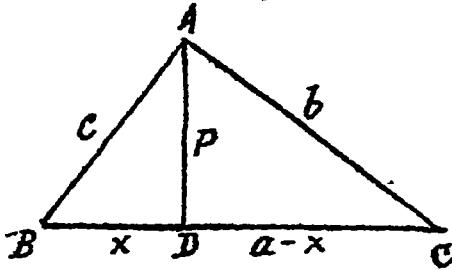
10.



## PART II

Page. III

Exer.

Prop. No.  
316.

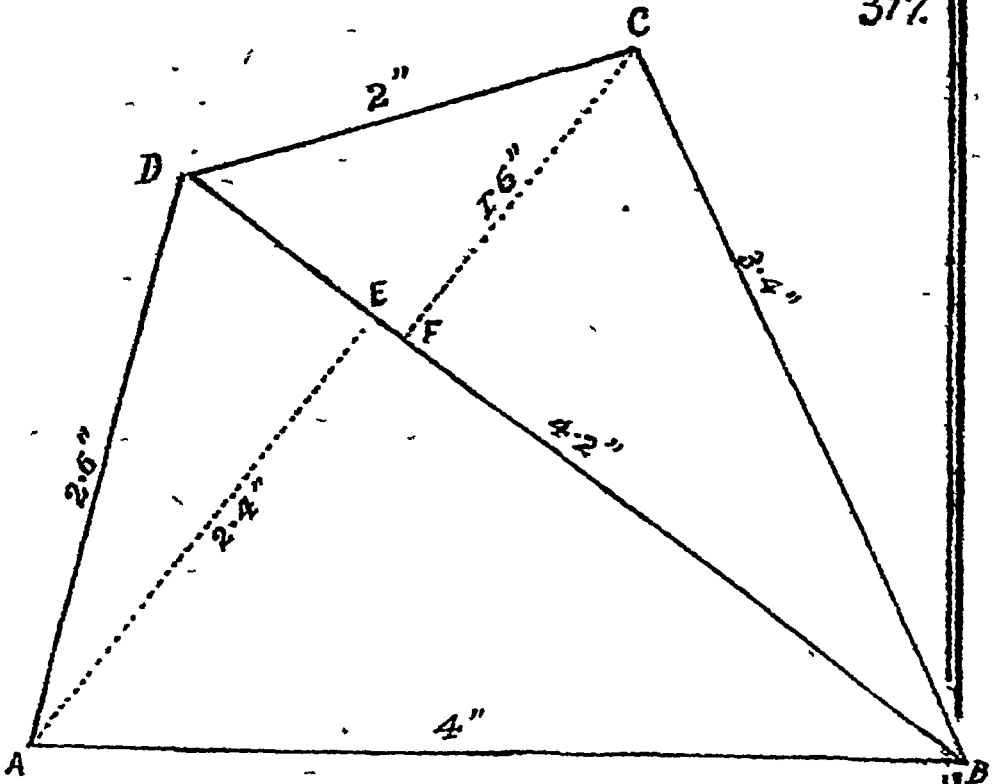
## PART II.

Page 113

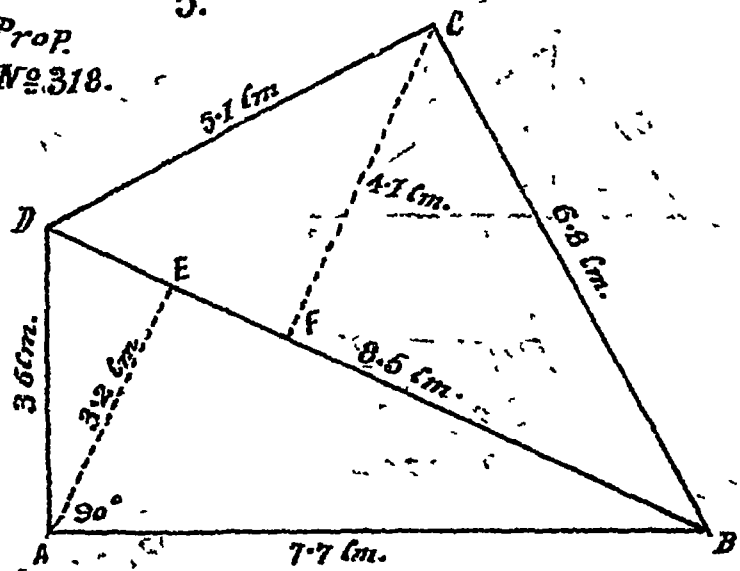
Theor 28.

Exer.

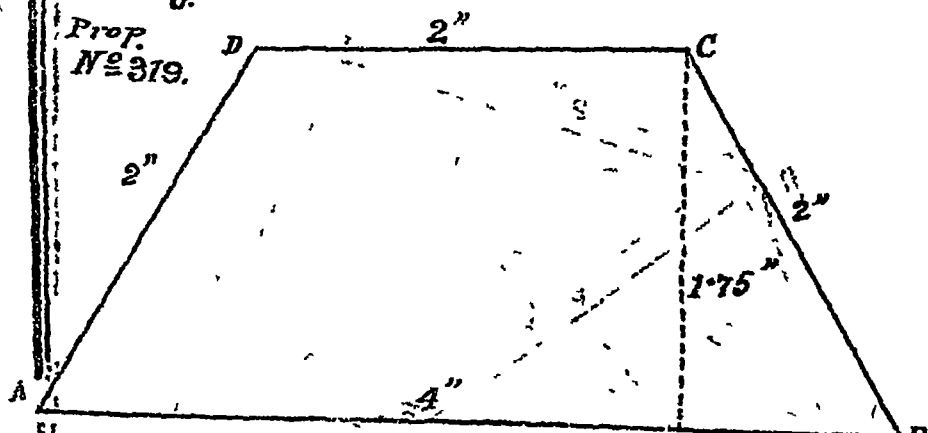
4

Prop. No.  
317.

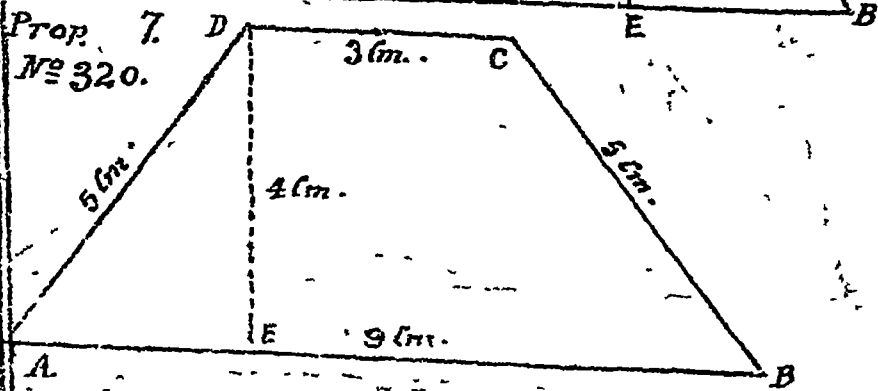
5.  
Prop.  
N<sup>o</sup> 318.



6.  
Prop.  
N<sup>o</sup> 319.



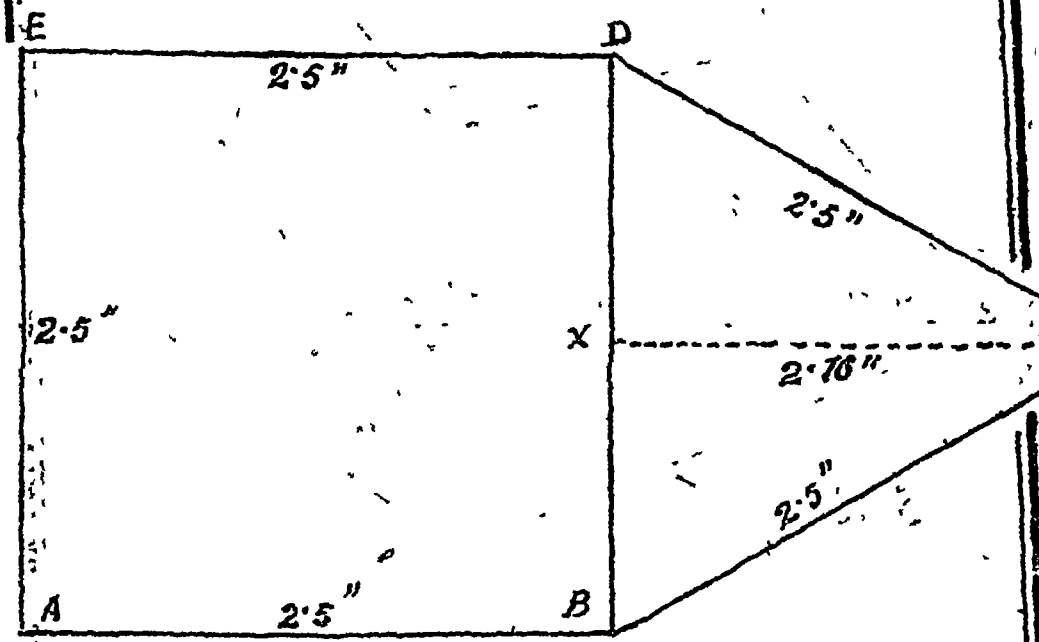
7.  
Prop.  
N<sup>o</sup> 320.



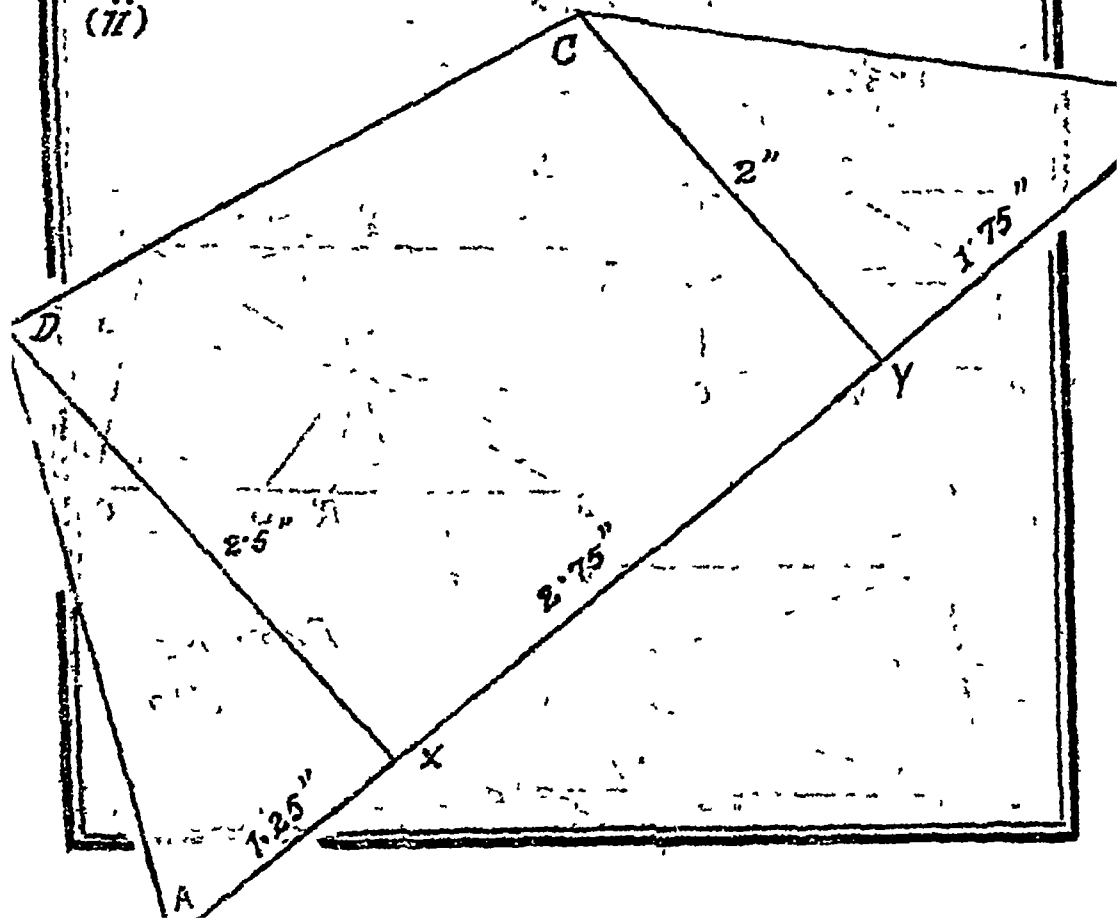
# PART II

Page 115.

2. (i)

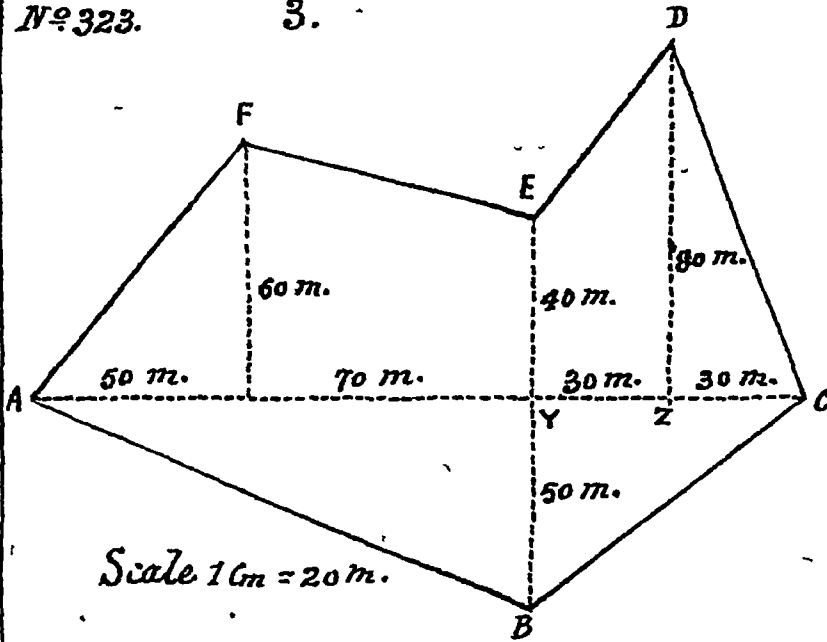


(ii)



Prop.  
N<sup>o</sup> 323.

3.



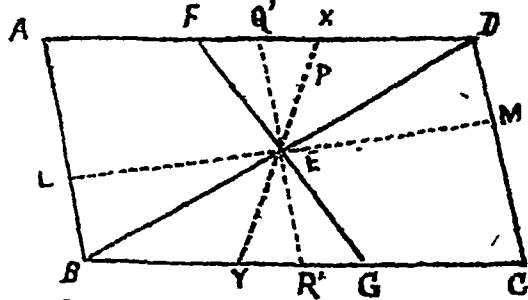
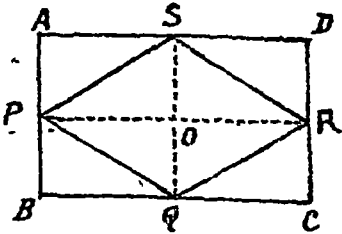
## PART. II

Prop N<sup>o</sup> 324

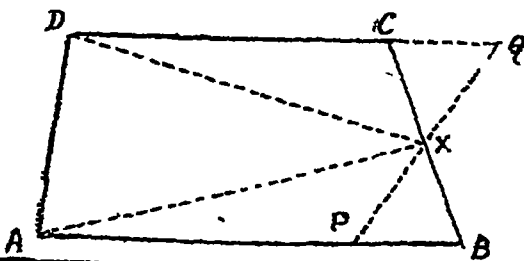
Page 116.

325. Exer-1

2.



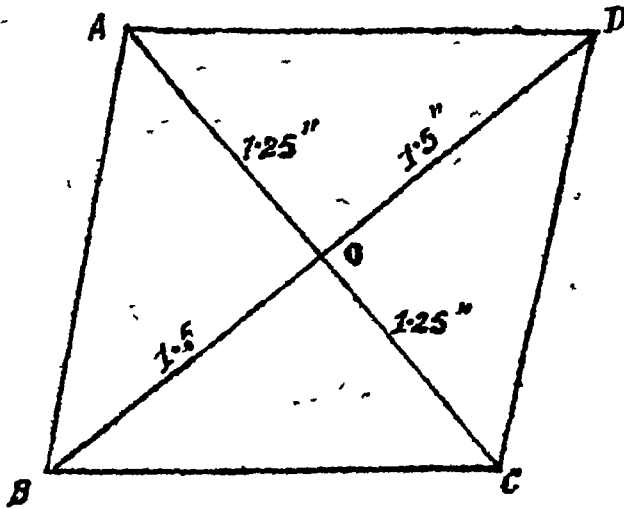
3



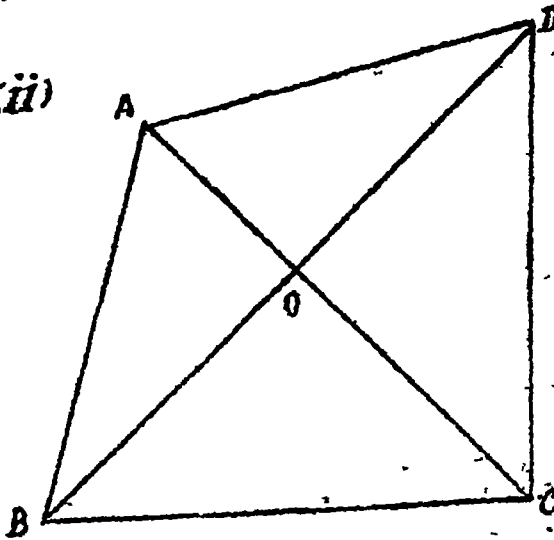
Prop. N<sup>o</sup>

326.

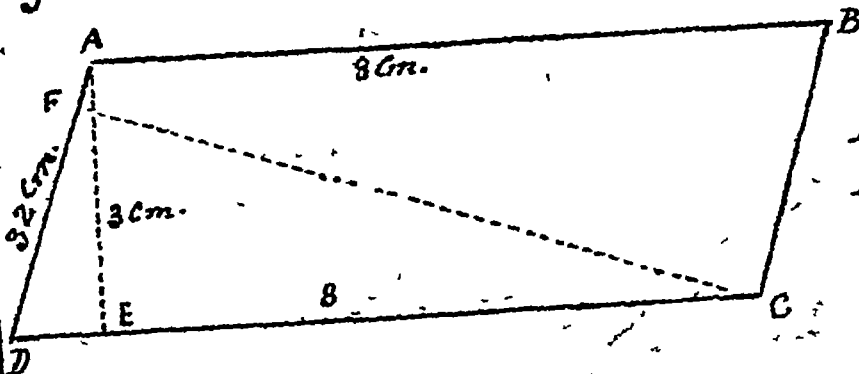
4. (i)

Prop.  
N<sup>o</sup> 327.

(ii)



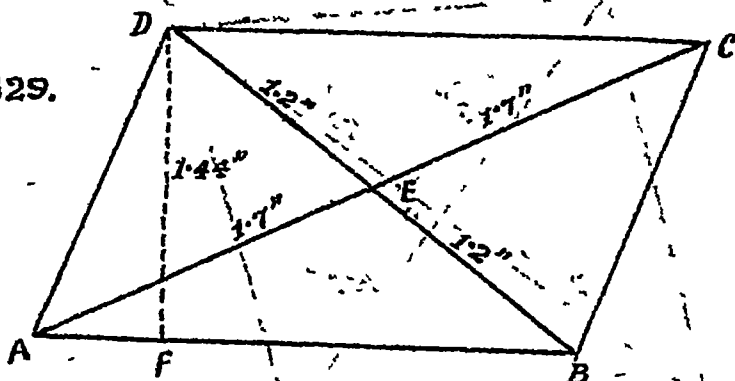
5

Prop.  
N<sup>o</sup> 328

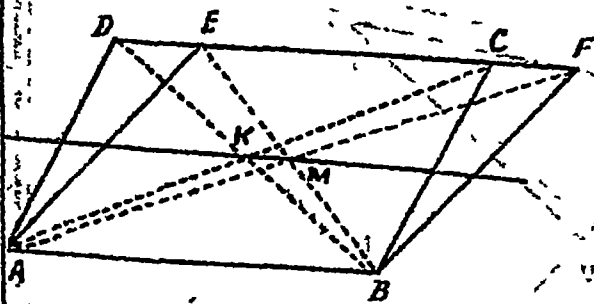


6.

Prop.  
No 329.



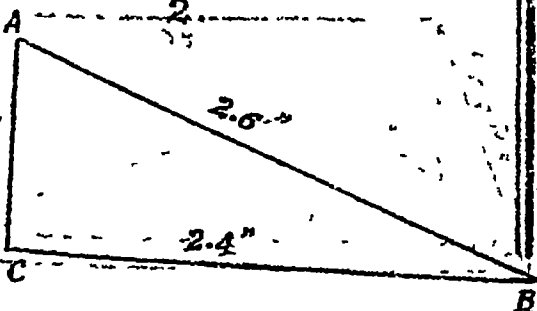
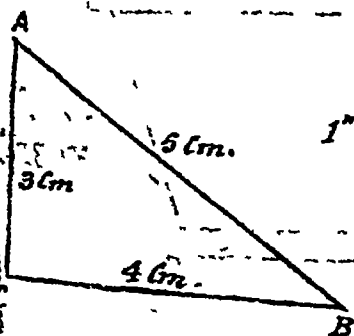
7.



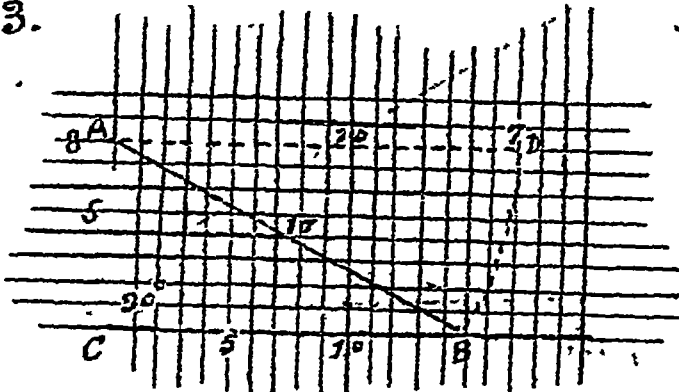
## PART II

Page 117.

Prop.  
No 330.331 Exer  
1.



3.



Prop.  
N<sup>o</sup> 332.

Scale 1" = 10 units.

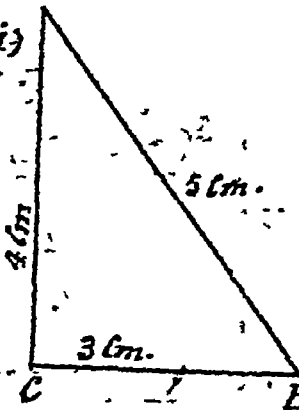
## PART II

Page 121

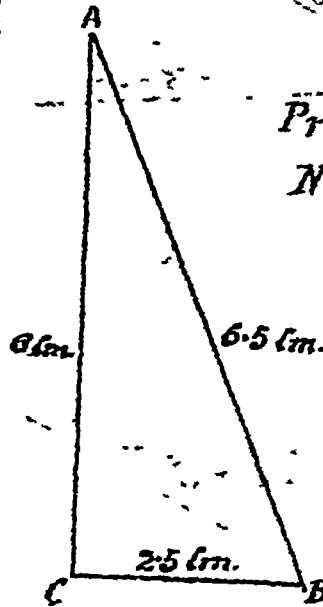
(ii)

Exer

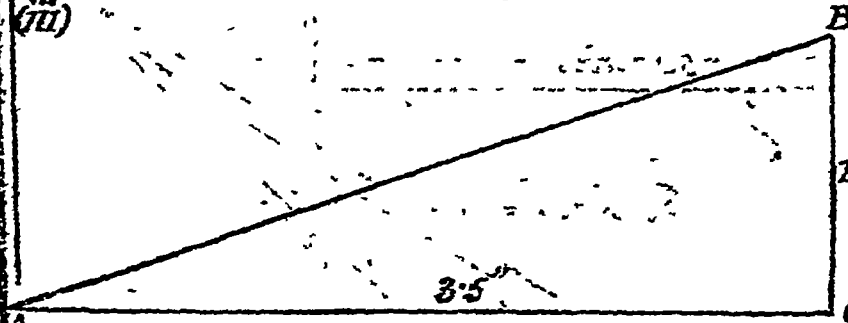
1. (i)



Prop.  
N<sup>o</sup> 333  
334



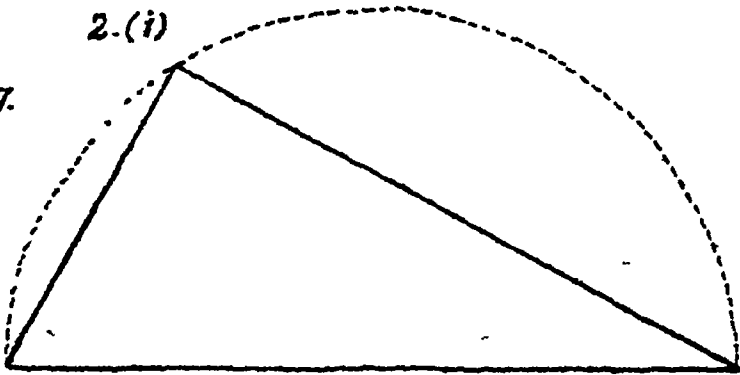
(ii)



Prop  
N<sup>o</sup> 335

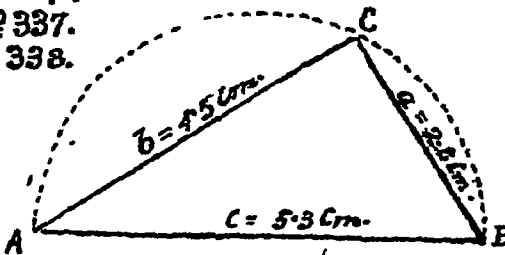
Prop.  
Nº 337.

2. (i)



Prop.  
Nº 338.

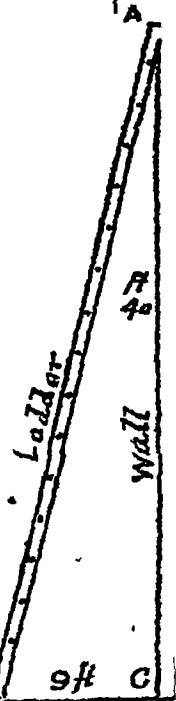
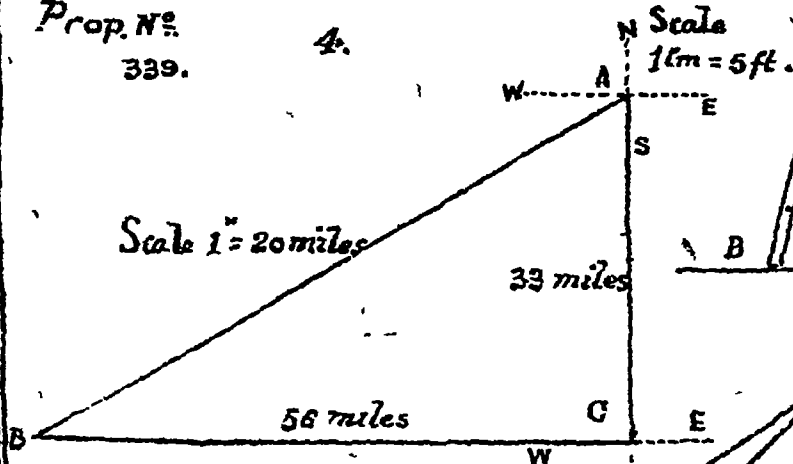
(ii)



3.

Prop. Nº  
339.

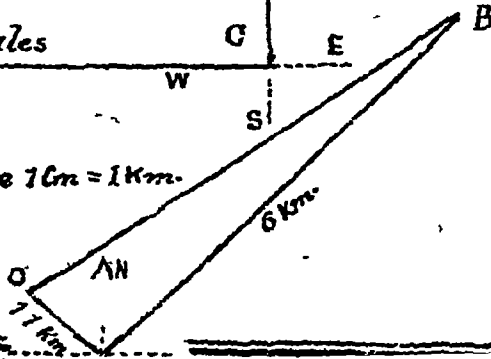
4.

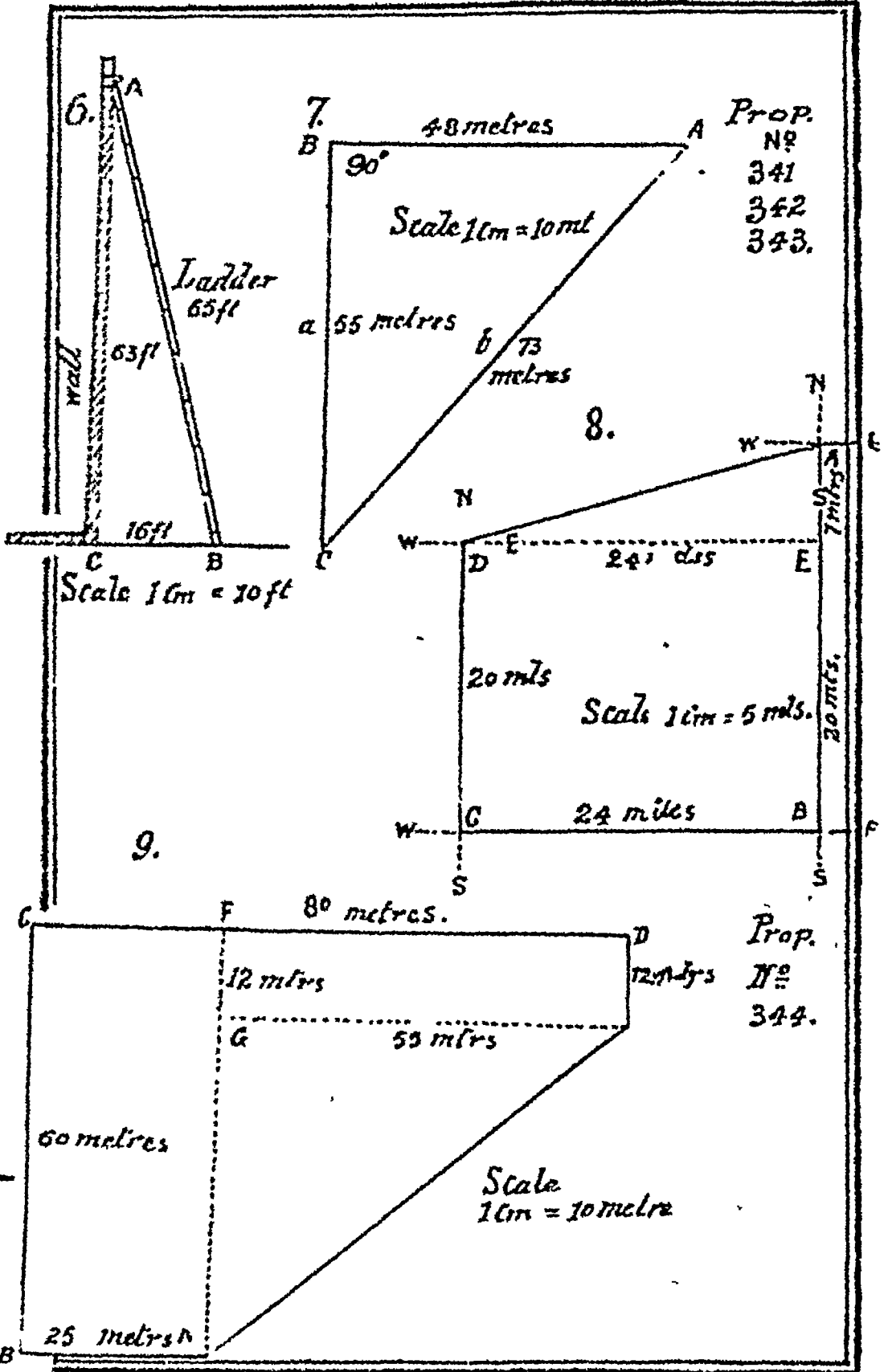


Prop.  
Nº 340.

5

Scale 1 cm = 1 km.



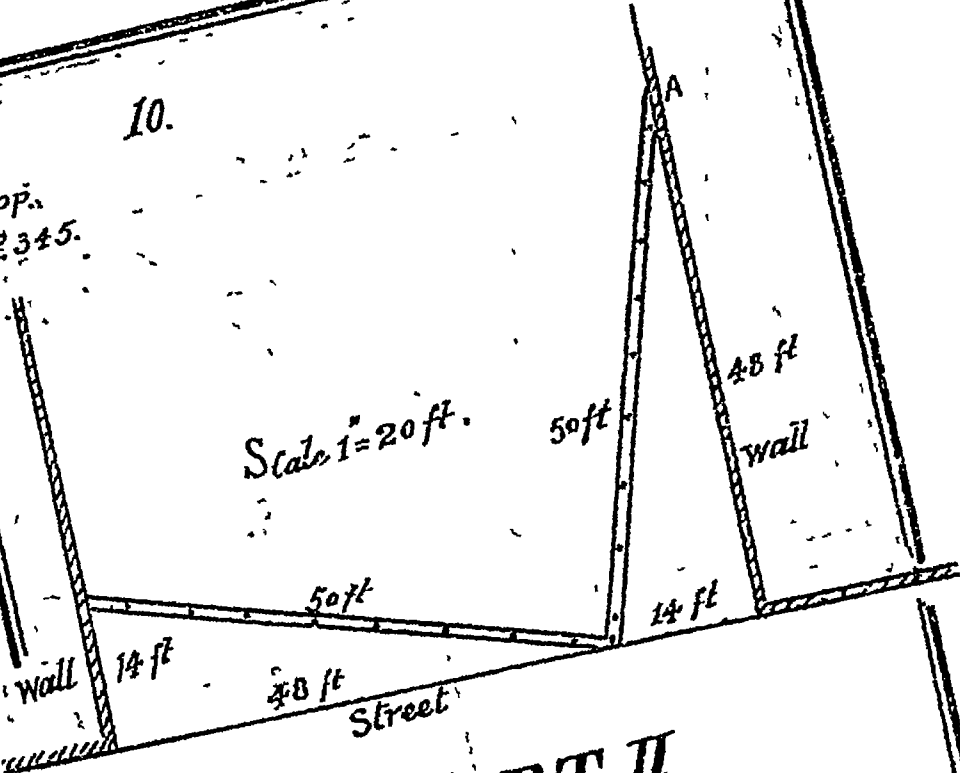


78

10.

Prop.  
N<sup>o</sup> 345.

Scale 1" = 20 ft.

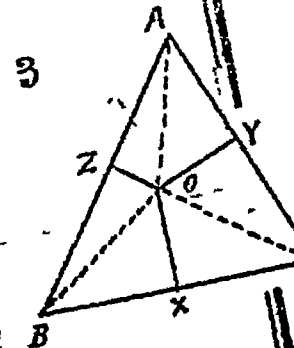
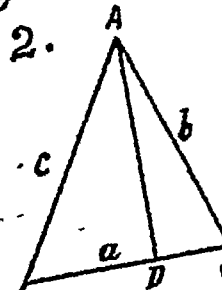
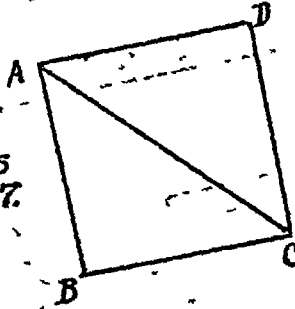


## PART II

Page 123.

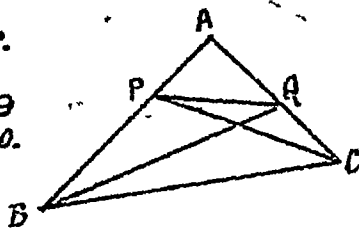
Exer 1.

Prop.  
N<sup>o</sup>  
346  
347.

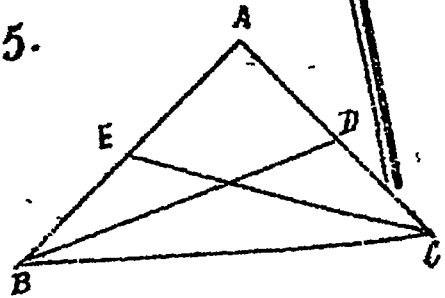


4.

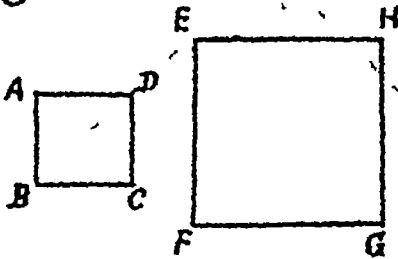
Prop.  
N<sup>o</sup>  
349  
350.



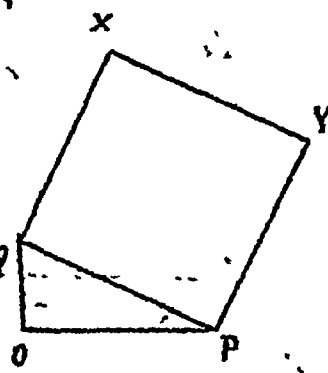
5.



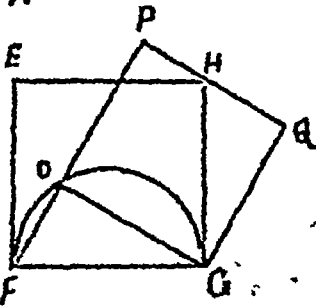
6



Prop.  
Nº 351.

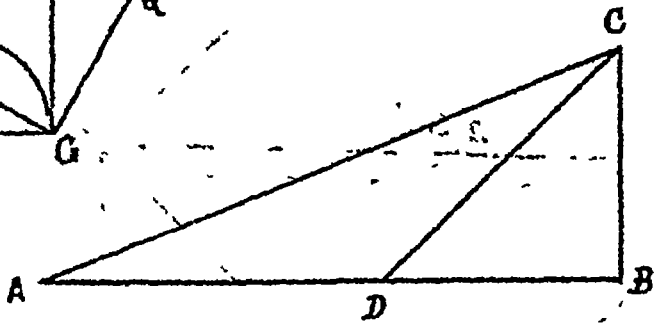


7.

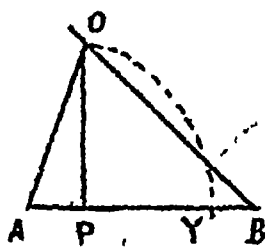
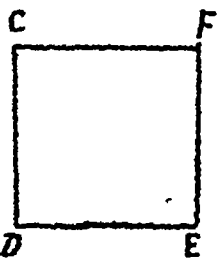


8.

Prop.  
Nº 252.  
253

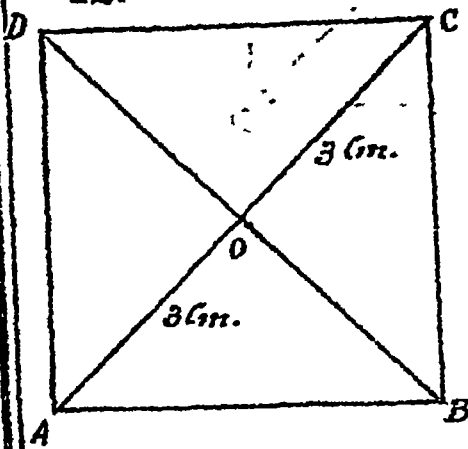


9.



Prop.  
Nº 354  
355.

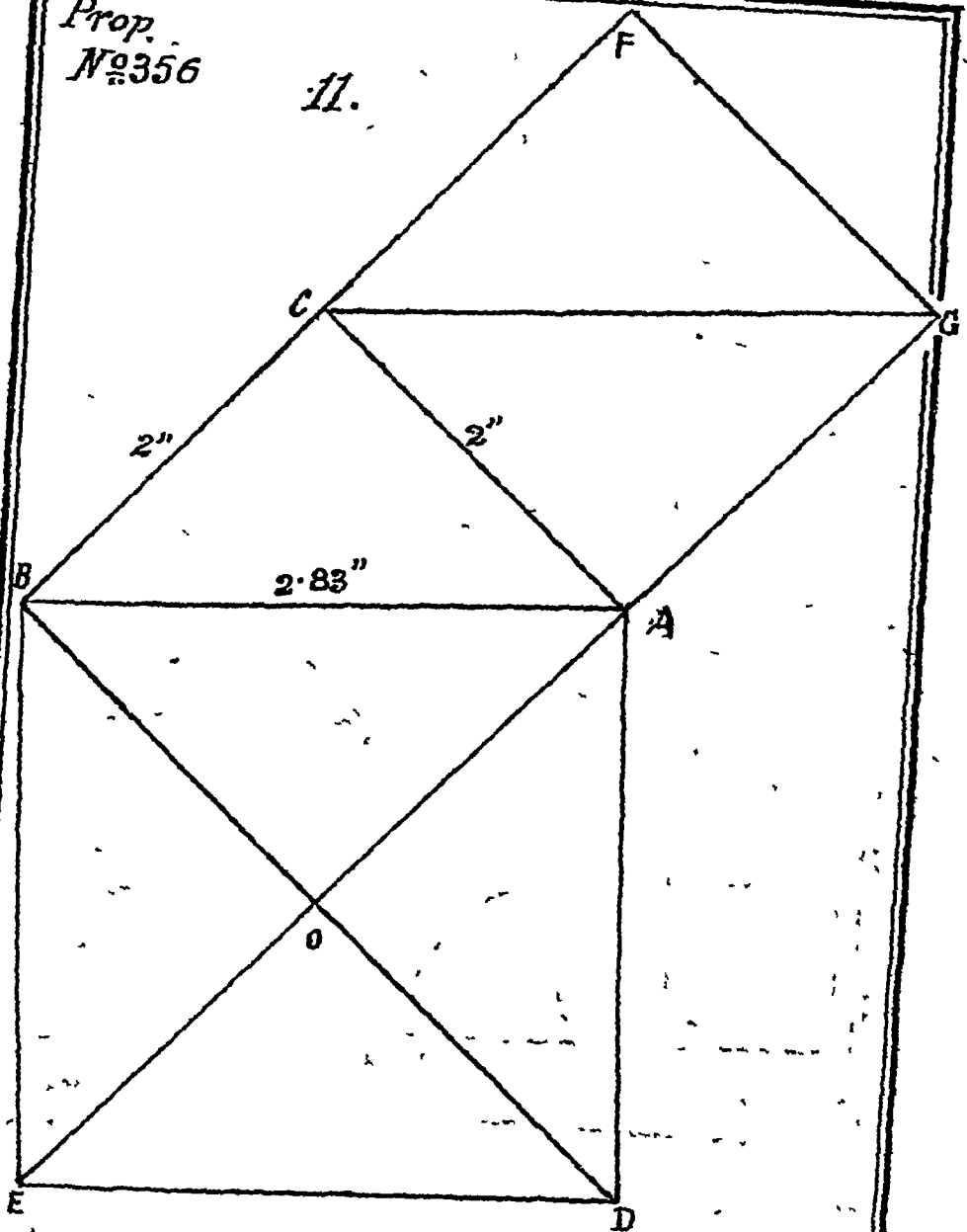
12.



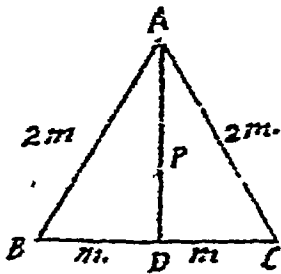
Prop.  
Nº 357

Prop.  
N<sup>o</sup> 356

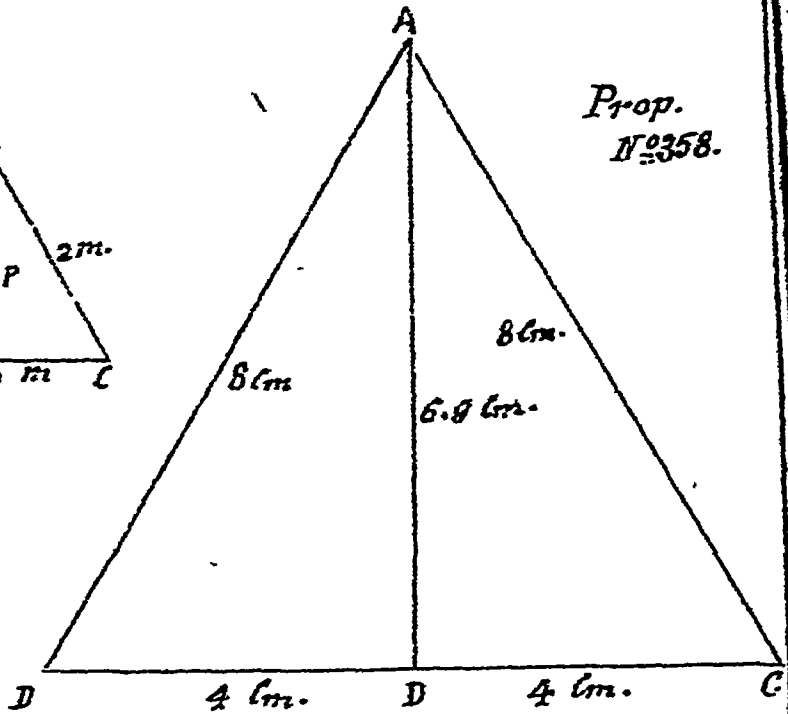
11.



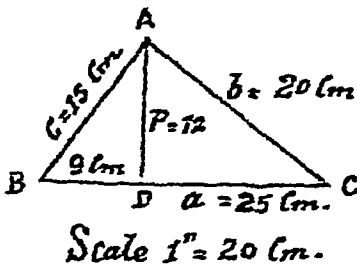
14.



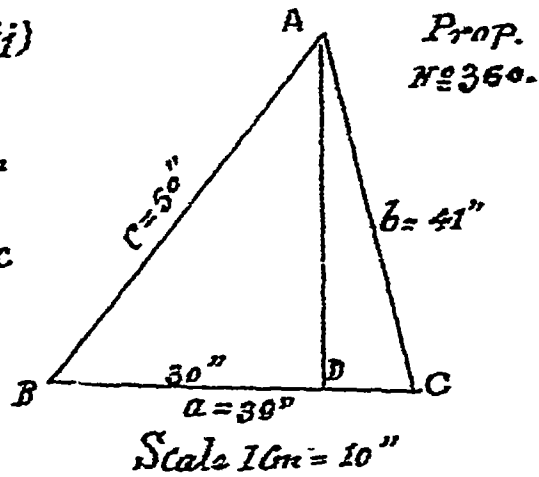
Prop.  
N<sup>o</sup> 358.



16. (i)



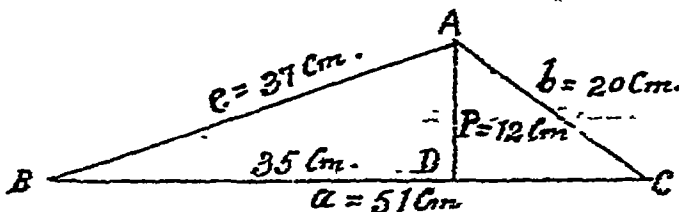
(ii)



17.

Scale  $1'' = 20cm$ .

Prop.  
N<sup>o</sup>  
361.

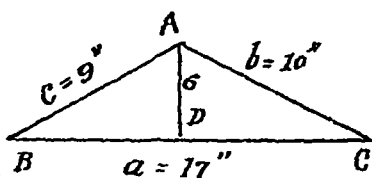




Prop N<sup>o</sup> 362.363.

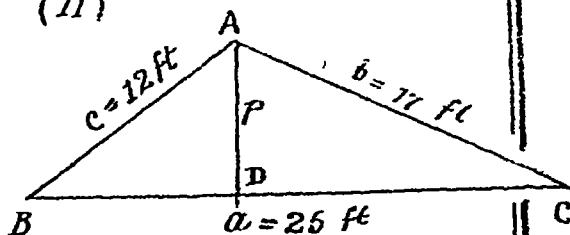
18

(i)



Scale 1" = 10"

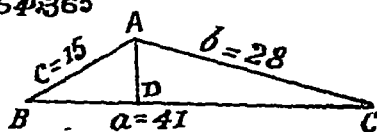
(ii)



Scale 1" = 10 ft

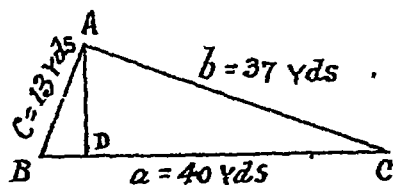
Prop N<sup>o</sup>  
364.365

(iii)



Scale 1 cm = 10 cm

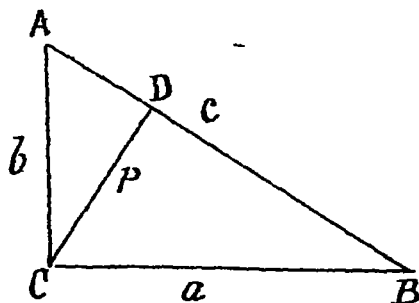
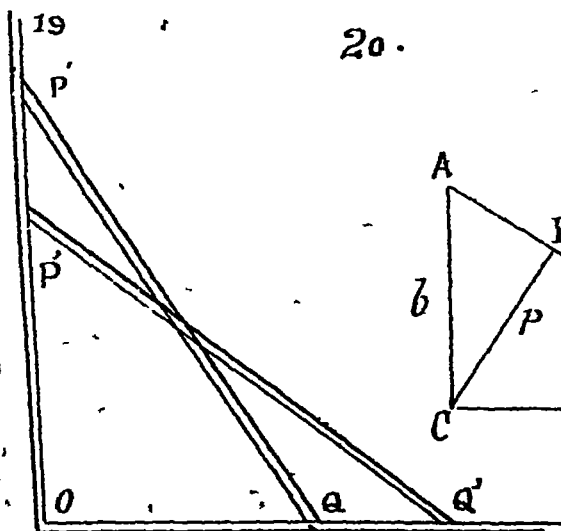
(iv)



Scale 1 cm = 10 yds

Prop. N<sup>o</sup> 366.  
367

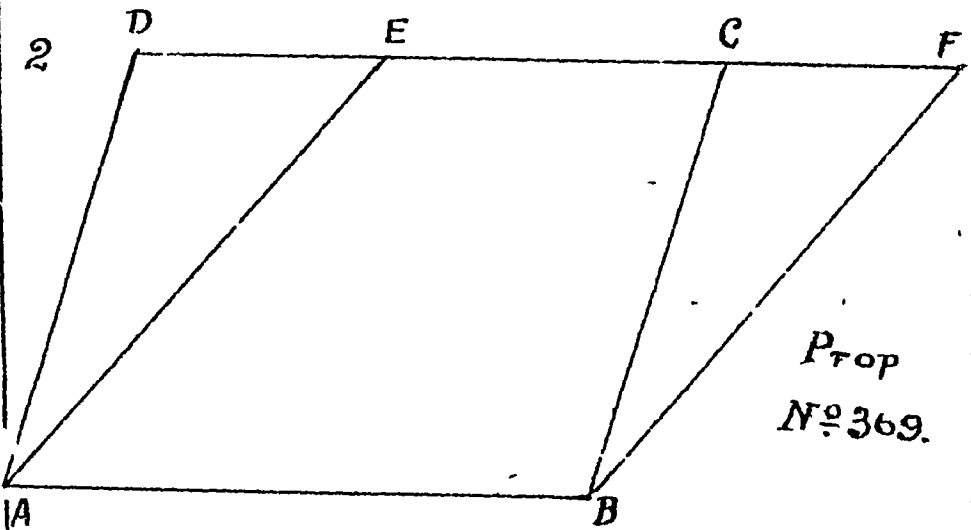
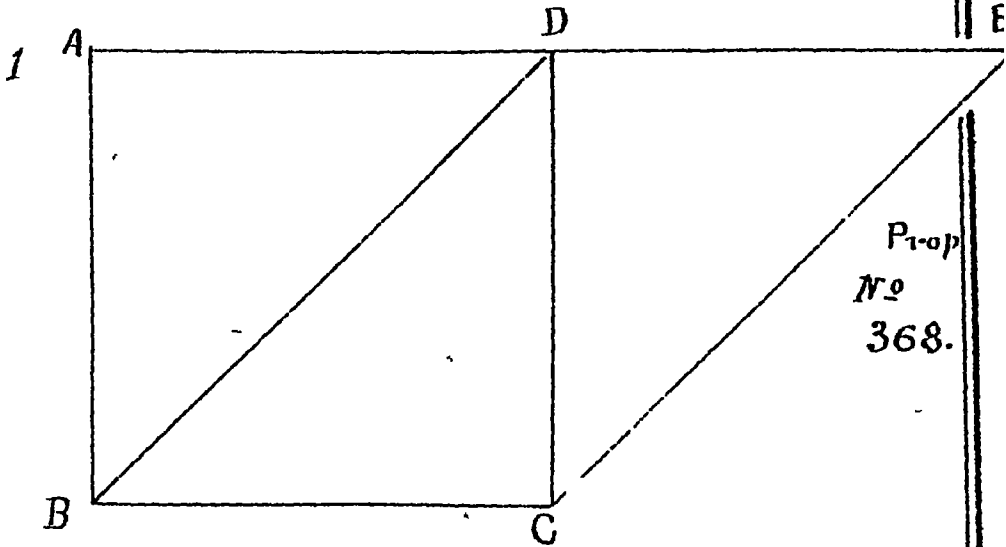
20.



## PART II

PAGE 127

Exer.



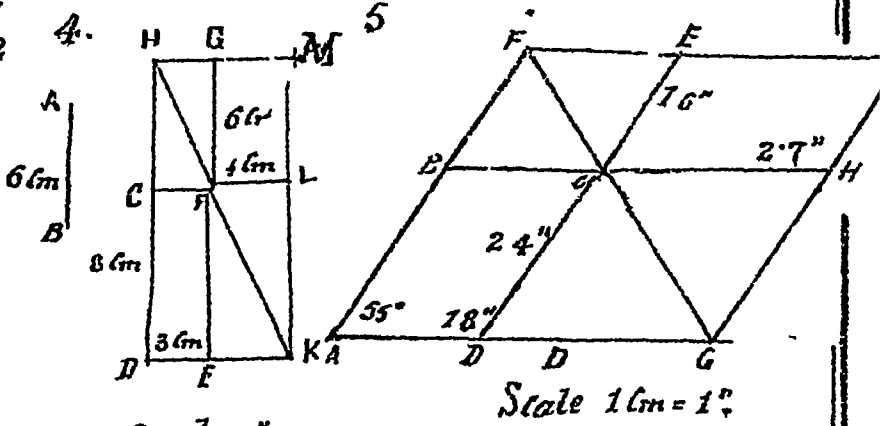
Prop.

N<sup>o</sup>

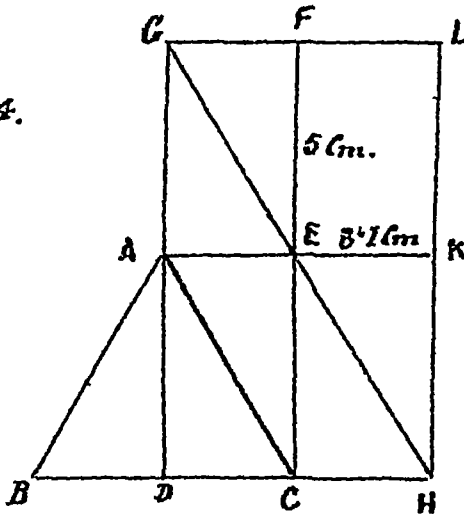
371

372

4.

6. Scale  $1'' = 10\text{cm}$ .

Prop.

N<sup>o</sup> 374. $a = 6\text{cm}$ .

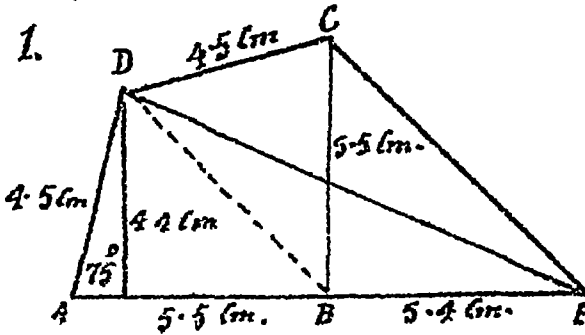
# PART II.

Page 130.

Prob. 18-19.

Exor.

1.

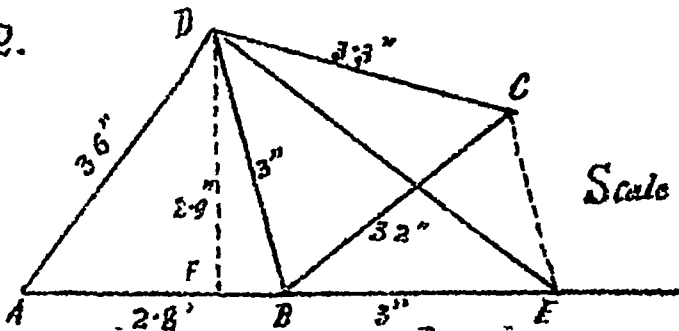


Scale 1" = 5 cm.

Prop.

Nº 375.

2.

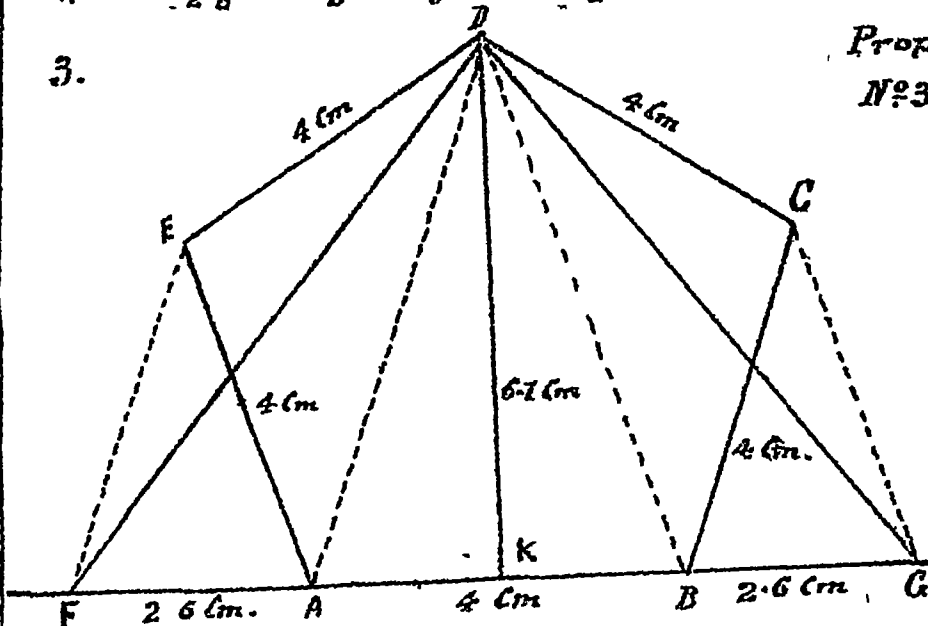


Scale 1 cm = 1"

Prop.

Nº 376.

3.

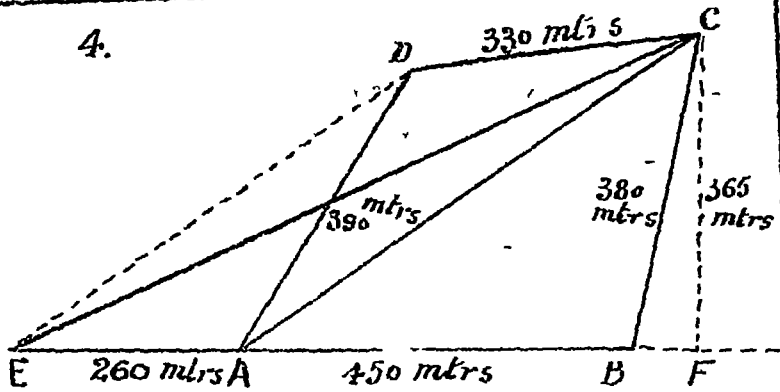


Prop.

Nº 377.

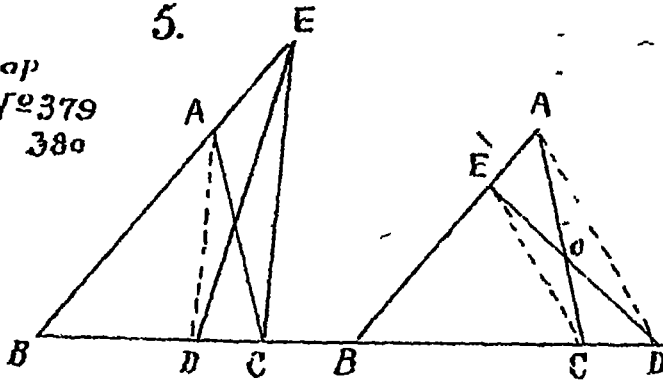
Prop.  
Nº  
378

4.



Prop  
Nº 379  
380

5.

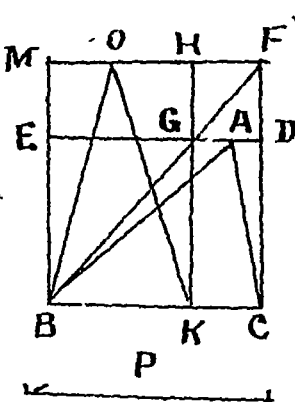
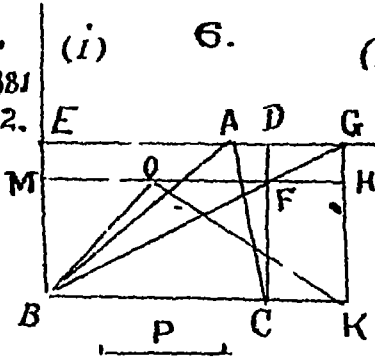


Prop  
Nº 381  
382.

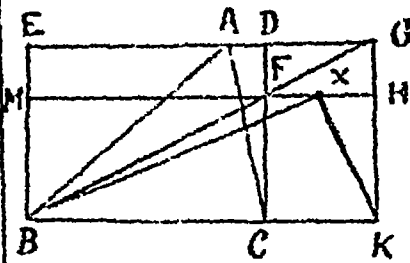
(i)

6.

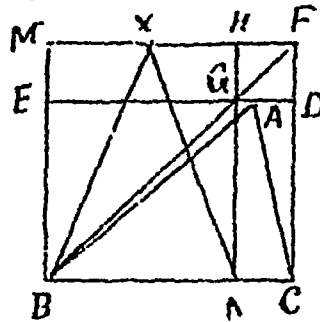
(ii)



7. (i)



(ii)

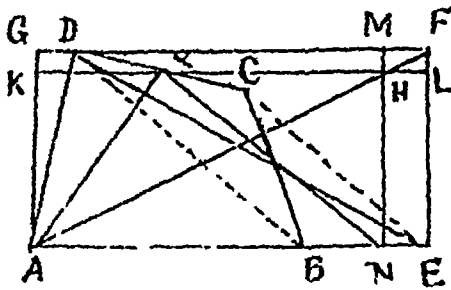


Prop No

383.

384

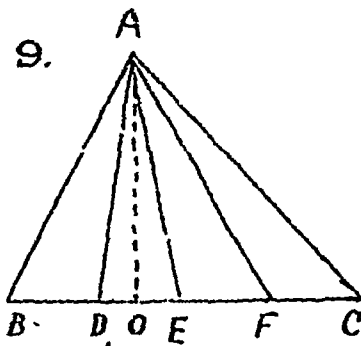
8



Prop.

No 385.

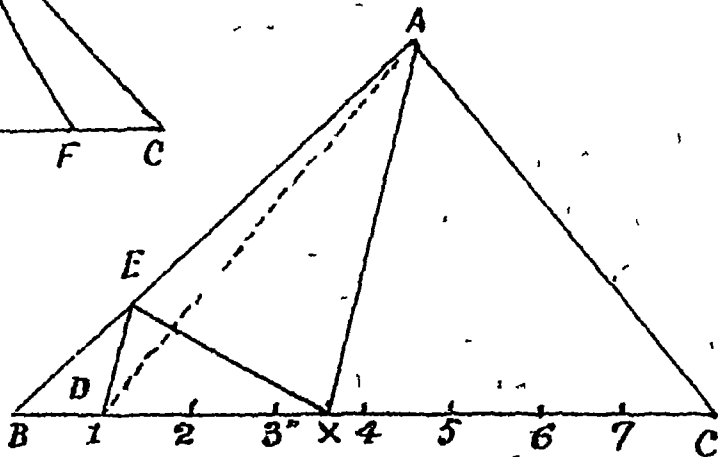
9.



12.

Prop.

No 386. 387.



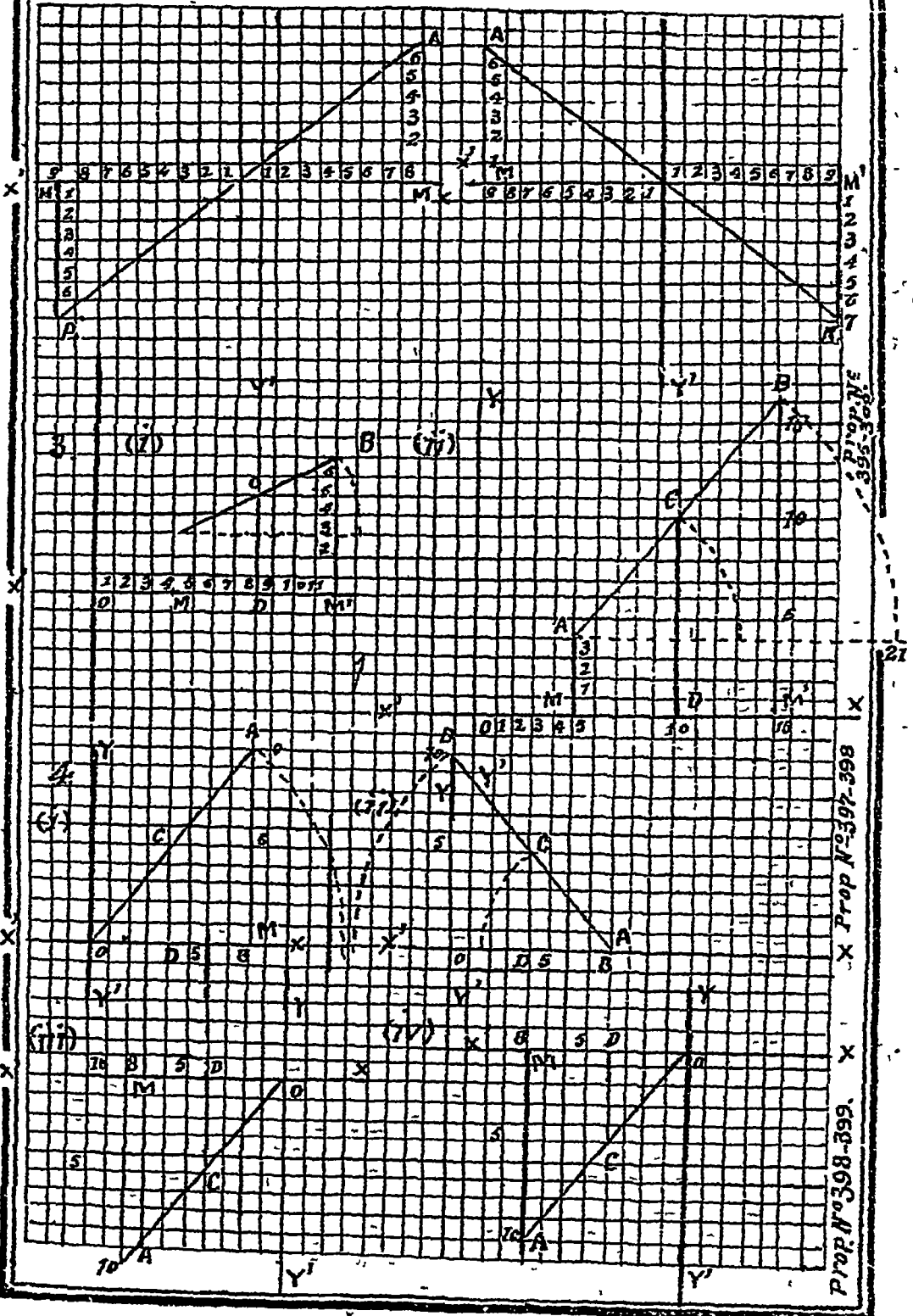


2.

Prop. No.  
393-394.

Y

V



Prop. No. 393-394  
Prop. No. 395-396  
Prop. No. 397-398  
Prop. No. 398-399



**Nº 4-00**

$x_p = 0.4014$  ,  $x$

Pro. No. 403 404 405

$\dot{x}_1 = 7.5$



1"

2"

1x<sup>5</sup>

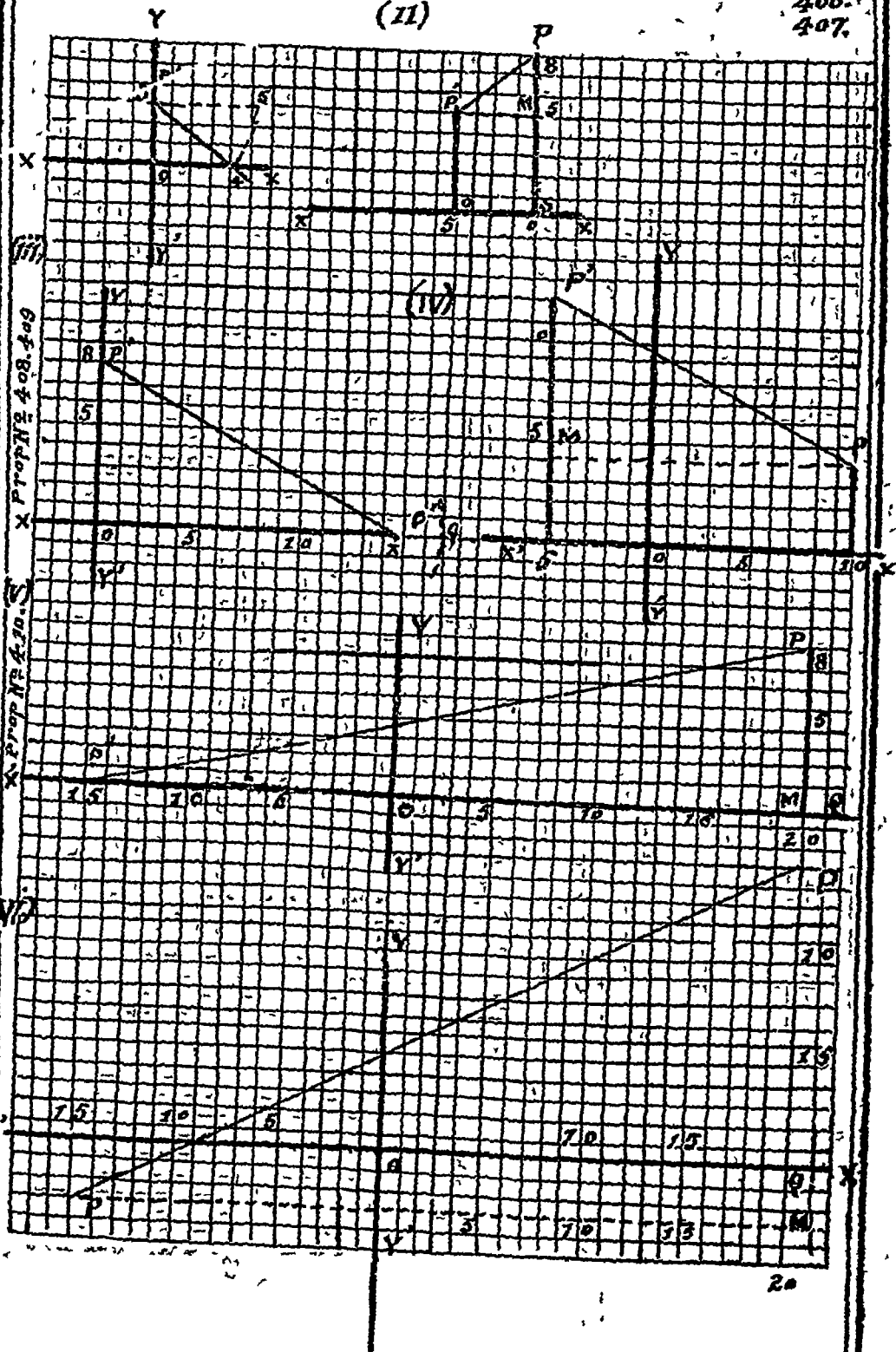
8. (i)

Prop N<sup>o</sup>

406.

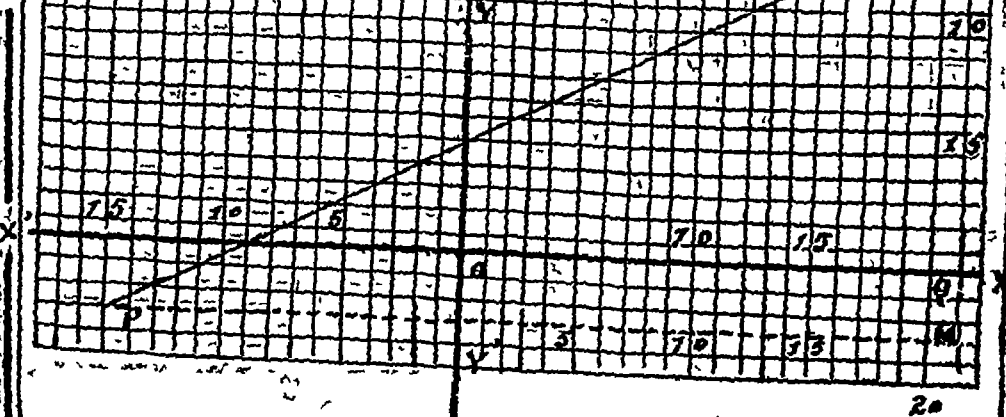
407.

(ii)



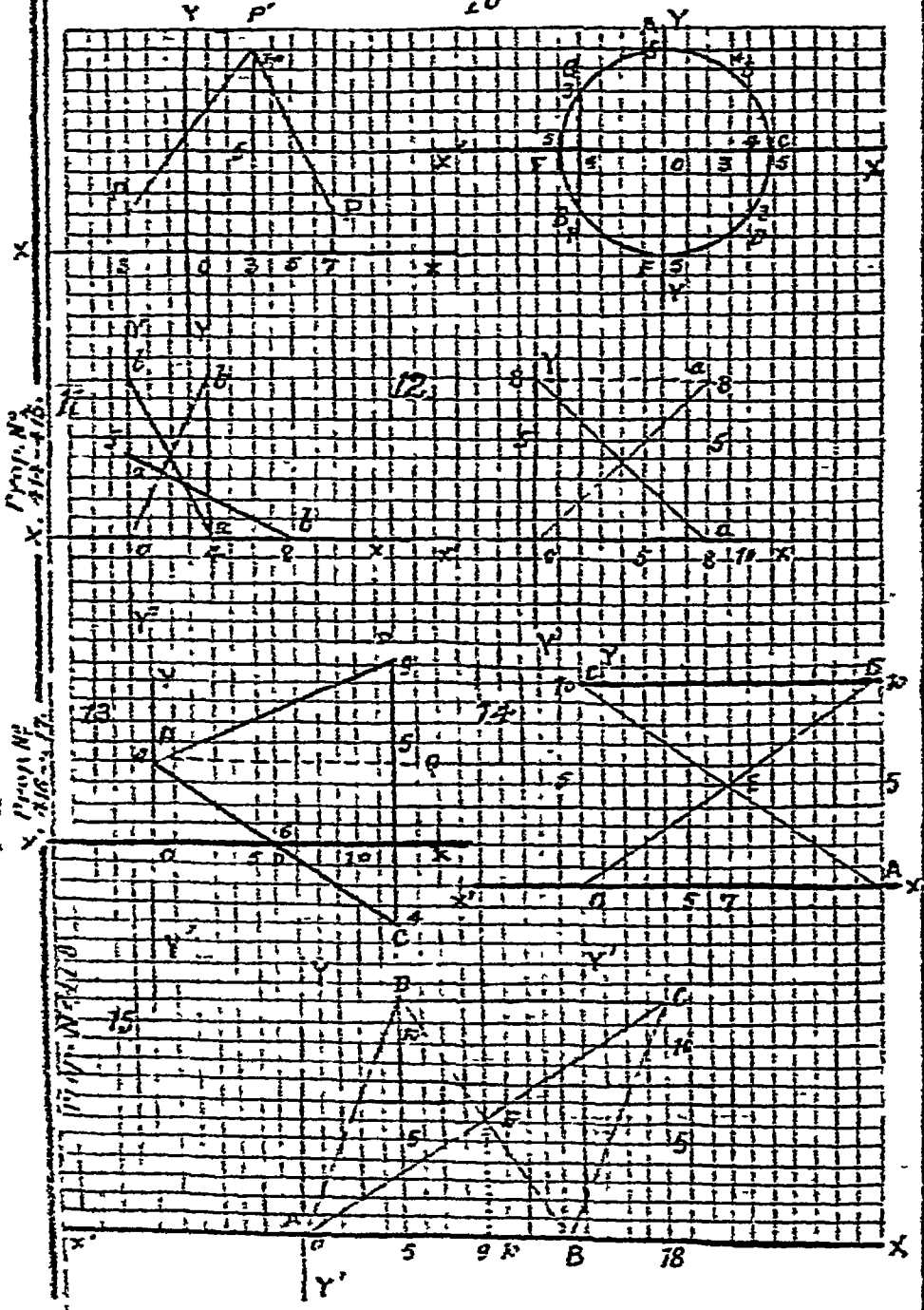
Prop N<sup>o</sup> 408. 409.

(v)



PROP.  
Nº 412-413. 9

10



PROP. Nº  
X. 412-413.  
PROP. Nº  
X. 416-417.

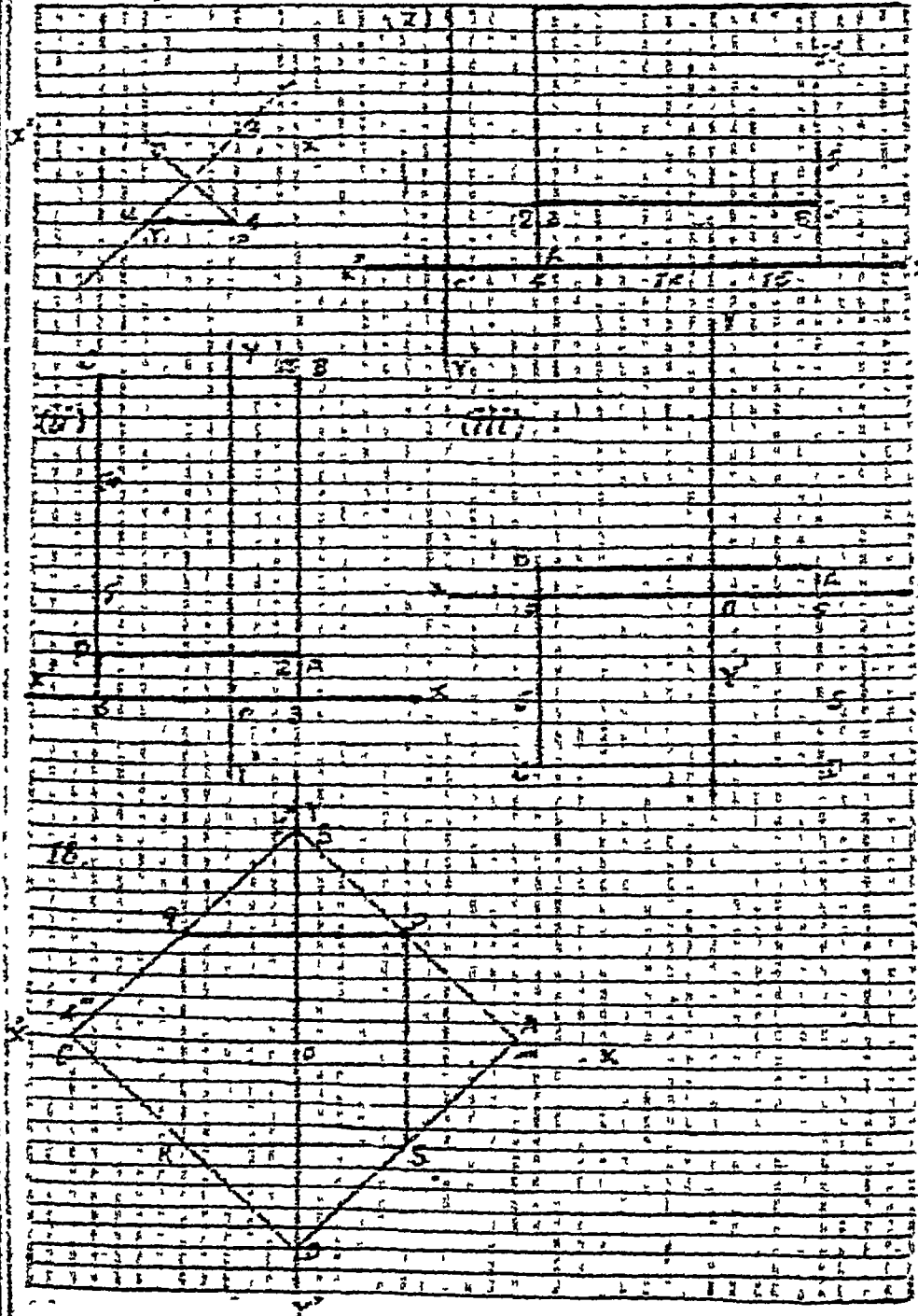
16.

17.

Y

D

C

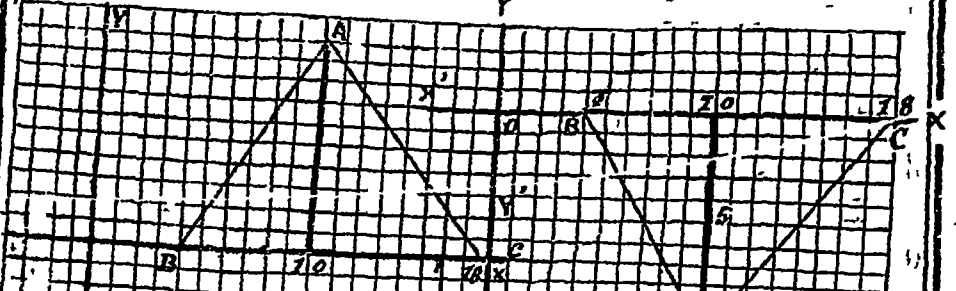


19.

(i)

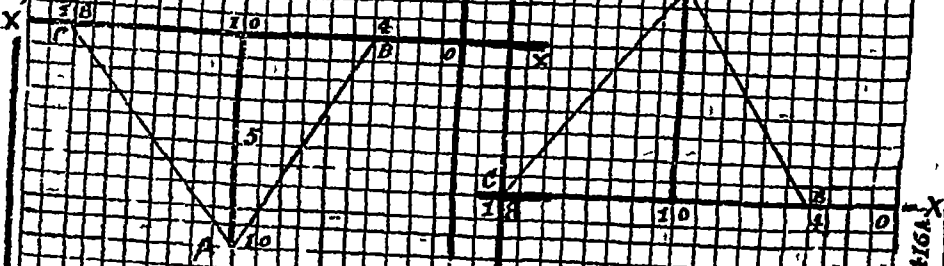
(ii)

Y



(iii)

(ii')



20 (i)

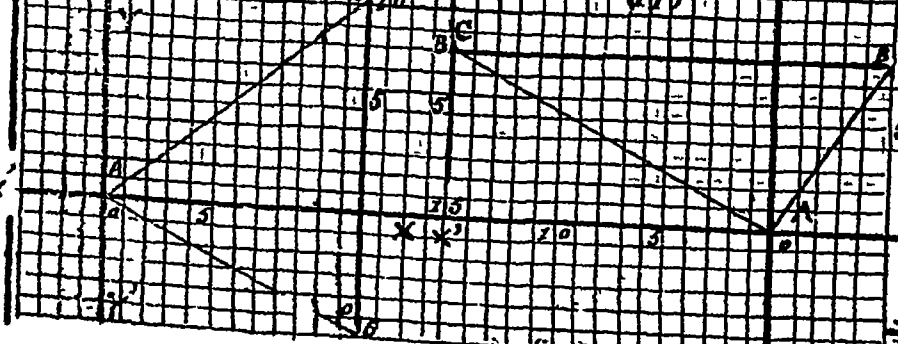
(ii)

Y



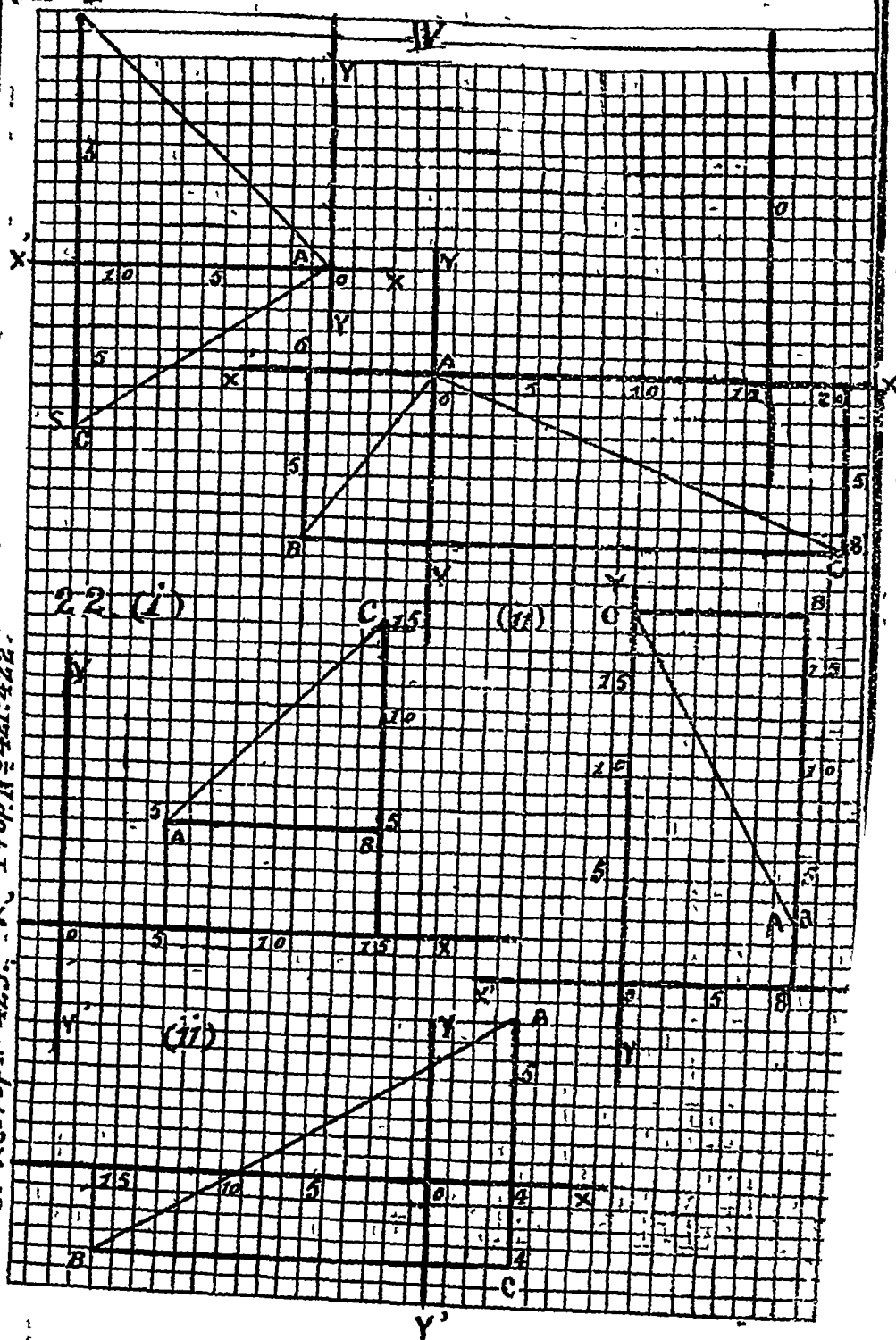
(i')

(ii')



PROP No 418A. 418A

(iii)  $B^0$

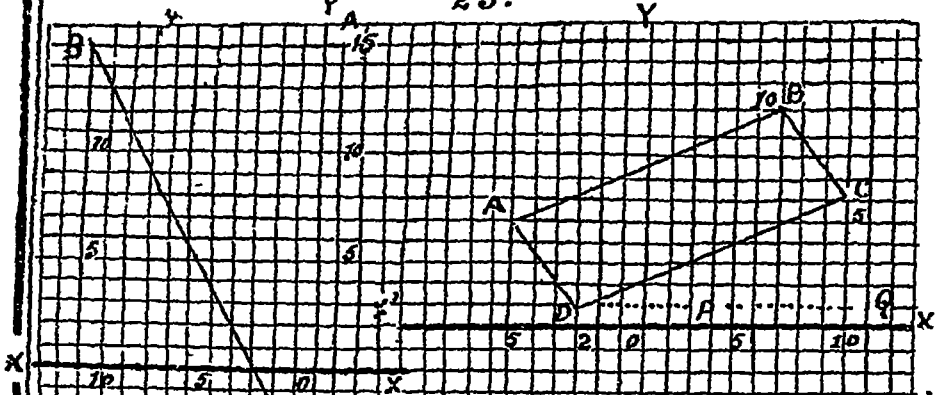


Prop N<sup>o</sup>

424. 425.

(IV)

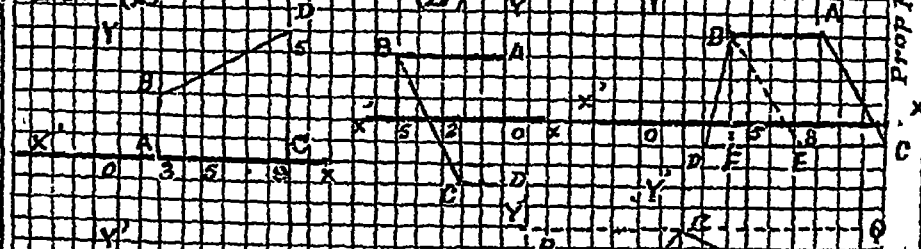
23.



24. (I)

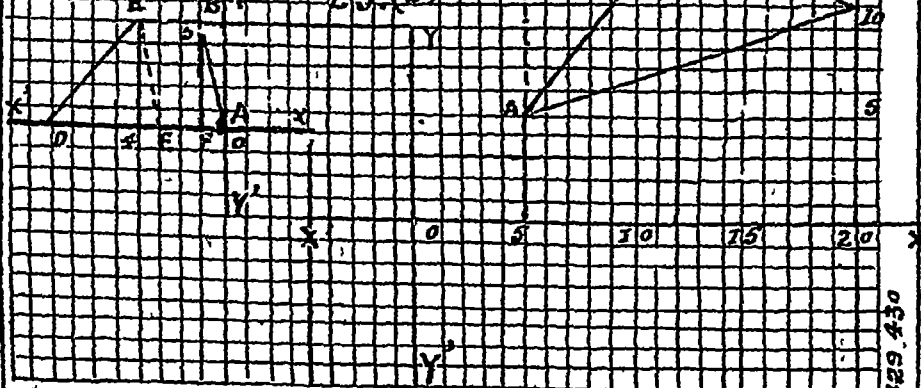
(II)

(III)



(IV)

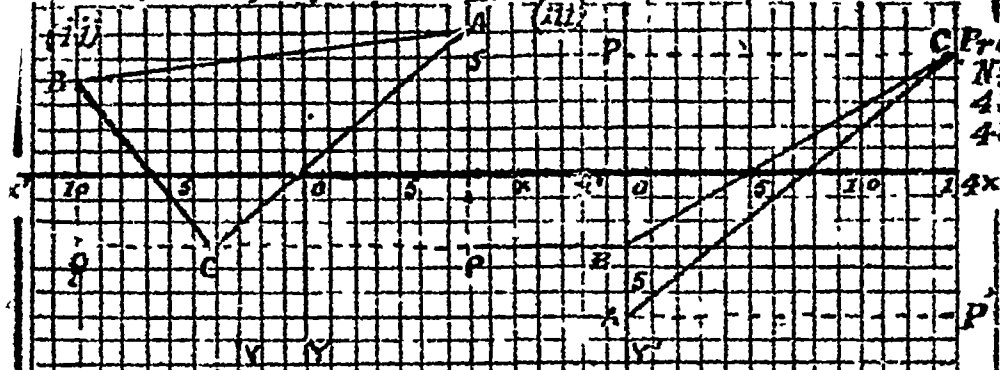
25. (I)



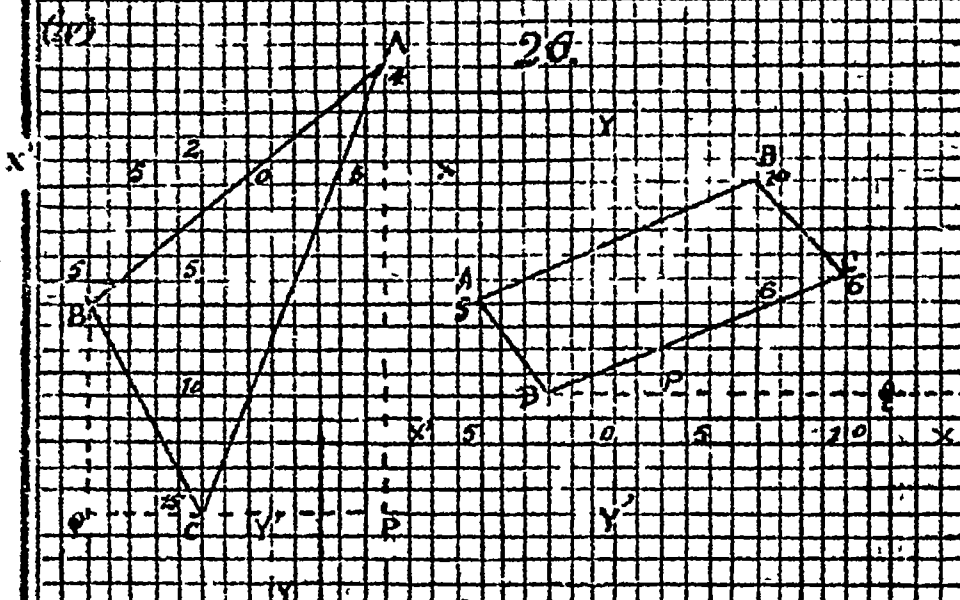
Prop N<sup>o</sup> 426. 427. 428.

Prop N<sup>o</sup> 429. 430

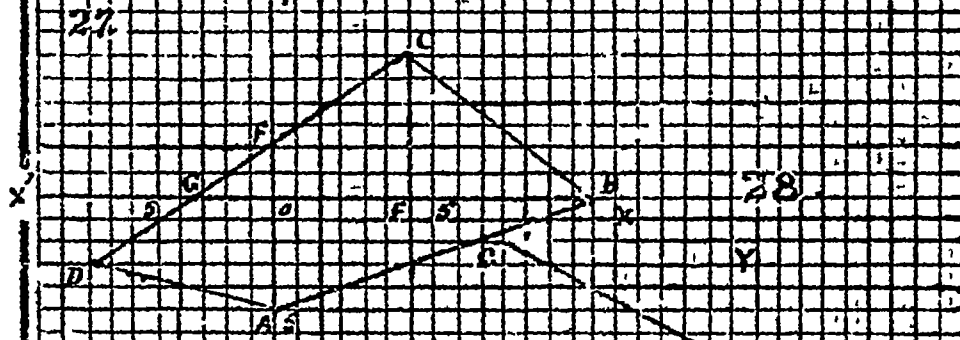
25. 5 10 Y 20 30 40



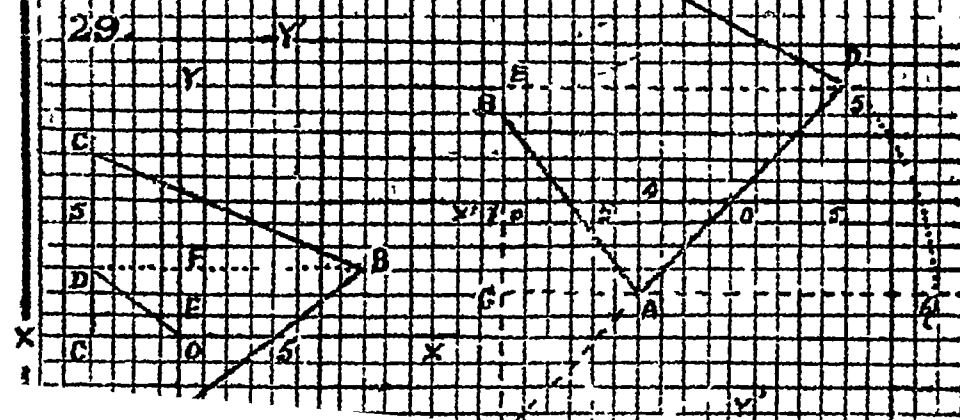
Prop.  
No.  
431  
432.



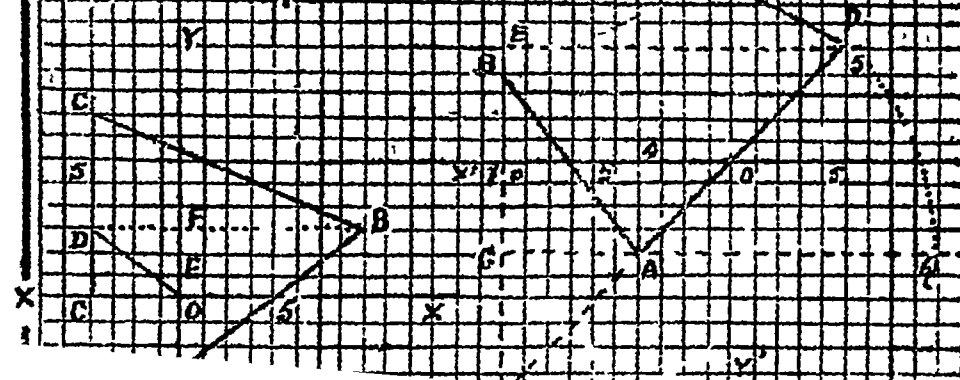
Prop.  
No.  
433.  
434



Prop.  
No.  
435.  
436  
437



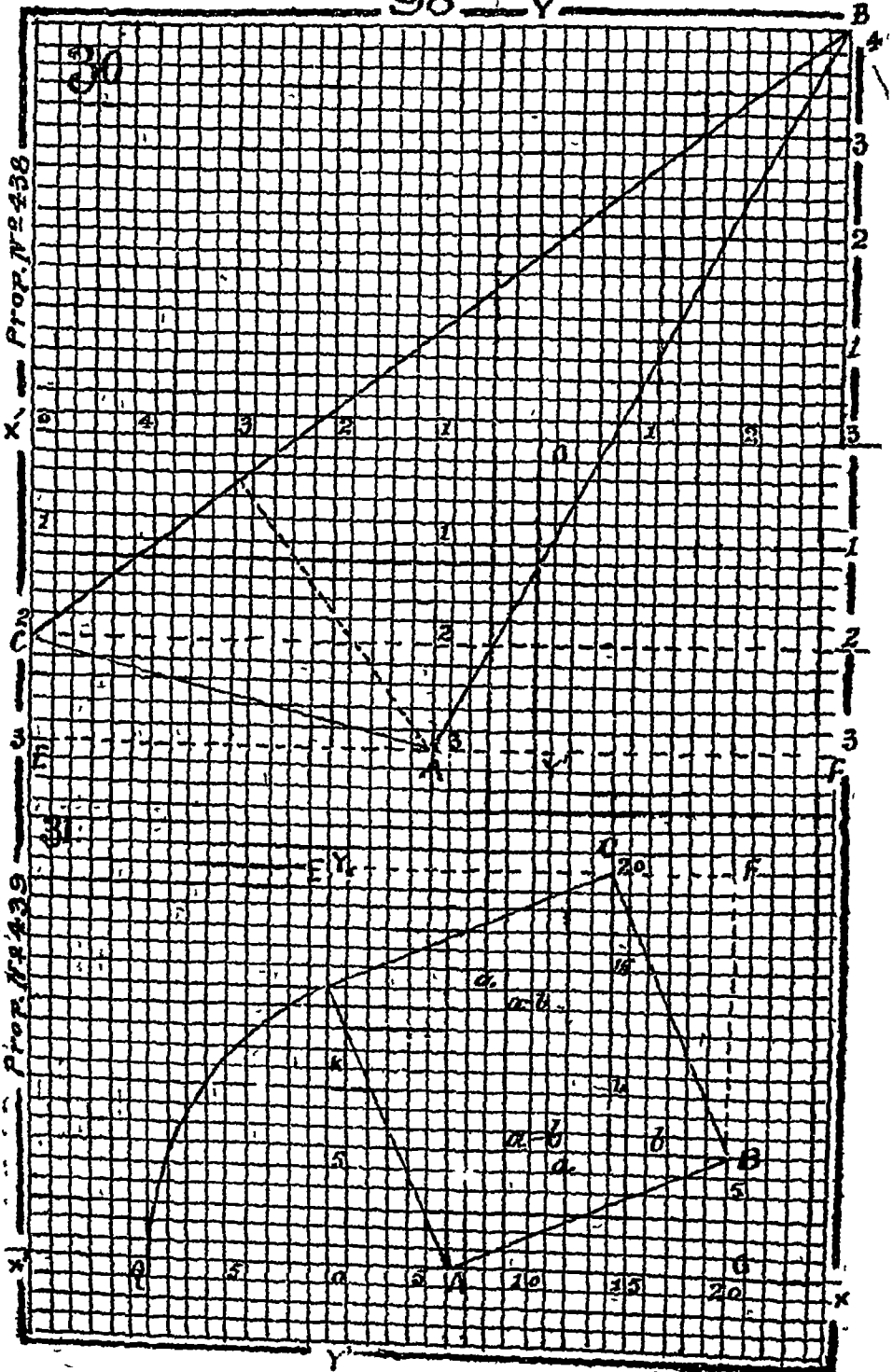
29.





Prop. N<sup>o</sup> 438

Prop. N<sup>o</sup> 439

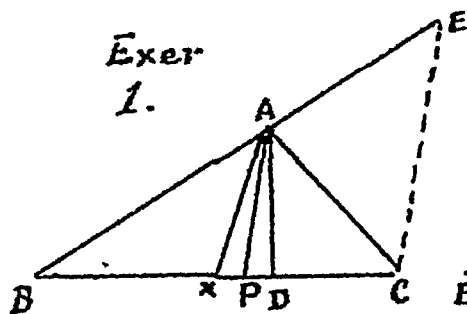


# PART. II.

PAGE 138.

Exer

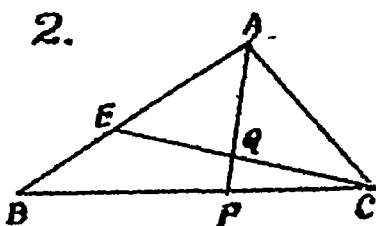
1.



Prop. N<sup>o</sup> 440

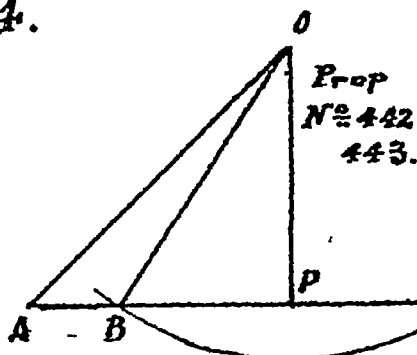
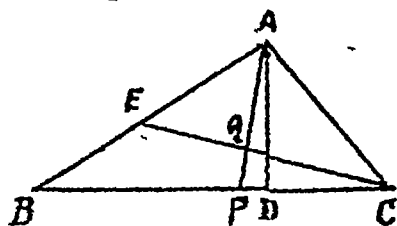
441.

2.



3

4.



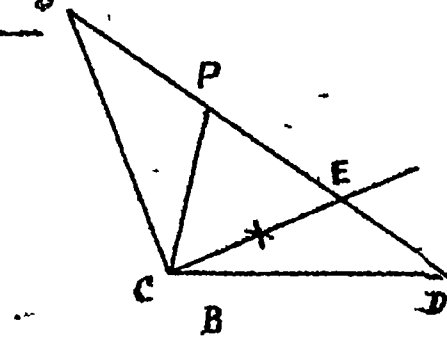
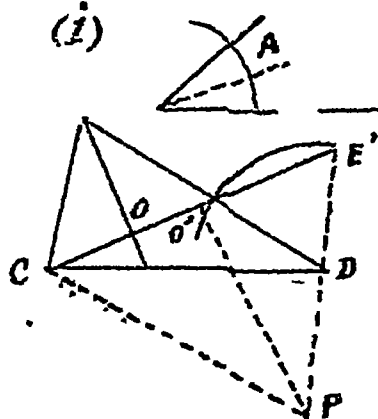
C

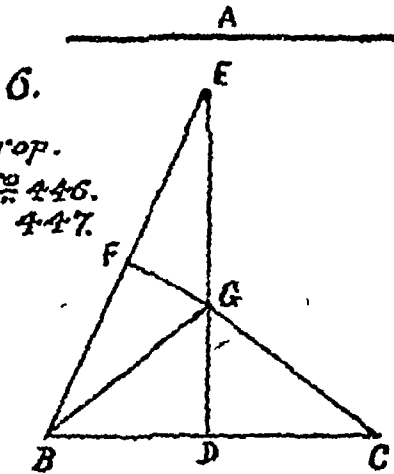
5. (i)

(ii)

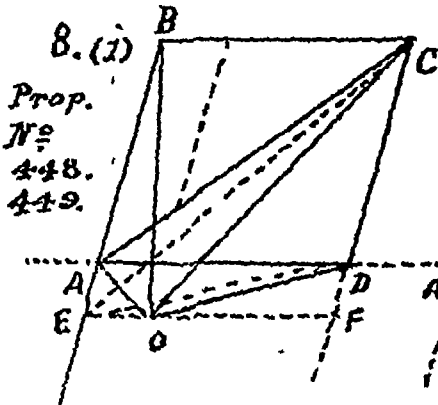
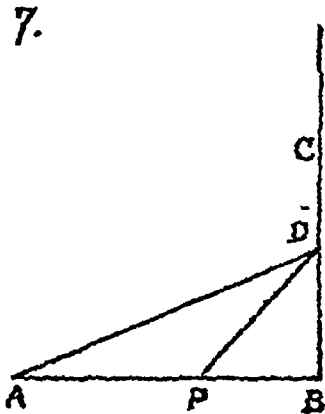
Prop. N<sup>o</sup>

444. 445.

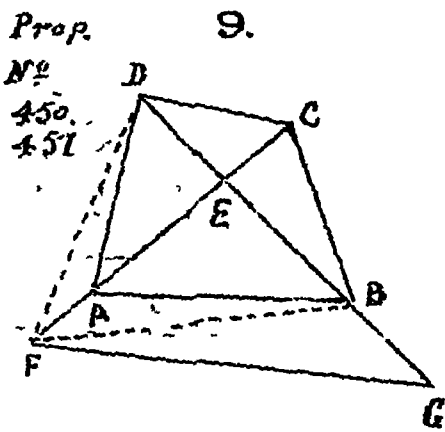
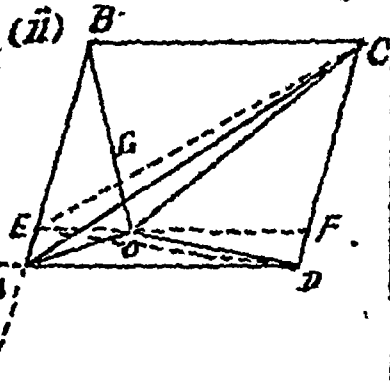




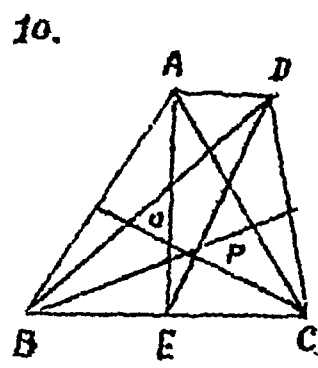
Prop.  
N<sup>o</sup> 446.  
447.



Prop.  
N<sup>o</sup> 448.  
449.

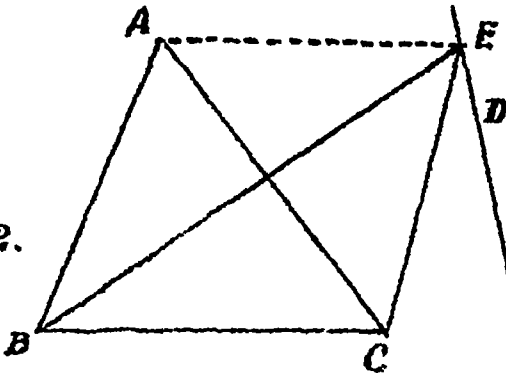


Prop.  
N<sup>o</sup> 450.  
451.



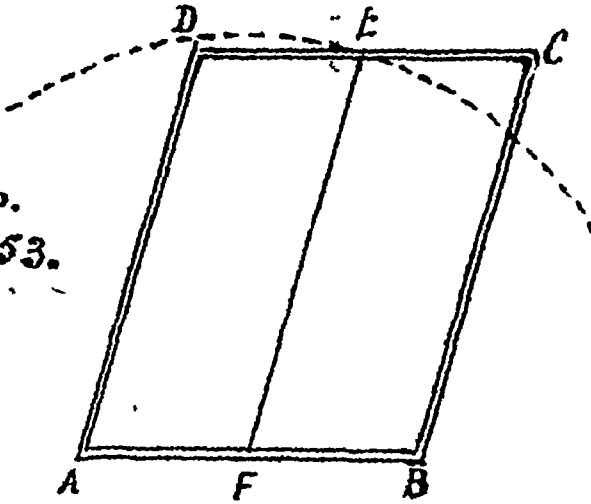
11.

Prop.  
Nº 452.



12

Prop.  
Nº 453.



Finish Parts I & II.